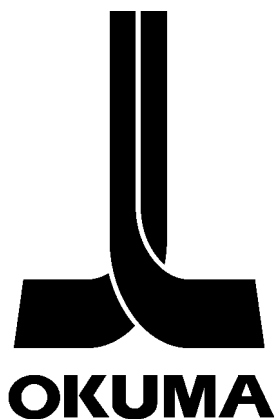


CNC SYSTEMS

OSP-E100L

PROGRAMMING MANUAL



Publication No. 4283-E

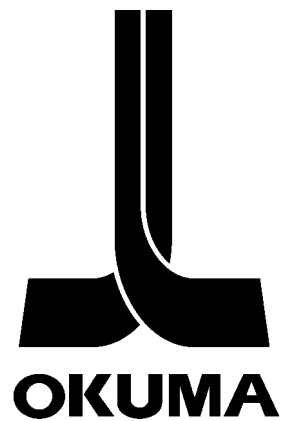
CNC SYSTEMS

OSP-E100L

PROGRAMMING MANUAL

(2nd Edition)

Pub. No. 4283-E (LE33-011-R2) Jan. 2000



SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

The machine is equipped with safety devices which serve to protect personnel and the machine itself from hazards arising from unforeseen accidents. However, operators must not rely exclusively on these safety devices: they must also become fully familiar with the safety guidelines presented below to ensure accident-free operation.

This instruction manual and the warning signs attached to the machine cover only those hazards which Okuma can predict. Be aware that they do not cover all possible hazards.

1. Precautions Relating to Machine Installation

- (1) Install the machine at a site where the following conditions (the conditions for achievement of the guaranteed accuracy) apply.
 - Ambient temperature: 17 to 25°C
 - Ambient humidity: 40% to 75% at 20°C (no condensation)
 - Site not subject to direct sunlight or excessive vibration; environment as free of dust, acid, corrosive gases, and salt spray as possible.
- (2) Prepare a primary power supply that complies with the following requirements.
 - Voltage: 200 V
 - Voltage fluctuation: $\pm 10\%$ max.
 - Power supply frequency: 50/60 Hz
 - Do not draw the primary power supply from a distribution panel that also supplies a major noise source (for example, an electric welder or electric discharge machine) since this could cause malfunction of the CNC unit.
 - If possible, connect the machine to a ground not used by any other equipment. If there is no choice but to use a common ground, the other equipment must not generate a large amount of noise (such as an electric welder or electric discharge machine).
- (3) Installation Environment

Observe the following points when installing the control enclosure.

 - Make sure that the CNC unit will not be subject to direct sunlight.
 - Make sure that the control enclosure will not be splashed with chips, water, or oil.
 - Make sure that the control enclosure and operation panel are not subject to excessive vibrations or shock.
 - The permissible ambient temperature range for the control enclosure is 0 to 40°C.
 - The permissible ambient humidity range for the control enclosure is 30 to 95% (no condensation).
 - The maximum altitude at which the control enclosure can be used is 1000 m (3281ft.).

2. Points to Check before Turning on the Power

- (1) Close all the doors of the control enclosure and operation panel to prevent the entry of water, chips, and dust.
- (2) Make absolutely sure that there is nobody near the moving parts of the machine, and that there are no obstacles around the machine, before starting machine operation.
- (3) When turning on the power, turn on the main power disconnect switch first, then the CONTROL ON switch on the operation panel.

3. Precautions Relating to Operation

- (1) After turning on the power, carry out inspection and adjustment in accordance with the daily inspection procedure described in this instruction manual.
- (2) Use tools whose dimensions and type are appropriate for the work undertaken and the machine specifications. Do not use badly worn tools since they can cause accidents.
- (3) Do not, for any reason, touch the spindle or tool while spindle indexing is in progress since the spindle could rotate: this is dangerous.
- (4) Check that the workpiece and tool are properly secured.
- (5) Never touch a workpiece or tool while it is rotating: this is extremely dangerous.
- (6) Do not remove chips by hand while machining is in progress since this is dangerous. Always stop the machine first, then remove the chips with a brush or broom.
- (7) Do not operate the machine with any of the safety devices removed. Do not operate the machine with any of the covers removed unless it is necessary to do so.
- (8) Always stop the machine before mounting or removing a tool.
- (9) Do not approach or touch any moving part of the machine while it is operating.
- (10) Do not touch any switch or button with wet hands. This is extremely dangerous.
- (11) Before using any switch or button on the operation panel, check that it is the one intended.

4. Precautions Relating to the ATC

- (1) The tool clamps of the magazine, spindle, etc., are designed for reliability, but it is possible that a tool could be released and fall in the event of an unforeseen accident, exposing you to danger: do not touch or approach the ATC mechanism during ATC operation.
- (2) Always inspect and change tools in the magazine in the manual magazine interrupt mode.
- (3) Remove chips adhering to the magazine at appropriate intervals since they can cause misoperation. Do not use compressed air to remove these chips since it will only push the chips further in.
- (4) If the ATC stops during operation for some reason and it has to be inspected without turning the power off, do not touch the ATC since it may start moving suddenly.

5. On Finishing Work

- (1) On finishing work, clean the vicinity of the machine.
- (2) Return the ATC, APC and other equipment to the predetermined retraction position.
- (3) Always turn off the power to the machine before leaving it.
- (4) To turn off the power, turn off the CONTROL ON switch on the operation panel first, then the main power disconnect switch.

6. Precautions during Maintenance Inspection and When Trouble Occurs

In order to prevent unforeseen accidents, damage to the machine, etc., it is essential to observe the following points when performing maintenance inspections or during checking when trouble has occurred.

- (1) When trouble occurs, press the emergency stop button on the operation panel to stop the machine.
- (2) Consult the person responsible for maintenance to determine what corrective measures need to be taken.
- (3) If two or more persons must work together, establish signals so that they can communicate to confirm safety before proceeding to each new step.
- (4) Use only the specified replacement parts and fuses.
- (5) Always turn the power off before starting inspection or changing parts.
- (6) When parts are removed during inspection or repair work, always replace them as they were and secure them properly with their screws, etc.
- (7) When carrying out inspections in which measuring instruments are used - for example voltage checks - make sure the instrument is properly calibrated.
- (8) Do not keep combustible materials or metals inside the control enclosure or terminal box.
- (9) Check that cables and wires are free of damage: damaged cables and wires will cause current leakage and electric shocks.
- (10) Maintenance inside the Control Enclosure
 - (a) Switch the main power disconnect switch OFF before opening the control enclosure door.
 - (b) Even when the main power disconnect switch is OFF, there may be some residual charge in the MCS drive unit (servo/spindle), and for this reason only service personnel are permitted to perform any work on this unit. Even then, they must observe the following precautions.
 - MCS drive unit (servo/spindle)

The residual voltage discharges two minutes after the main switch is turned OFF.
 - (c) The control enclosure contains the NC unit, and the NC unit has a printed circuit board whose memory stores the machining programs, parameters, etc. In order to ensure that the contents of this memory will be retained even when the power is switched off, the memory is supplied with power by a battery. Depending on how the printed circuit boards are handled, the contents of the memory may be destroyed and for this reason only service personnel should handle these boards.
- (11) Periodic Inspection of the Control Enclosure
 - (a) Cleaning the cooling unit

The cooling unit in the door of the control enclosure serves to prevent excessive temperature rise inside the control enclosure and increase the reliability of the NC unit. Inspect the following points every three months.

 - Is the fan motor inside the cooling unit working?

The motor is normal if there is a strong draft from the unit.
 - Is the external air inlet blocked?

If it is blocked, clean it with compressed air.

7. General Precautions

- (1) Keep the vicinity of the machine clean and tidy.
- (2) Wear appropriate clothing while working, and follow the instructions of someone with sufficient training.
- (3) Make sure that your clothes and hair cannot become entangled in the machine. Machine operators must wear safety equipment such as safety shoes and goggles.
- (4) Machine operators must read the instruction manual carefully and make sure of the correct procedure before operating the machine.
- (5) Memorize the position of the emergency stop button so that you can press it immediately at any time and from any position.
- (6) Do not access the inside of the control panel, transformer, motor, etc., since they contain high-voltage terminals and other components which are extremely dangerous.
- (7) If two or more persons must work together, establish signals so that they can communicate to confirm safety before proceeding to each new step.

8. Symbols Used in This Manual

The following warning indications are used in this manual to draw attention to information of particular importance. Read the instructions marked with these symbols carefully and follow them.



Indicates an imminent hazard which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.



Indicates hazards which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.



Indicates hazards which, if not avoided, could result in minor injuries or damage to devices or equipment.



Indicates precautions relating to operation or use.

INTRODUCTION

Thank you very much for purchasing our numerical control unit OSP-E100L.

Before using this NC unit (hereafter simply called NC), thoroughly read this programming manual (hereafter called this manual) in order to ensure correct use.

This manual explains how to use and maintain the NC so that it will deliver its full performance and maintain accuracy over a long term.

You must pay particular attention to the cautions given in this manual, read them carefully, and make sure you fully understand them before operating the NC.

Display Screens

The NC display screens vary with the selected NC specifications.
The screens shown in this manual, therefore, may not exactly the same with those displayed on your NC.

 TABLE OF CONTENTS

PAGE

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

INTRODUCTION

| | | |
|-----------|--|----|
| SECTION 1 | PROGRAM CONFIGURATIONS | 1 |
| 1. | Program Types | 1 |
| 2. | Program Name | 2 |
| 3. | Sequence Name | 3 |
| 4. | Program Format | 4 |
| 4-1. | Word Configuration | 4 |
| 4-2. | Block Configuration | 4 |
| 4-3. | Program | 4 |
| 4-4. | Programmable Range of Address Characters | 5 |
| 5. | Mathematical Operation Functions | 6 |
| 6. | Block Delete | 8 |
| 7. | Comment Function (CONTROL OUT/IN) | 9 |
| 8. | Program Storage Memory Capacity | 10 |
| 9. | Two Turrets | 11 |
| 10. | Variable Limits | 12 |
| 11. | Determining Feedrate for Cutting along C-Axis | 13 |
| 11-1. | Cutting by Controlling the C-axis Only | 13 |
| 11-2. | Cutting by Controlling Both C-axis and Z-axis Simultaneously | 14 |
| 11-3. | Cutting by Controlling Both C-axis and X-axis Simultaneously | 15 |
| 11-4. | Cutting by Simultaneous 3-axis Control of X-, Z-, and C-axis | 16 |
| SECTION 2 | COORDINATE SYSTEMS AND COMMANDS | 18 |
| 1. | Coordinate Systems | 18 |
| 1-1. | Coordinate Systems and Values | 18 |
| 1-2. | Encoder Coordinate System | 18 |
| 1-3. | Machine Coordinate System | 18 |
| 1-4. | Program Coordinate System | 18 |
| 2. | Coordinate Commands | 20 |
| 2-1. | Controlled Axis | 20 |
| 2-2. | Commands in Inch System | 21 |

| | | |
|--|---|-----------|
| 2-3. | Position of Decimal Point | 22 |
| 2-3-1. | Metric System | 22 |
| 2-3-2. | Inch System (Inch/metric switchable specification): | 22 |
| 2-4. | Absolute and Incremental Commands (G90, G91) | 24 |
| 2-5. | Diametric and Radial Commands | 24 |
| SECTION 3 MATH FUNCTIONS | | 25 |
| 1. | Positioning (G00) | 25 |
| 2. | Linear Interpolation (G01) | 26 |
| 3. | Circular Interpolation (G02, G03) | 27 |
| 4. | Automatic Chamfering | 30 |
| 4-1. | C-chamfering (G75) | 30 |
| 4-2. | Rounding (G76) | 32 |
| 4-3. | Automatic Any-Angle Chamfering | 34 |
| 5. | Torque Limit and Torque Skip Function | 37 |
| 5-1. | Torque Limit Command (G29) | 37 |
| 5-2. | Torque Limit Cancel Command (G28) | 37 |
| 5-3. | Torque Skip Command (G22) | 37 |
| 5-4. | Parameter Setting | 39 |
| 5-5. | Program Example | 40 |
| SECTION 4 PREPARATORY FUNCTIONS | | 41 |
| 1. | Dwell (G04) | 41 |
| 2. | Zero Shift/Max. Spindle Speed Set (G50) | 42 |
| 2-1. | Zero Shift | 42 |
| 2-2. | Max. Spindle Speed Set | 43 |
| 3. | Droop Control (G64, G65) | 44 |
| 4. | Feed Per Revolution (G95) | 45 |
| 5. | Feed Per Minute (G94) | 46 |
| 6. | Constant Speed Control (G96/G97) | 47 |
| SECTION 5 S, T, AND M FUNCTIONS | | 48 |
| 1. | S Functions (Spindle Functions) | 48 |
| 2. | SB Code Function | 49 |
| 3. | T Functions (Tool Functions) | 50 |

| | | |
|----------------------------------|--|-----------|
| 4. | M Functions (Auxiliary Functions) | 51 |
| 5. | M-tool Spindle Commands | 55 |
| 5-1. | Programming Format | 55 |
| 5-2. | M Codes Used for C-axis Operation | 55 |
| 6. | STM Time Over Check Function | 57 |
| 6-1. | Check ON Conditions | 57 |
| 6-2. | S, T, M Cycle Time Setting | 57 |
| 6-3. | Timing Chart Example | 58 |
| SECTION 6 OFFSET FUNCTION | | 59 |
| 1. | Tool Nose Radius Compensation Function (G40, G41, G42) | 59 |
| 1-1. | General Description | 59 |
| 1-2. | Tool Nose Radius Compensation for Turning Operations | 59 |
| 1-3. | Compensation Operation | 60 |
| 1-4. | Nose Radius Compensation Commands (G, T Codes) | 62 |
| 1-5. | Data Display | 63 |
| 1-6. | Buffer Operation | 64 |
| 1-7. | Path of Tool Nose “R” Center in Tool Nose Radius Compensation Mode | 64 |
| 1-8. | Tool Nose Radius Compensation Programming | 66 |
| 1-8-1. | G41 and G42 | 66 |
| 1-8-2. | Behavior on Entering Tool Nose Radius Compensation Mode | 66 |
| 1-8-3. | Behavior in Tool Nose Radius Compensation Mode | 70 |
| 1-8-4. | Behavior on Cancelation of the Tool Nose Radius Compensation Mode | 83 |
| 1-8-5. | Relieving Tool to Change “S” or “M” Code during Cutting | 86 |
| 2. | Cutter Radius Compensation Function | 92 |
| 2-1. | Overview | 92 |
| 2-2. | Programming | 92 |
| 2-3. | Operations | 94 |
| SECTION 7 FIXED CYCLES | | 98 |
| 1. | Fixed Cycle Functions | 98 |
| 2. | Fixed Thread Cutting Cycles | 99 |
| 2-1. | Fixed Thread Cutting Cycle: Longitudinal (G31, G33) | 99 |
| 2-2. | Fixed Thread Cutting Cycle: End Face (G32) | 101 |
| 3. | Non-Fixed Thread Cutting Cycle (G34, G35) | 104 |
| 4. | Precautions when Programming Thread Cutting Cycles | 105 |

| | | |
|--------|---|-----|
| 5. | Thread Cutting Compound Cycle (G71/G72) | 110 |
| 5-1. | Longitudinal Thread Cutting Cycle (G71) | 110 |
| 5-2. | Program Example for Longitudinal Thread Cutting Compound Fixed Cycle (G71) | 111 |
| 5-3. | Transverse Thread Cutting Compound Fixed Cycle (G72) | 112 |
| 5-4. | M Code Specifying Thread Cutting Mode and Infeed Pattern | 113 |
| 5-4-1. | M Codes Specifying Thread Cutting Mode | 113 |
| 5-4-2. | M Codes Specifying the Infeed Pattern | 113 |
| 5-4-3. | Longitudinal Thread Cutting Cycles | 115 |
| 5-4-4. | Transverse Thread Cutting Cycles | 119 |
| 5-5. | Multi-thread Thread Cutting Function in Compound Fixed Thread Cutting Cycle | 125 |
| 6. | Grooving/Drilling Compound Fixed Cycle | 126 |
| 6-1. | Longitudinal Grooving Fixed Cycle (G73) | 126 |
| 6-2. | Example Program for Longitudinal Grooving Compound Fixed Cycle (G73) | 127 |
| 6-3. | Transverse Grooving/Drilling Fixed Cycle (G74) | 128 |
| 6-4. | Example Program for Transverse Grooving/Drilling Fixed Cycle (G74) | 129 |
| 6-5. | Axis Movements in Grooving/Drilling Compound Fixed Cycle | 129 |
| 7. | Tapping Compound Fixed Cycle | 130 |
| 7-1. | Right-hand Tapping Cycle (G77) | 130 |
| 7-2. | Left-hand Tapping Cycle (G78) | 131 |
| 8. | Compound Fixed Cycles | 132 |
| 8-1. | List of Compound Fixed Cycle Commands | 132 |
| 8-2. | Basic Axis Motions | 133 |
| 8-3. | Address Characters | 138 |
| 8-4. | M Codes | 138 |
| 8-5. | Drilling Cycle (G181) | 139 |
| 8-6. | Boring Cycle (G182) | 140 |
| 8-7. | Deep Hole Drilling Cycle (G183) | 141 |
| 8-8. | Tapping Cycle (G184) | 143 |
| 8-9. | Longitudinal Thread Cutting Cycle (G185) | 144 |
| 8-10. | Transverse Thread Cutting Cycle (G186) | 145 |
| 8-11. | Longitudinal Straight Thread Cutting (G187) | 146 |
| 8-12. | Transverse Straight Thread Cutting (G188) | 147 |
| 8-13. | Reaming/Boring Cycle (G189) | 148 |
| 8-14. | Key Way Cutting (G190) | 149 |
| 8-15. | Synchronized Tapping Cycle | 152 |
| 8-16. | Repeat Function | 154 |
| 8-17. | Tool Relieving Command in Deep-hole Drilling Cycle for Chip Discharge. | 155 |

| | | |
|------------------|---|------------|
| 8-18. | Drilling Depth Setting (Only for drilling cycles) | 156 |
| 8-19. | Selection of Return Point | 158 |
| 8-20. | M-tool spindle Interlock Release Function (optional) | 159 |
| 8-21. | Other Remarks | 159 |
| 8-22. | Program Examples | 160 |
| | | |
| SECTION 8 | LATHE AUTO-PROGRAMMING FUNCTION (LAP) | 165 |
| 1. | Overview | 165 |
| 2. | G Codes Used to Designate Cutting Mode (G80, G81, G82, G83) | 166 |
| 3. | List of Cutting Modes | 167 |
| 4. | Code and Parameter Lists | 172 |
| 5. | Bar Turning Cycle (G85) | 174 |
| 6. | Change of Cutting Conditions in Bar Turning Cycle (G84) | 175 |
| 7. | Copy Turning Cycle (G86) | 176 |
| 8. | Finish Turning Cycle (G87) | 177 |
| 9. | Continuous Thread Cutting Cycle (G88) | 178 |
| 10. | AP Modes | 179 |
| 10-1. | AP Mode I (Bar Turning) | 179 |
| 10-1-1. | Tool Path and Program - Longitudinal Cutting | 179 |
| 10-1-2. | Tool Path and Program - Transverse Cutting | 181 |
| 10-1-3. | Outline of Bar Turning Cycle | 182 |
| 10-2. | AP Mode II (Copy Turning) | 187 |
| 10-2-1. | Tool Path and Program - Longitudinal Cutting | 187 |
| 10-2-2. | Tool Path and Program - Transverse Cutting | 189 |
| 10-2-3. | Outline of Copy Turning Cycle | 190 |
| 10-3. | AP Mode III (Continuous Thread Cutting Cycle) | 193 |
| 10-4. | AP Mode IV (High-speed Bar Turning Cycle) | 195 |
| 10-4-1. | Tool Path and Program - Longitudinal Cutting | 195 |
| 10-4-2. | Tool Path and Program - Transverse Cutting | 197 |
| 10-4-3. | Outline of High-speed Bar Turning Cycle | 201 |
| 10-4-4. | Precautions when Performing High-speed Bar Turning | 208 |
| 10-4-5. | How to Obtain the Infeed Starting Point | 208 |
| 10-5. | AP Mode V (Bar Copying Cycle) | 210 |
| 10-5-1. | Tool Path and Program - Longitudinal Cutting | 210 |
| 10-5-2. | Tool Path and Program - Transverse Cutting | 212 |
| 10-5-3. | Outline of Bar Copying Cycle | 215 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| 10-5-4. Precautions when Executing a Bar Copying Cycle | 221 |
| 10-6. Precautions | 222 |
| 11. Application of LAP Function | 227 |
| | |
| SECTION 9 CONTOUR GENERATION | 230 |
| 1. Contour Generation Programming Function (Face) | 230 |
| 1-1. Function Overview | 230 |
| 1-2. Programming Format | 230 |
| 1-3. Programming Examples | 231 |
| 1-4. Supplementary Information | 239 |
| 2. Contour Generation Programming Function (Side) | 242 |
| 2-1. Overview | 242 |
| 2-2. Programming Format | 243 |
| 2-3. Cautions | 244 |
| | |
| SECTION 10 COORDINATE SYSTEM CONVERSION | 246 |
| 1. Function Overview | 246 |
| 2. Conversion Format | 247 |
| 3. Program Examples | 248 |
| 4. Supplementary Information | 249 |
| | |
| SECTION 11 PROGRAMMING FOR SIMULTANEOUS 4-AXIS CUTS (2S Model) | 250 |
| 1. Programming | 250 |
| 1-1. Turret Selection | 250 |
| 1-2. Synchronization Command (P Code) | 251 |
| 1-3. Waiting Synchronization M Code (M100) for Simultaneous Cuts | 252 |
| 2. Programming Format | 253 |
| 3. Precautions on Programming Simultaneous 4-axis Cuts | 256 |
| 4. Programming Example | 258 |
| 4-1. Program Process Sheet | 259 |
| | |
| SECTION 12 MIRROR IMAGE FUNCTION (2-Turret Model) | 260 |
| 1. Outline | 260 |
| 2. Operations | 261 |
| 3. Programming and Cutting | 262 |

| | | |
|---|---|------------|
| 3-1. | Designating the Turret | 262 |
| 3-2. | Programming Spindle Rotating Direction | 262 |
| 3-3. | Cautions on Programming | 263 |
| 3-4. | Cutting Program | 264 |
| 4. | Other Considerations | 265 |
| 4-1. | Designation of Turrets A and B | 265 |
| 4-2. | Sequence Re-start | 265 |
| SECTION 13 USER TASK | | 267 |
| 1. | Overview | 267 |
| 2. | Types of User Task Function | 268 |
| 2-1. | Relationship Between Types of Program Files and User Task Functions | 268 |
| 2-2. | Comparison of User Task 1 and User Task 2 | 269 |
| 2-3. | Fundamental Functions of User Task | 270 |
| 3. | User Task 1 | 271 |
| 3-1. | Control Statement Function 1 | 271 |
| 3-2. | Variables | 275 |
| 3-2-1. | Common Variables | 275 |
| 3-2-2. | Local Variables | 275 |
| 3-2-3. | System Variables | 280 |
| 3-2-4. | I/O read variables | 285 |
| 3-3. | Arithmetic Operation Function 1 | 286 |
| 4. | User Task 2 | 287 |
| 4-1. | Control Functions 2 | 287 |
| 4-2. | I/O Variables | 298 |
| 4-3. | Arithmetic Operation Function 2 | 300 |
| 5. | Supplemental Information on User Task Programs | 302 |
| 5-1. | Sequence Return in Program Using User Task | 302 |
| 5-2. | Data Types, Constants | 303 |
| 5-3. | Types/Operation Rules of Variables and Evaluation of Their Values | 304 |
| 6. | Examples of User Task Programs | 307 |
| SECTION 14 SCHEDULE PROGRAMS | | 316 |
| 1. | Overview | 316 |
| 2. | PSELECT Block | 317 |
| 3. | Branch Block | 319 |

| | | |
|---|--|------------|
| 4. | Variables Setting Block | 320 |
| 5. | Schedule Program End Block | 321 |
| 6. | Program Example | 322 |
| SECTION 15 OTHER FUNCTIONS | | 324 |
| 1. | Automatic Acceleration and Deceleration | 324 |
| 2. | Following Error Check | 325 |
| 3. | Direct Taper Angle Command | 326 |
| 4. | Barrier Check Function | 327 |
| 4-1. | General Description | 327 |
| 4-2. | Chuck Barrier and Tailstock Barrier | 328 |
| 5. | Operation Time Reduction Function | 331 |
| 5-1. | Spindle Rotation Answer Signal Ignore (M63) | 331 |
| 6. | Turret Unclamp Command (for NC Turret Specification) | 332 |
| APPENDIX | | 333 |
| 1. | EAI/ISO Code Table | 333 |
| 2. | G Code Table | 335 |
| 3. | Table of Mnemonic Codes | 338 |
| 4. | Table of System Variables | 343 |

SECTION 1 PROGRAM CONFIGURATIONS

1. Program Types

For OSP-E100L, three kinds of programs are used: schedule programs, main programs, and subprograms. The following briefly explains these three kinds of programs.

(1) Schedule Program

When more than one type of workpiece is machined in continuous operation using a bar feeder or other equipment, multiple main programs are used. A schedule program is used to specify the order in which the main programs are executed and the number of times the individual main program is executed. Using a schedule program makes it possible to carry out untended operation easily.

It is not necessary to assign a program name. The END code must be specified at the end of a schedule program. For details, refer to SECTION 14, "SCHEDULE PROGRAMS".

(2) Main Program

A main program contains a series of commands to machine one type of workpiece. Subprograms can be called from a main program to simplify programming.

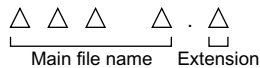
A main program begins with a program name which begins with address character "O" and ends with M02 or M30.

(3) Subprogram

A subprogram can be called from a main program or another subprogram. There are two types of subprograms: those written and supplied by Okuma (maker subprogram), and those written by the customer (user subprogram). The program name, which must start with "O", is required at the beginning of the subprogram. The RTS command must be specified at the end of the subprogram. For details, refer to SECTION 13, USER TASK FUNCTIONS.

- Program file format

Main file name: Begins with alphabetic characters (max. 16 characters)



- Extensions

SDF : Schedule program file

MIN : Main program file

SSB : System subprogram file

SUB : User subprogram file

2. Program Name

With the OSP-E100L, programs are called and executed by designating the program name or program number assigned to the beginning of individual programs. This simplifies programs.

A program name that contains only numbers is called a program number.

(1) Program Name Designation

- Enter letters of the alphabet (A to Z) or numbers (0 to 9) following address character “O”. Note that no space is allowed between “O” and a letter of the alphabet or a number. Similarly, no space is allowed between letters of the alphabet and numbers.
- Up to four characters can be used.
- An alphabetic character can only be used in a program name if it begins with an alphabetic character. Although a program beginning with an alphabetic character can contain a number in it, one that begins with a number cannot contain an alphabetic character.
- Although all of the four characters may be numeric, program names of the type “OO***” (***: alphanumeric) cannot be used since this kind of program name is used for system operation, automating functions, etc.
- A block which contains a program name must not contain other commands.
- A program name may not be used for a schedule program.
- The program name assigned to a subprogram must begin with address character “O”, but this is not mandatory for main programs.
- Since program names are handled in units of characters, the following names are judged to be different program names.
 - O0123 and O123
 - O00 and O0
- Do not assign the same name to more than one program, otherwise it will not be possible to select the intended program.

3. Sequence Name

All blocks in a program are assigned a sequence name that begins with address character “N” followed by an alphanumeric sequence.

Functions such as a sequence search function, a sequence stop function and a branching function can be used for blocks assigned a sequence name.

A sequence name that contains only numbers is called a sequence number.

(1) Sequence Name Designation

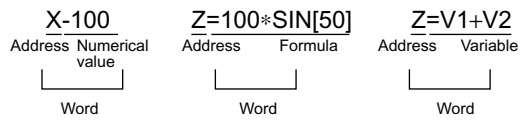
- Enter letters of the alphabet (A to Z) or numbers (0 to 9) following address character “N”.
- Up to five characters can be used.
- Both alphabetic characters and numbers may be used in a sequence name. If an alphabetic character is used in a sequence name, however, the sequence name must begin with an alphabetic character.
- Sequence numbers may be specified in any order. They can be used however desired, provided there is no duplication of numbers.
- Since sequence names are handled in units of characters, the following names are judged to be different sequence names.
 - N0123 and N123
 - N00 and N0
- When a sequence name is used, place a space or a tab after the sequence name.

4. Program Format

4-1. Word Configuration

A word is defined as an address character followed by a group of numeric values, an expression, or a variable name. If a word consists of an expression or a variable, the address character must be followed by an equal sign “=”.

Examples:



- An address character is one of the alphabetic characters A through Z and defines the meaning of the entry specified following it. In addition, an extended address character, consisting of two alphabetic characters, may also be used.
- Refer to SECTION 13, 3-2. “Variables” for more information on variables.

4-2. Block Configuration

A group consisting of several words is called a block, and a block expresses a command. Blocks are delimited by an end of block code.

- The end of block code differs depending on the selected code system, ISO or EIA:
 ISO: “LF”
 EIA: “CR”
- A block may contain up to 158 characters.

4-3. Program

A program consists of several blocks.

4-4. Programmable Range of Address Characters

The programmable ranges of numerical values of individual address characters are shown in the following table.

| Address | Function | Programmable Range | | Remarks |
|---------------|---|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|---|
| | | Metric | Inch | |
| O | Program name | 0000 to 9999 | same as left | Alphabetic characters available |
| N | Sequence name | 0000 to 9999 | same as left | |
| G | Preparatory function | 0 to 999 | same as left | |
| X, Z | Coordinate values (linear axis) | ±99999.999 mm | ±9999.9999 inch | |
| C | Coordinate values (rotary axis) | ±359.999 deg. | ±359.999 deg. | |
| I, K | Coordinate values of center of arc Taper amount and depth of cut in fixed thread cutting cycle Shift amount in grooving cycle | ±99999.999 mm | ±9999.9999 inch | |
| D, U, W, H, L | Automatic programming commands | 0 to 99999.999 mm | 0 to 9999.9999 inch | |
| E | | ±99999.999 mm/rev | ±9999.9999 inch/rev | |
| A, B | | 0 to 99999.999° | 0 to 9999.9999° | |
| F | Feedrate per revolution | 0.001 to 99999.999 mm/rev | 0.0001 to 999.9999 inch/rev | |
| | Feedrate per minute | 0.001 to 99999.999 mm/min | 0.0001 to 9999.9999 inch/min | |
| | Dwell time period | 0.01 to 9999.99 sec | same as left | |
| T | Tool number | 6 digits 4 digits | same as left | 6 digits (with nose R compensation) 4 digits (without nose R compensation) |
| S SB | Spindle speed M-tool speed | 0 to 9999 0 to 9999 | same as left | |
| M | Miscellaneous function | 0 to 511 | same as left | |
| QA | C-axis revolution | 1 to 1999 (rev.) | same as left | |
| SA | C-axis speed | 0.001 to 20.000 min ⁻¹ | same as left | |

5. Mathematical Operation Functions

Mathematical operation functions are used to convey logical operations, arithmetic operations, and trigonometric functions. A table of the operation symbols is shown below. Operation functions can be used together with variables to control peripherals or to pass on the results of an operation.

| Category | Operation | Operator | Remarks |
|--|--|------------------------------------|---|
| Logical operation | Exclusive OR | EOR | 0110 = 1010 EOR 1100 (See *3.) |
| | Logical OR | OR | 1110 = 1010 OR 1100 |
| | Logical AND | AND | 1000 = 1010 AND 1100 |
| | Negation | NOT | 1010 = NOT 0101 |
| Arithmetic operation | Addition | + | 8 = 5 + 3 |
| | Subtraction | - | 2 = 5 - 3 |
| | Multiplication | * | 15 = 5 * 3 |
| | Division | / (slash) | 3 = 15/5 |
| Trigonometric functions, etc. | Sine | SIN | 0.5 = SIN [30] (See *4.) |
| | Cosine | COS | 0.5 = COS [60] |
| | Tangent | TAN | 1 = TAN [45] |
| | Arctangent (1) | ATAN | 45 = ATAN [1] (value range: -90° to 90°) |
| | Arctangent (2) | ATAN2 | 30 = ATAN 2 [1,(Square root 3)] (See *1.) |
| | Square root | SQRT | 4 = SQRT [16] |
| | Absolute value | ABS | 3 = ABS [-3] |
| | Decimal to binary conversion | BIN | 25 = BIN [\$25] (\$ represents a hexadecimal number.) |
| | Binary to decimal conversion | BCD | \$25 = BCD [25] |
| | Integer implementation (rounding) | ROUND | 128 = ROUND [1.2763 x 102] |
| | Integer implementation (truncation) | FIX | 127 = FIX [1.2763 x 102] |
| | Integer implementation (raising) | FUP | 128 = FUP [1.2763 x 102] |
| | Unit integer implementation (rounding) | DROUND | 13.265 = DROUND [13.26462] (See *2.) |
| Unit integer implementation (truncation) | DFIX | 13.264 = DFIX [13.26462] (See *2.) | |
| Unit integer implementation (raising) | DFUP | 13.265 = DFUP [13.26462] (See *2.) | |
| Remainder | MOD | 2 = MOD [17, 5] | |
| Brackets | Opening bracket | [|) Determines the priority of an operation. (Operations inside the bracket are performed first.) |
| | Closing bracket |] | |

*1. The value of ATAN2 [b, a] is an argument (range: -180° to 180°) of the point that is expressed by coordinate values (a, b).

*2. In this example, the setting unit is mm.

*3. Blanks must be placed before and after the logical operation symbols (EOR, OR, AND, NOT).

*4. Numbers after function operation symbols (SIN, COS, TAN, etc.) must be enclosed in brackets "[]". ("a", "b", and "c" are used to indicate the contents of the corresponding bits.)

(1) Logical Operations

- Exclusive OR (EOR) $c = a \oplus \text{EOR} \oplus b$

If the two corresponding values agree, EOR outputs 0.

If the two values do not agree, EOR outputs 1.

| a | b | c |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 1 | 1 | 0 |

- Logical OR (OR) $c = a \oplus \text{OR} \oplus b$

If both corresponding values are 0, OR outputs 0.

If not, OR outputs 1.

| a | b | c |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 1 | 1 | 1 |

- Logical AND (AND) $c = a \oplus \text{AND} \oplus b$

If both corresponding values are 1, AND outputs 1.

If not, AND outputs 0.

| a | b | c |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 1 | 1 | 1 |

- Negation (NOT) $b = \text{NOT} \oplus a$

NOT inverts the value (from 0 to 1, and 1 to 0).

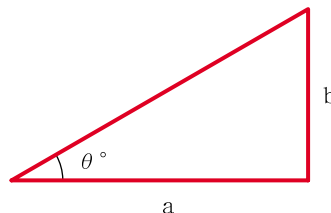
| a | b |
|---|---|
| 0 | 1 |
| 1 | 0 |

- Arc tangent (1) (ATAN)

$\theta = \text{ATAN} [b/a]$

- Arc tangent (2) (ATAN2)

$\theta = \text{ATAN2} [b/a]$



- Integer implementation (ROUND, FIX, FUP)

Converts a specified value into an integer by rounding off, truncating, or raising the number at the first place to the right of the decimal point.

(in units of microns)

6. Block Delete

[Function]

This function allows the operator to specify whether specific blocks are executed or ignored in automatic mode operation.

Blocks preceded by “/” are ignored during automatic mode operation if the BLOCK DELETE switch on the machine operation panel is set on. If the switch is off, the blocks are executed normally.

When the block skip function is activated, the entire block is ignored.

[Notes]

- The slash “/” code must be placed at either the start of a block or immediately after a sequence name (number). If it is placed in another position in a block, it will cause an alarm.
- The slash “/” may not be contained in the program name block.
- Blocks which contain a “/” code are also subject to the sequence search function, regardless of the BLOCK DELETE switch position.
- The block delete function is not possible during SINGLE BLOCK mode. The succeeding block is executed, and then the operation stops.

7. Comment Function (CONTROL OUT/IN)

A program may be made easier to understand by using comments in parentheses.

- Comments must be parenthesized to distinguish them from general operation information.
- Comments are also subject to TV and TH checks.

Example:

```
N100  G00  X200  (FIRST STEP)  
                    Comment
```


8. Program Storage Memory Capacity

The NC uses memory to store machining programs. The memory capacity is selectable depending on the size of the machining program. For execution, a program is transferred from the memory to the operation buffer (RAM). The capacity of the operation buffer is indicated by one program capacity.

If the size of the program to be executed is large, it is necessary to expand the one program capacity. The one program capacity can be selected from 320 m (1049.92 ft), 640 m (2099.84 ft.), 1280 m (4199.68 ft.), to expand program storage capacity.

9. Two Turrets

With flat bed type machines, there are models which have two turrets mounted on a saddle. Since both turrets are mounted in the same saddle in this configuration, it is not possible to control them independently. For such machines, the turret should be selected first when making a part program.

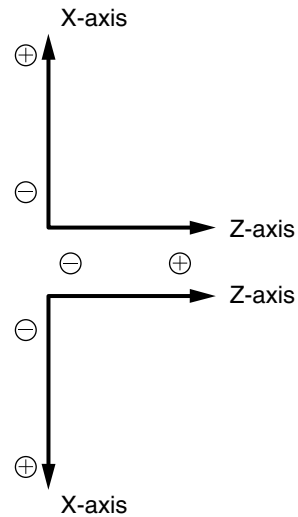
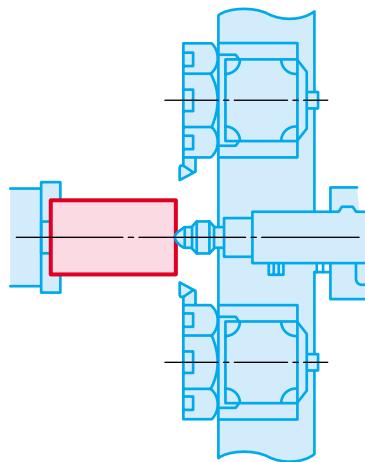
In the two-turret specification machines, the front and rear turrets are called turret A and turret B, respectively, and the turrets are selected by specifying the following G codes.

Selection of turret A : G13

Selection of turret B : G14

Although the numerically controlled axes are the X- and Z-axis only, since the machine has only one saddle, program zero is set for turrets A and B independently.

It should also be noted that the X-axis direction of coordinate systems is reversed between turrets A and B.



10. Variable Limits

On execution of a command that specifies axis movement to a target point beyond the variable limit in the positive direction, the specified target point is replaced with the variable limit in the positive direction.

For commands specifying axis movement to a target point beyond the variable limit in the negative direction, axis movement is not executed and an alarm occurs.

11. Determining Feedrate for Cutting along C-Axis

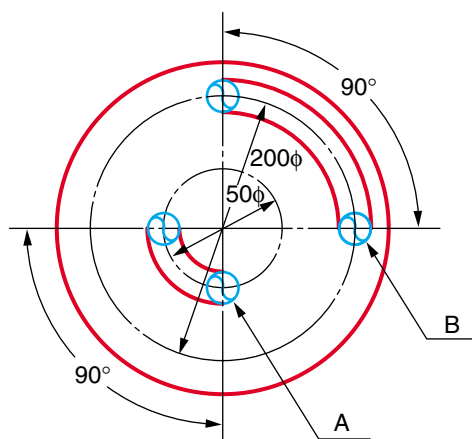
11-1. Cutting by Controlling the C-axis Only

Although it is possible to machine a workpiece by controlling the C-axis, tool movement distance in unit time (one minute) differs according to the diameter of the position to be machined because the feedrate is specified in units of deg/min. This must be taken into consideration when making a program.

[Memo]

To match the unit of the C-axis feed command with the X- and/or Z-axis command, the feedrate command (F) should be calculated by converting 360° into 500 mm. This conversion should also be carried out when only a C-axis command is given.

Example:



Axis movement distance along slot A: $\dots\dots\dots\pi \times 50/4 \approx 39$ mm

Axis movement distance along slot B: $\dots\dots\dots\pi \times 200/4 \approx 156$ mm

Therefore, if cutting is carried out at a feedrate of 100 mm per minute, the feedrate (deg/min) of the C-axis is calculated as follows:

Along slot A(deg/min)..... $100/39 \times 90 \approx 230$

Along slot B(deg/min)..... $100/156 \times 90 \approx 58$

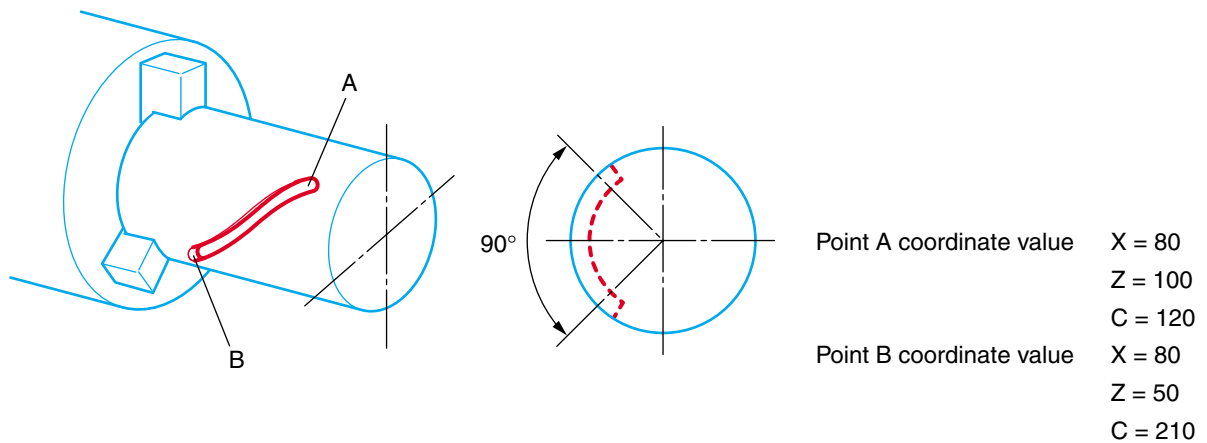
Convert the unit of feed from "deg/min" into "mm/min".

Slot A: (mm/min)..... $230/360 \times 500 \approx 320$ (F320)

Slot B: (mm/min)..... $58/360 \times 500 \approx 80$ (F80)

11-2. Cutting by Controlling Both C-axis and Z-axis Simultaneously

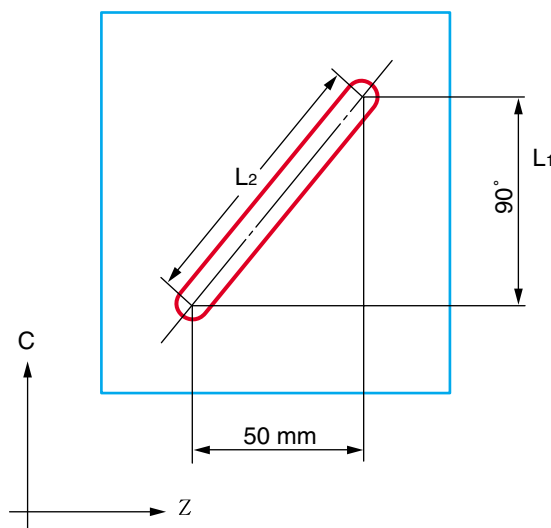
Example:



When cutting the spiral from A to B with a two-flute end mill under the following cutting conditions, calculate the feedrate of C-axis as explained below:

Cutting conditions: Feed per tooth 0.05 mm
 M-tool speed 400 min^{-1} {rpm}

- 1) Calculate the distance between A and B.
 A development of the diagram above is indicated below.



The distance, L_1 , along the circumference is:

$$L_1 = 80 \times \pi \times \frac{90}{360} \approx 63 \text{ (mm)}$$

The distance, L_2 , between A and B is:

$$L_2 = \sqrt{63^2 + 50^2} \approx 80 \text{ (mm)}$$

- 2) Calculate the cutting time, T , on the basis of the cutting conditions indicated above to feed the axes along the slot.

$$\begin{aligned}
 T &= \frac{L_2}{(\text{Feed per tooth}) \times (\text{Number of teeth}) \times (\text{min}^{-1} \text{ (rpm)})} \\
 &= \frac{80}{0.05 \times 2 \times 400} \\
 &= 2 \text{ (min)}
 \end{aligned}$$

- 3) Inside the computer, the distance L_3 between A and B is calculated in the following manner.

X-axis travel = 50 mm

$$C\text{-axis travel} = 90^\circ \times \frac{500\text{mm}}{360^\circ} = 125\text{mm}$$

(conversion based on $360^\circ = 500\text{ mm}$)

Therefore, the distance between A and B is calculated as below:

$$L_3 = \sqrt{50^2 + 125^2}$$

135 (mm)

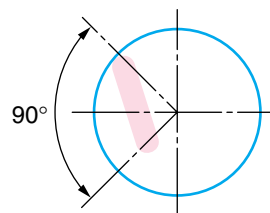
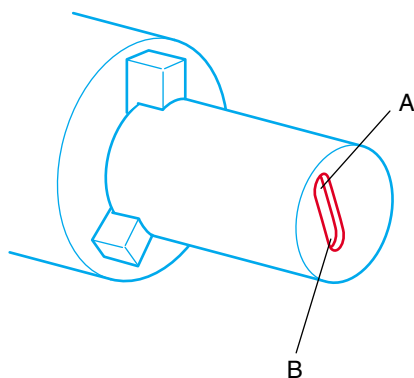
- 4) The feedrate to be specified in the program is approximately calculated as below:

$$F = \frac{L_3}{T} = \frac{135}{2} = 67.5$$

Specify F67.5 in the program.

11-3. Cutting by Controlling Both C-axis and X-axis Simultaneously

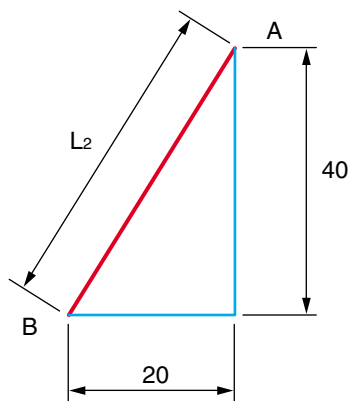
Example:



| | |
|--------------------------|---------|
| Point A coordinate value | X = 80 |
| | Z = 100 |
| | C = 120 |
| Point B coordinate value | X = 40 |
| | Z = 100 |
| | C = 210 |

- The cutting conditions are the same as used in 11-2. "Cutting by Controlling Both C-axis and Z-axis Simultaneously".

- 1) Calculate the distance between A and B.
The distance, L_2 between A and B is:



$$L_2 = \sqrt{40^2 + 20^2}$$

$$\approx 44.7 \text{ mm}$$

- 2) Calculate the cutting time, T, on the basis of the cutting conditions indicated above to feed the axes along the slot.

$$T = \frac{L_2}{(\text{Feed per tooth}) \times (\text{Number of teeth}) \times (\text{min}^{-1} \text{ (rpm)})}$$

$$= \frac{44.7}{0.05 \times 2 \times 400}$$

$$\approx 1.12 \text{ min}$$

- 3) Inside the computer, the distance L3 between A and B is calculated in the following manner.

X-axis travel = 40 mm

$$\text{C-axis travel} = 90^\circ \times \frac{500 \text{ mm}}{360^\circ} = 125 \text{ mm}$$

(conversion based on $360^\circ = 500 \text{ mm}$)

Therefore, the distance between A and B is calculated as below:

$$L_3 = \sqrt{40^2 + 125^2}$$

$$\approx 131.2 \text{ mm}$$

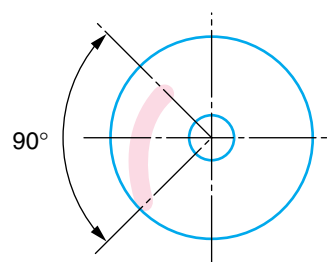
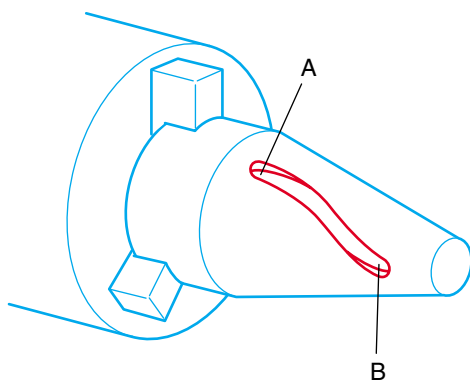
- 4) The feedrate to be specified in the program is approximately calculated as below:

$$F = \frac{L_3}{T} = \frac{131.2}{1.12} = 117$$

Specify F117 in the program.

11-4. Cutting by Simultaneous 3-axis Control of X-, Z-, and C-axis

Example:



Point A coordinate value

| |
|---------|
| X = 80 |
| Z = 50 |
| C = 120 |

Point B coordinate value

| |
|---------|
| X = 40 |
| Z = 100 |
| C = 210 |

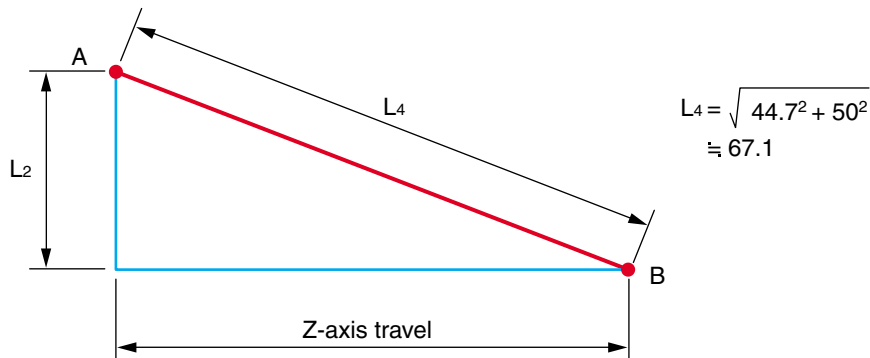
- When cutting a slot on a cone as indicated above, simultaneous 3-axis control of the X-, Z-, and C-axis becomes necessary. The feedrate to be programmed should be calculated in the following manner. Note that the example below assumes the same cutting conditions as in 11-2. "Cutting by Controlling Both C-axis and X-axis Simultaneously".

- 1) First, consider the development of the slot on the C-axis and X-axis. In this case, calculation of the feedrate is possible in the same manner as in 12-3. "Cutting by Controlling Both C-axis and X-axis Simultaneously". The C and X-axis travel component, L_2 , is:

$$L_3 = \sqrt{40^2 + 20^2}$$

$$\approx 44.7 \text{ mm}$$

- 2) Calculate the actual distance between A and B from L_2 calculated in (1).



- 3) Calculate the cutting time T for distance L_4 :

$$T = \frac{L_4}{(\text{Feed per tooth}) \times (\text{Number of teeth}) \times (\text{min}^{-1} \text{ (rpm)})}$$

$$= \frac{67.1}{0.05 \times 2 \times 400}$$

$$\approx 1.68 \text{ min}$$

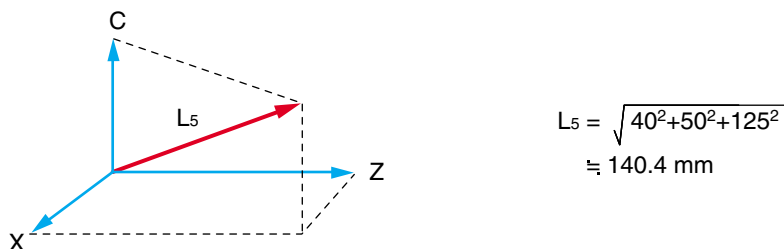
- 4) Inside the computer, distance L_5 between A and B is calculated in the following manner.

X-axis travel = 40 mm

Z-axis travel = 50 mm

C-axis travel = $90 \times \frac{500 \text{ mm}}{365} = 125 \text{ mm}$

(conversion based on $360 = 500 \text{ mm}$)



- 5) The feedrate to be specified in the program is approximately calculated as below:

$$F = \frac{L_5}{T} = \frac{140.4}{1.68} \approx 83.6$$

Specify F83.6 in the program.

SECTION 2 COORDINATE SYSTEMS AND COMMANDS

1. Coordinate Systems

1-1. Coordinate Systems and Values

To move the tool to a target position, the reference coordinate system must be set first to define the target position, and the target position is defined by coordinate values in the set coordinate system. There are the three types of coordinate system indicated below. A program coordinate system is used for programming.

- Encoder coordinate system
- Machine coordinate system
- Program coordinate system

1-2. Encoder Coordinate System

An encoder is used to detect the position of a numerically controlled axis. The encoder coordinate system is established based on the position data output by the encoder.

The position data directly output from the encoder is not displayed on the screen, and this coordinate system may be disregarded in daily operation.

1-3. Machine Coordinate System

The reference point in the machine is referred to as the machine zero and the coordinate system which has its origin at the machine zero is called the machine coordinate system. The machine zero is set for each individual machine using system parameters and it is not necessary to change the setting after the installation of the machine.

If "0" is set for the encoder zero point offset (system parameter), the machine coordinate system agrees with the encoder coordinate system.

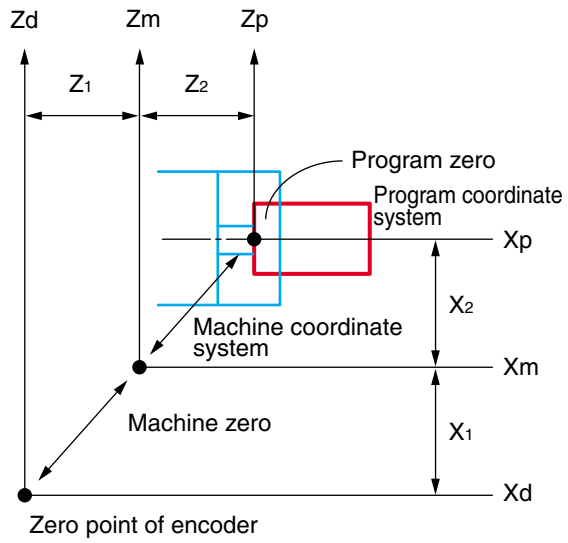
1-4. Program Coordinate System

The coordinate system used as the reference for program commands is called the program coordinate system.

The position of the origin of the program coordinate system varies according to the kind of workpieces to be machined and the origin is set at the required position by setting the zero offset data. The program coordinate system used for machining a specific kind of workpiece is thus defined based on the set origin.

Although the origin of a program coordinate system (program zero) can be set at any position, it is usually set on the centerline of a workpiece for the X-axis and at the left end face of workpiece for the Z-axis.

SECTION 2 COORDINATE SYSTEMS AND COMMANDS



X_d, Z_d : Output value of position encoder
(0: Zero point of position encoder)

X_m, Z_m : Coordinate values in the machine coordinate system
(0: Machine zero)

X_p, Z_p : Coordinate values in the program coordinate system
(0: Program zero)

X_1, Z_1 : Offset amount of position encoder

X_1, Z_1 : Offset amount of position encoder

2. Coordinate Commands

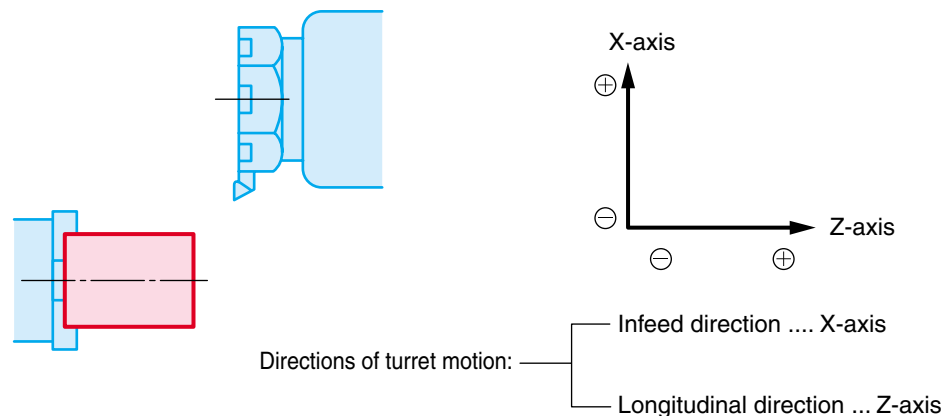
2-1. Controlled Axis

- The following table lists the addresses necessary for axis control.

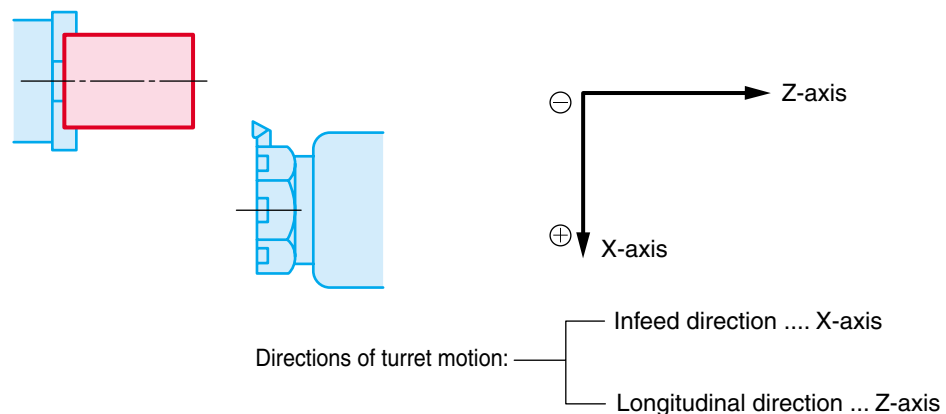
| | Address | Contents |
|-------------|---------|--|
| Linear axis | X | Controlled axis in the direction parallel to the workpiece end face |
| | Z | Controlled axis in the direction parallel to the workpiece longitudinal direction. |
| Rotary axis | C | Rotary axis in a plane orthogonal to Z-axis |

- A command used to move an axis consists of an axis address, a direction of movement, and a target point. For the designation of a target point, two different methods are available: absolute commands and incremental commands. With absolute commands, the target point is specified using the coordinate values in the program coordinate system and with incremental commands the target point is defined by relative movement distance in reference to the actual position. For details of absolute and incremental commands, refer to 2-4. "Absolute and Incremental commands".
- The basic coordinate system is a right-hand orthogonal coordinate system that is fixed on a workpiece.

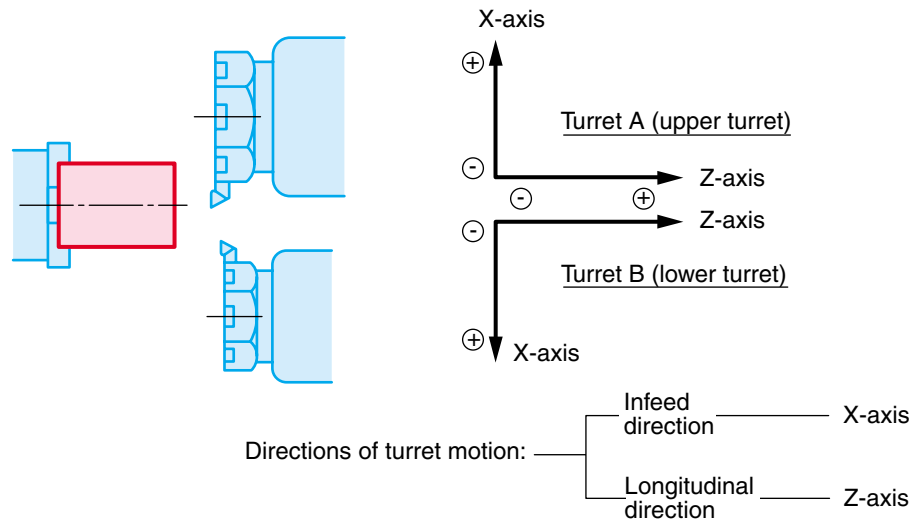
(1) Single-saddle NC lathe



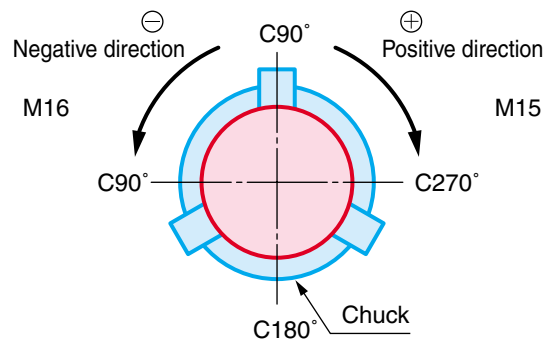
(2) Single-saddle NC lathe (flat bed)



(3) Two-saddle NC lathe



(4) C-axis coordinate system



(Viewed from tailstock)

Rightward rotation is defined as positive direction of C-axis movement and is commanded by M15. M16 is used to specify C-axis movement in the negative direction.

2-2. Commands in Inch System

If the inch/metric switchable specification is selected, it is possible to specify dimensions in the inch unit system. Even if dimensions are specified in the inch system values in a part program, the NC processes the data on the basis of metric system values. The unit system to be selected for data input is determined according to the setting of an NC optional parameter (UNIT). The actual unit system for data input can be checked on the NC optional parameter (UNIT) screen.

NOTICE

In the conversion from the inch system data to the metric system data, used for internal processing by the NC, real data values below the minimum input unit are rounded off. Integer data values are truncated.

2-3. Position of Decimal Point

It is possible to select the unit system of the place of a decimal point. Units of the data available with the control are shown below and the unit to be employed can be selected by entering a proper parameter data. Once the unit system of the command data is established, it applies to all numerical data to be entered, such as MDI operation and zero offset data.

2-3-1. Metric System

- 1 μm
- 10 μm
- 1 mm

2-3-2. Inch System (Inch/metric switchable specification):

- 1/10000 inch
- 1 inch

Unit Data Table (Value for data "1")

| Dimension | Metric System | | | Inch System | |
|--|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| | 1 μm | 10 μm | 1 mm | 1/10000 inch | 1 inch |
| Length: X, Z, I, K, D, H, L, U, W | 0.001 (mm) | 0.1 (mm) | 1 (mm) | 0.0001 (inch) | 1 (inch) |
| Feed (/rev): F, E | 0.001 (mm/rev) | 0.01 (mm/rev) | 1 (mm/rev) | 0.0001 (inch/rev) | 1 (inch/rev) |
| Feed (/min): A, B, C | 0.1 (mm/min) | 1 (mm/min) | 1 (mm/min) | 0.01 (inch/min) | 1 (inch/min) |
| Angle: A, B, C | 0.001 ($^{\circ}$) | 0.01 ($^{\circ}$) | 1 ($^{\circ}$) | 0.001 ($^{\circ}$) | 1 ($^{\circ}$) |
| Time: F, E | 0.01 (sec) | 0.1 (sec) | 1 (sec) | 0.01 (sec) | 1 (sec) |
| Spindle min^{-1} {rpm}: S | 1 (min^{-1} {rpm}) | 1 (min^{-1} {rpm}) | 1 (min^{-1} {rpm}) | 1 (min^{-1} {rpm}) | 1 (min^{-1} {rpm}) |
| Surface speed: S | 1 (m/min) | 1 (m/min) | 1 (m/min) | 1 (feet/min) | 1 (feet/min) |

Example 1: 1 mm unit system

Commanding:

- 0.001 mm movement of X-axis X0.001
- 10 mm movement of X-axis X10
- 100.00 mm movement of X-axis X100.01
- Feedrate of 0.23456 mm/rev. F0.23456

The following commands are all handed as X1 mm:

X1
X1.0
X1.00
X1.000

Example 2: 10 mm unit system

Commanding:

- 0.001 mm movement of X-axis X0.1
- 10 mm movement of X-axis X1000
- 100.010 mm movement of X-axis X10001
- Feedrate of 0.23456 mm/rev. F23.456

Example 3: 1 mm unit system

Commanding:

- 0.001 mm movement of X-axis X0.1
- 10 mm movement of X-axis X10000
- 100.010 mm movement of X-axis X100010
- Feedrate of 0.23456 mm/rev. F234.56

[Supplement]

For F words, numerical data smaller than the selected unit system is effective if it consists of up to eight digits.

F1.2345678Acceptable
F100.000001.....Alarm (9 digits)

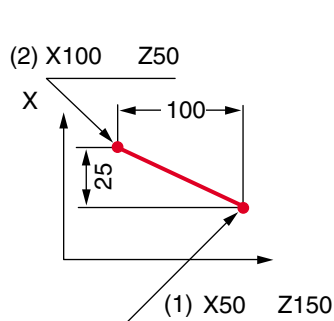
2-4. Absolute and Incremental Commands (G90, G91)

The amount of axis movement can be expressed by either absolute commands or incremental commands.

- 1) Absolute commands
Designated with G90
Commanded values are coordinate values in the program coordinate system.
When the control is reset, it is in the G90 mode.
- 2) Incremental commands
Designated with G91
Commanded values are the travel from the actual position to the target position.

Example:

(Positioning from point (1) to point (2)):



Absolute

G00 X50 Z150 (1)

X100 Z50 (2)

Incremental

G00 X50 Z150 (1)

*G91 X50 Z-100 (2)

*Designate dimensional differences between points (2) and (1).

NOTICE

- 1) In incremental programming, the X word should be expressed as a diameter.
- 2) It is not permissible to specify both G90 and G91 in the same block.

2-5. Diametric and Radial Commands

In a turning operation, the workpiece is rotated while being machined. Due to the nature of the turning operation, the tool cuts a circle with a radius equivalent to the distance from the center of rotation to the tool nose position. In a program, X-axis commands specify the diameter of the circle to be cut. If a command of "X100" is specified, for example, the actual position data displayed on the screen is "100" and the workpiece is machined to a cylinder of 100-mm diameter.

In compound operations, commands in the X-axis direction are specified as diametric values too, although this type of operation is not a turning operation. In the coordinate conversion mode, however, the radial values (actual length in an orthogonal coordinate system) must be specified for both X- and Y-axis commands.

SECTION 3 MATH FUNCTIONS

1. Positioning (G00)

[Function]

Each axis moves independently from the actual position to the target position at its own rapid feedrate. At the start and end of axis movement, it is automatically accelerated and decelerated.

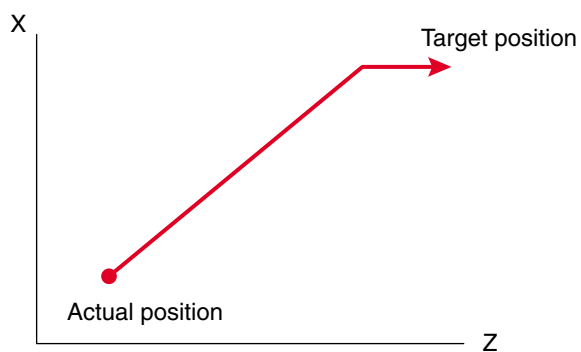
[Programming format]

G00 X__ Z__ C__

X/Z/C : Indicates the target position for positioning operation.

[Details]

- In G00 mode positioning, execution of the commands in the next block begins only after the positioning at the target position given in the current block is completed.
- Non-linear interpolation mode:
The axes move independently of each other at a rapid feedrate. Therefore, the resultant tool path is not always a straight line.



NOTICE

The rapid feedrates of each axis are set by the machine specifications.

2. Linear Interpolation (G01)

[Function]

The G01 command specifies the axes to move directly from the current position to the specified coordinate values at the specified feedrate.

[Programming format]

G01 X__ Z__ C__ F__

X, Z, C : Target point (end point)

F : Feedrate.

The specified value remains effective until updated by another value.

NOTICE

- 1) The feedrate becomes zero when the NC is reset.
- 2) The feedrate for each axis is indicated below. (Calculate feedrate for X and Z-axes as incremental values.)

G01 XxZzFf

Calculation of feedrates:

$$\text{X-axis feedrate } FX = \frac{X}{L} f$$

$$\text{Z-axis feedrate } FZ = \frac{Z}{L} f$$

$$\text{where } L_3 = \sqrt{x^2 + z^2}$$

x, z, f: Command values specified in a program

3. Circular Interpolation (G02, G03)

[Function]

Circular interpolation can be used to generate a cutting path which follows an arc.

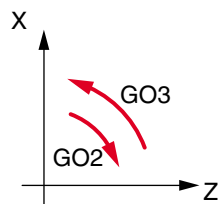
[Programming format]

G02 X__ Z__ { L__ } F__
(G03) { I__ K__ }

G02 : Direction of rotation : Sets clockwise rotation
 G03 : Direction of rotation : Sets counterclockwise rotation
 X, Z : G90 mode : Set the end point in the program coordinate system
 X, Z : G91 mode : Sets the end point in reference to the starting point
 (values should include signs)
 I, K : Set the distance of the center of the arc from the starting point (values should include signs)
 L : Sets the radius of the arc
 F : Sets the feedrate

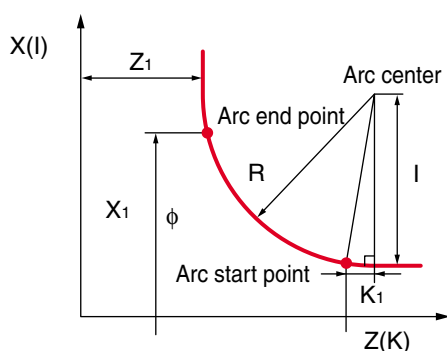
[Details]

- The two directions of rotation, clockwise and counterclockwise, are defined when viewing the Z-X plane from the positive direction of the axis orthogonal to the plane in the right-hand orthogonal coordinate system.

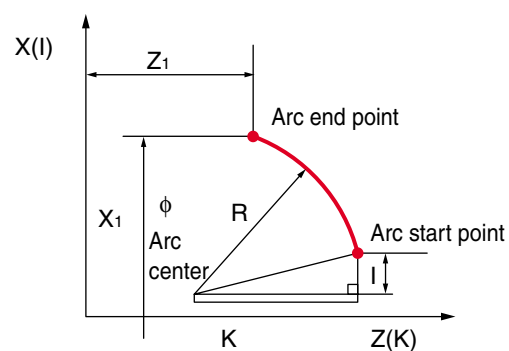


- The end point of an arc is defined as an absolute value or an incremental value depending on the G90/G91 selection.
- The center of an arc is expressed by I and K, which correspond to X and Z respectively. That is, I expresses the X coordinate value and K the Z coordinate value of the center of the arc in reference to the starting point of the arc.

For I and K, signed incremental values are used regardless of the mode, G90 or G91.



G02: Both I and K values are positive
 Z_1 , X_1 indicate the coordinate values of the arc end point.

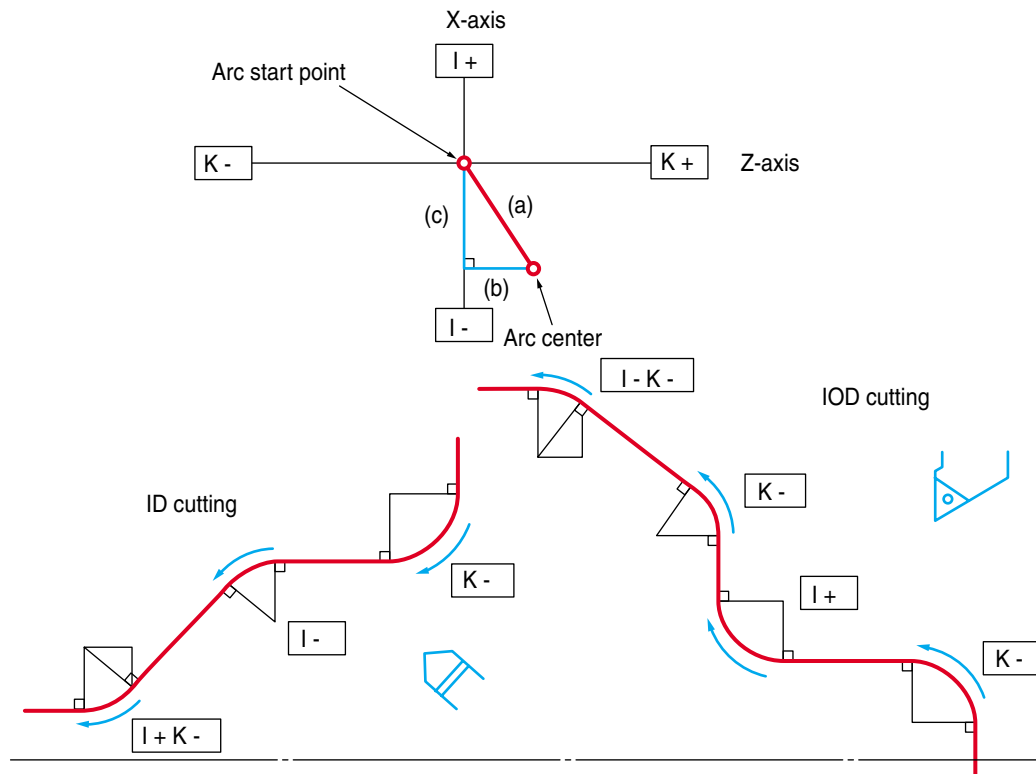


G03: Both I and K values are positive
 Z_1 , X_1 indicate the coordinate values of the arc end point

Determining Sign and Numeric Value of I and K Words:

See the figure below. Assume the coordinate system has its origin at the arc start point. Draw a right-angled triangle taking the segment connecting the arc center and arc start point as the hypotenuse. The length of side (b), parallel to the Z-axis, is the value of the K word and that of side (c), parallel to the X-axis, is the value of the I word.

Concerning the sign of these words, when side (b) lies in the positive direction of the assumed coordinate system, it is taken as a positive value and when it lies in the negative direction, it is negative. The sign of I words is determined in a similar way. That is, when side (c) lies in the positive direction of the coordinate system, the I word has a positive value and when it lies in the negative direction, the I word has a negative value.



- **Direct Radius Command**

It is possible to execute circular interpolation by specifying the X and Z coordinate values of the target point and the radius of the arc instead of using I and K commands.

[Supplement]

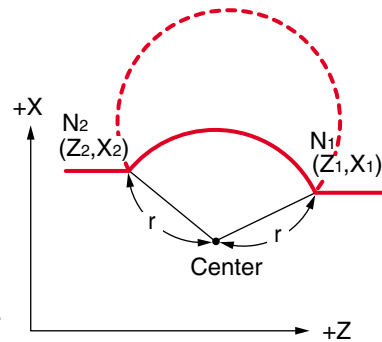
- The G code used to call circular interpolation is G02 or G03, as when using I and K.
- The radius of the arc is expressed by an L word which must have a positive value.
- A block containing an L word without a K or I word is an arc radius command.
- When expressing an arc by its radius, the commands must contain both X and Z words. If either of them is omitted, an alarm results.
- If an L word is specified in a block containing I and/or K word, an alarm results.
- If the distance from the current position to the target point (end point) is larger than two times the specified radius, an alarm results since circular interpolation cannot be performed.
- In direct arc command programming, one arc command yields two arcs; one with central angle less than 180° , and another larger than 180° . The arc with central angle less than 180° is selected. To obtain the arc whose central angle is greater than 180° , specify "CALRG" in the block commanding circular interpolation.
- The direct radius command programming is effective in:

LAP
Tool nose radius compensation mode
Subprograms

- Incremental programming mode (G91)
In direct radius command programming, the control automatically calculates the coordinates of the center of the arc, I and K, from the programmed radius L and the coordinates of the end point, X and Z, to perform circular interpolation.

The program for the example in the figure to the right is as follows.
Program:

```
N1 G01 X1 Z1 F1
N2 G03 X2 Z2 Lr
With the commands above,
the arc indicated by a thick solid line is obtained.
```



```
To move the tool along the arc indicated by dashed lines, program as follows:
N1 G01 X1 Z1 F1
N2 G03 CALRG X2 Z2 Lr
```

- Feedrates
The feedrate during circular interpolation is the feedrate component tangential to the arc.

NOTICE

- 1) If I or K is omitted, I0 or K0 applies.
- 2) I and K values should be specified as radii.
- 3) An arc extending into two or more quadrants can be specified by the commands in a single block.
- 4) If either X or Z is omitted, circular interpolation is possible within one quadrant.
- 5) An alarm will be activated if the difference in radius between the start and end point of an arc is greater than the value set for optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 1) No. 6 Allowable error in circular interpolation.

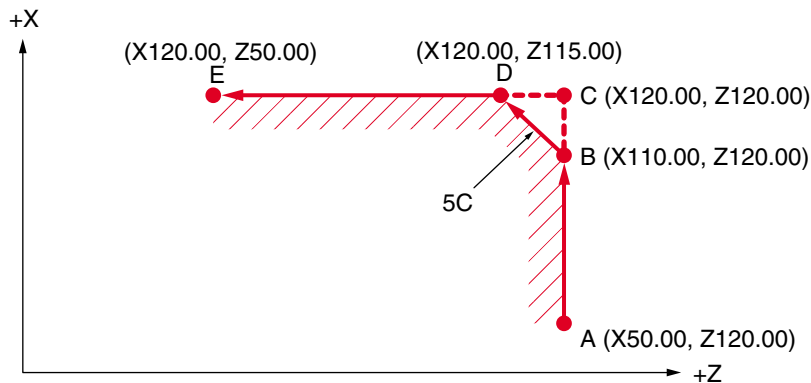
4. Automatic Chamfering

When cutting a workpiece, it is often necessary to chamfer a sharp edge (either straight-line chamfering (C-chamfering) or rounding). Although such chamfering can be accomplished using conventional interpolation commands (G01, G02, G03), the automatic chamfering function permits chamfering to be done with a simple program.

For chamfering at any required angle, the automatic any-angle chamfering function should be used.

To use the automatic chamfering function, set "1" for optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 1) Auto. any-angle chamfering. If the automatic any-angle chamfering function is required, set "any-angle chamfering" for this parameter.

4-1. C-chamfering (G75)



To cut the contour shown above along the points A, B, D and E, program as follows:

```
G75 G01 X120 L-5 FΔΔ CR
```

after positioning the cutting tool at point A.

With the commands above, the cutting tool moves from point A to B and then to D, thus automatically chamfering the corner at 45° with a size of 5 mm.

G75 : Specifies C-chamfering

X120 : X coordinate of Point C

L-5 : Size of chamfered face

The sign is determined by the direction of axis movement;

“+” when the Z-axis (X-axis) moves in the positive direction after X-axis (Z-axis) motion.

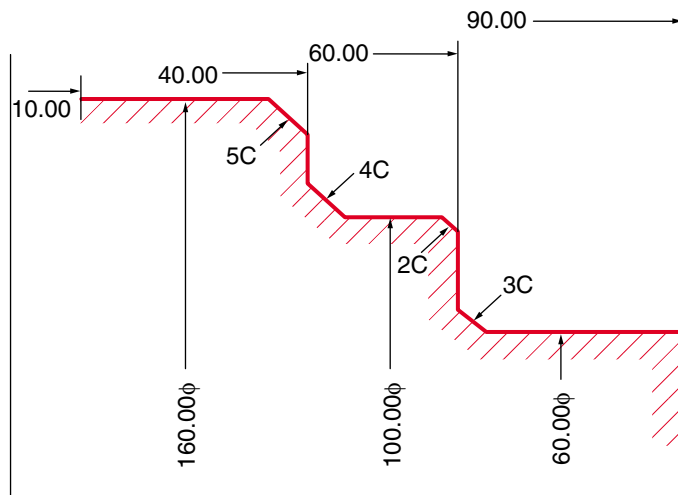
“-” when the Z-axis (X-axis) moves in the negative direction after X-axis (Z-axis) motion.

When the coordinates of point E are commanded, the cutting tool moves from Point D to Point E.

[Details]

- G75 is effective only in the G01 mode. If G75 is specified in another mode, it causes an alarm.
- G75 is non-modal and active only in the commanded block.
- If the axis movement dimension specified in the block calling for automatic chamfering (A - C in the figure above) is smaller than the absolute value of the L word (B - C in the figure above), an alarm results.
- If the axis movement dimensions specified in the block calling for automatic chamfering are zero both for X and Z, or if neither the X nor the Z value is zero in such a block, an alarm occurs.
The block calling for the automatic chamfering mode can contain only one dimension word, either X or Z.
- The automatic chamfering program is effective in:
LAP
Tool nose radius compensation mode

[Program example]

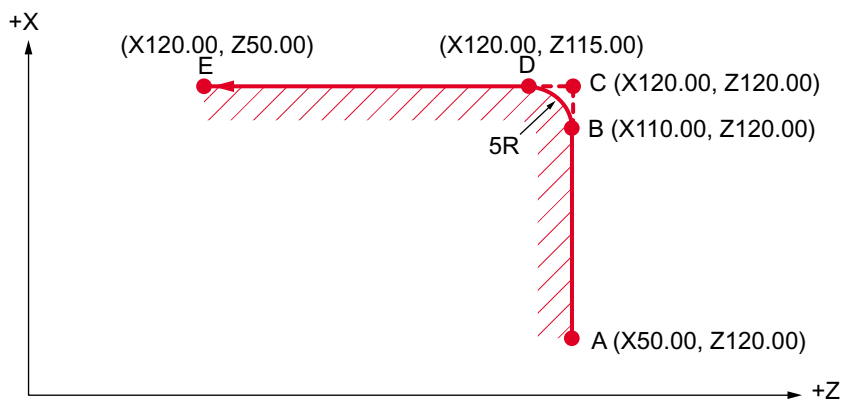


```

:
:
N101   G01   X60   Z92   F0.1
N102   G75           Z60   F0.05  L3
N103   G75   X100           L-2
N104   G75           Z40           L4
N105   G75   X160           L-5
N106           Z10
:
:

```

4-2. Rounding (G76)



To cut the contour shown above along the points A, B, D and E, program as follows:

G76 G01 X120 L-5 FΔΔ CR

after positioning the cutting tool at point A.

With the commands above, the cutting tool moves from point A to B and then to D, thus automatically rounding the corner to a radius of 5 mm.

G76 : Specifies rounding of a corner

X120 : X coordinate of Point C

L-5 : Radius of rounding circle

The sign is determined by the direction of axis movement;

“+” when the Z-axis (X-axis) moves in the positive direction after the X-axis (Z-axis) motion.

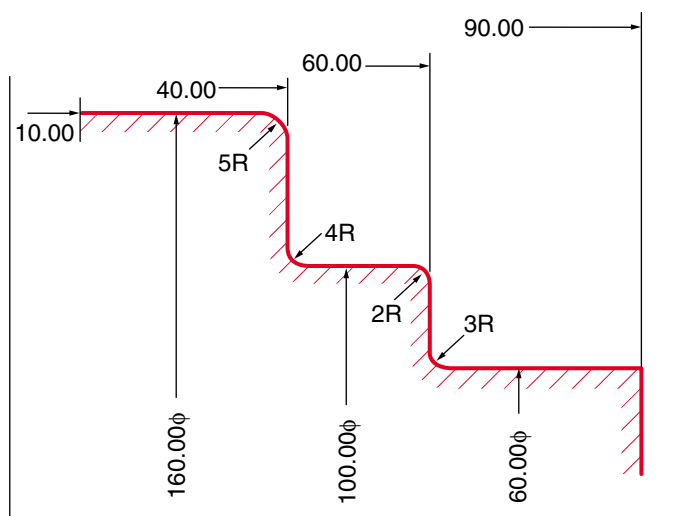
“-” when the Z-axis (X-axis) moves in the negative direction after the X-axis (Z-axis) motion.

When the coordinates of point E are commanded, the cutting tool moves from point D to point E.

[Details]

- G76 is effective only in the G01 mode. If G76 is specified in a mode other than G01, an alarm occurs.
- G76 is non-modal and active only in the commanded block.
- The rounding describes a 1/4 circle with the radius specified by an L word.
- If the axis movement dimension specified in the block calling for automatic chamfering (A - C in the figure above) is smaller than the absolute value of the L word (B - C in the figure above), an alarm results.
- If the axis movement dimensions specified in the block calling for automatic chamfering are zero both for X and Z, or if neither X nor Z value is zero in such a block, an alarm occurs.
The block calling for automatic chamfering mode can contain only one dimension word, either X or Z.
- The automatic chamfering program is effective in:
LAP
Tool nose radius compensation mode

[Program Example]



```

N101 G01 X60 Z92 F0.1
N102 G76 Z60 F0.05 L3
N103 G76 X100 L-2
N104 G76 Z40 L4
N105 G76 X160 L-5
N106 Z10

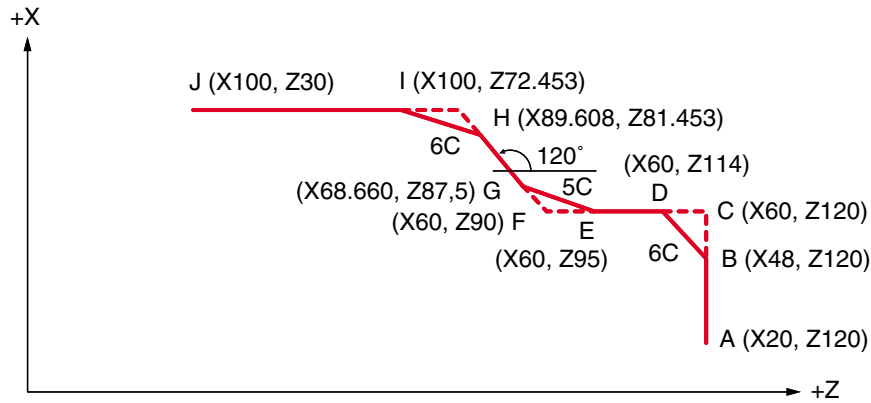
```


4-3. Automatic Any-Angle Chamfering

When cutting a workpiece, it is often necessary to chamfer the sharp (C-chamfer or R-chamfer) corners and edges. If chamfering is required on edges having an angle other than 90°, programming chamfering using G01, G02 and G03 commands is not easy. This automatic chamfering function can program chamfering easily.

[Programming Examples]

1) C-Chamfering (G75)



```

:
:
N100 G00 X20 Z120
N110 G75 G01 X60 L6 FΔΔΔ
N120 G75 Z90 L5
N130 G75 A120 X100 L6
N140 Z30
:
:

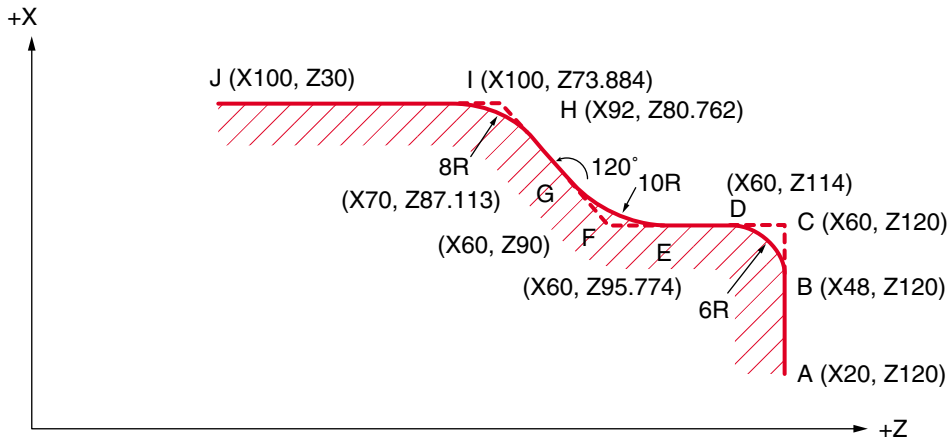
```

With the program above, the cutting tool moves from point A to point J in the sequence A, B, D, E, G, H, I and J, thus accomplishing chamfering of B-D, E-G and H-I.

[Supplement]

Angle commands (A) are designated in reference to the Z-axis.

2) R-Chamfering (G76)



```

:
:
N100 G00 X20 Z120
N110 G76 G01 X60 L6 FΔΔ
N120 G76 Z90 L10
N130 G76 A120 X100 L8
N140 Z30
:
:

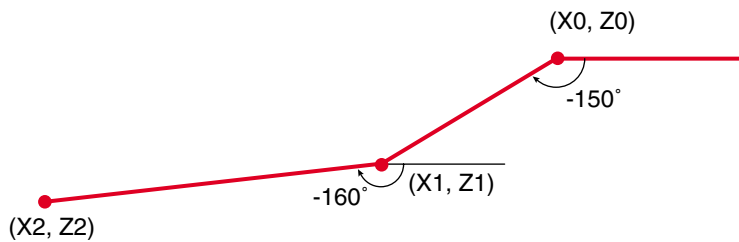
```

With the program above, the cutting tool moves from point A to point J in the sequence A, B, D, E, G, H, I and J, thus accomplishing chamfering of B-D, E-G, and H-I.

[Supplement]

With the C-chamfer function, axis movements in the G00, G01, G34 and G35 modes can be designated by simply entering an angle command A without X and/or Z coordinate data.

Example:



```

G00 X0 Z0 CR
G01 A-150 FΔ CR
X2 Z2 A-160 CR

```

(X1, Z1) should not be designated; it is automatically generated in the NC.

NOTICE

- 1) Both G75 and G76 are effective only in the G01 mode and if they are designated in a mode other than G01 an alarm occurs.
- 2) If the axis movement amount is smaller than the chamfering size, an alarm occurs.
- 3) Chamfering is possible only at corners between two lines. Chamfering at corners between two arcs, between a line and an arc, or between an arc and a line is impossible. If chamfering at such corners is attempted, an alarm occurs.
- 4) The chamfering command is effective both in the LAP and nose radius compensation mode.
- 5) If only an angle command A is designated in G00, G01, G34, or G35 mode operations, the next axis movement command must contain A, X and Z commands so that the end point of the line commanded can be defined. If these commands are not designated and the end point cannot be defined, then an alarm occurs.
- 6) If chamfering commands G75 and G76 are designated without axis movement commands X and Y or if they are designated only with an A command, the control reads the commands in the next sequence to calculate the point of intersection automatically. Therefore, if the next sequence does not contain adequate data for this calculation, an alarm occurs.

5. Torque Limit and Torque Skip Function

To transfer a workpiece from the first-process chuck to the second-process chuck with multi-process models*, the end face of the second-process chuck jaws must be pushed against the workpiece for stable workpiece seating. The torque limit command and the torque skip command are used to control the torque of the second-process chuck feed servomotor and to push the workpiece with the optimal thrust.

* Multi-process models include sub spindle models, opposing two-spindle models, etc.

5-1. Torque Limit Command (G29)

[Function]

Prior to workpiece transfer, designate the torque limit command to control the maximum torque of the second-process chuck feed servomotor.

[Program Format]

G29 P Δ __

(Designate an axis to be fed: Z or W, for Δ.)

[Details]

- The torque limit value is set as a percentage, taking the rated torque of the axis feed servomotor as 100%.
- The maximum torque limit value is set for optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 2).

5-2. Torque Limit Cancel Command (G28)

[Function]

The torque limit cancel command cancels the maximum torque limit designated with G29.

When this command is designated, the axis feed motor can output its maximum output torque.

[Programming format]

G28

5-3. Torque Skip Command (G22)

[Programming format]

G22 Z__ D__ L__ F__ PZ =__

Z : Target point (mm)

D : Distance between the target point and the approaching point as an incremental value (mm)

L : Distance between the target point and the virtual approaching point as an incremental value (mm)

F : Feedrate (mm/min or mm/rev)

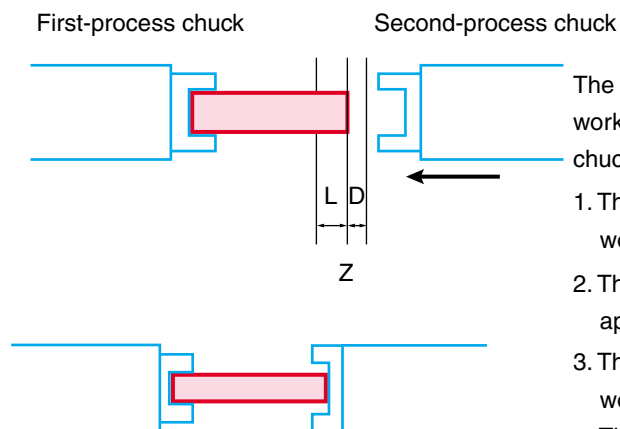
PZ : Preset torque value (%)

[Details]

- For the target point and the set torque value, designate the axis to be fed..
- An alarm (alarm A 1220) occurs if the preset torque value is not reached when the second-process chuck has moved to the virtual approaching point.
- Designate a value equal to or smaller than “2.5 m/min (8.20 fpm)” for F.
- Before setting a value for PZ, check the actual motor torque value** at axis feed at the feedrate designated by F, and set a value for PZ which is larger than the actual torque value by 10%.

** Check the RLOAD value displayed on the axis data page of the CHECK DATA screen.

If the preset torque value is too small, it is reached during approaching motion, resulting in an occurrence of alarm 1219.



The explanation here is for a case in which a workpiece is transferred from the first-process chuck to the second-process chuck.

1. The second-process chuck approaches the workpiece at feedrate F.
2. The feedrate is reduced to 1/5 of F at the approaching point (Z - D) point).
3. The second-process chuck contacts the workpiece at target point Z.

The servomotor is controlled so that the second-process chuck is kept pushed against the workpiece.

4. When the motor torque reaches the preset value, the NC recognizes workpiece seating to be complete, and the next program block is executed.

Feedrate F → F/5

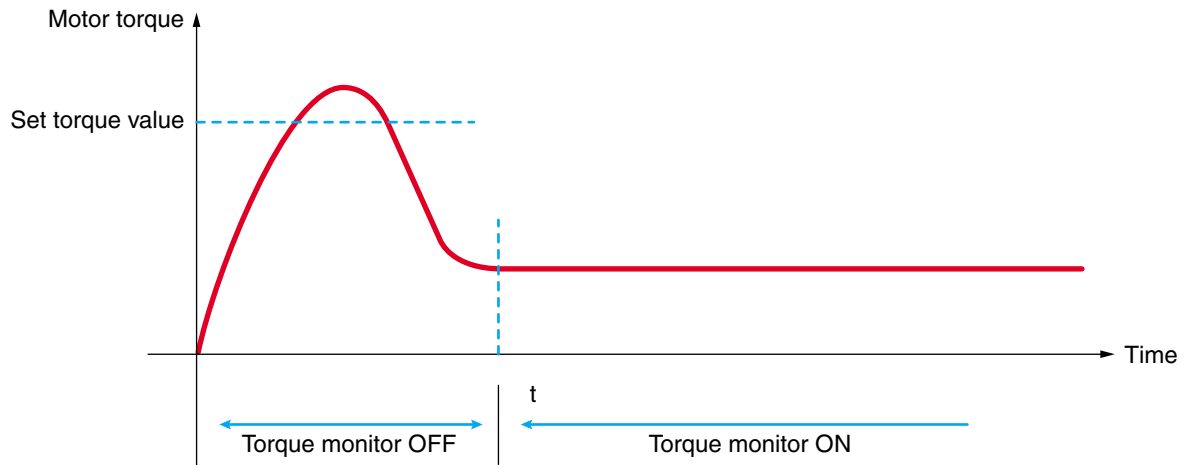
- Z : Target point
 D : Distance between the target point and the approaching point as an incremental value
 L : Distance between the target point and the virtual approaching point as an incremental value

5-4. Parameter Setting

1) Torque skip torque monitoring delay time

If motor torque monitoring is started at the start of torque skip feed designated by G22, the preset torque value could, in some cases, be exceeded on starting up the motor.

To avoid this, set the torque monitoring delay time t for a parameter. Motor torque is not monitored for the time duration set for t .



Optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 2)

Setting unit : 10 (ms)
 Setting range : 0 to 9999
 Initial setting : 0

2) Upper limit for torque skip torque limit

The upper limit for the P command value in the G29 block can be set.

Optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 2)

Setting unit : 1 (%)
 Setting range : 1 to 100
 Initial setting : 0

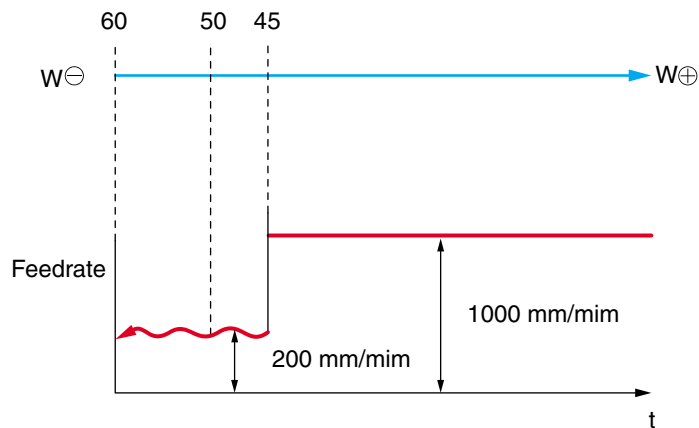
5-5. Program Example

This is a program example for transferring a workpiece to the sub spindle chuck.

```

:
:
G29 PW=30.....Limits the maximum torque of the sub spindle feed motor
                (W-axis motor). (30 %)
G94 G22 W50 D5 L10 F1000 PW=25.....Pushes the sub spindle chuck against
                the workpiece end face by torque skip
G29 PW=5.....Lowers the W-axis motor torque.
M248.....Sub spindle chuck close
M84.....Main spindle chuck open
G28.....Cancels W-axis torque limit.
G90 G00 W300.....Returns the W-axis to the retract position at the rapid feedrate.
:
:

```



SECTION 4 PREPARATORY FUNCTIONS

G codes are used to specify particular functions which are to be executed in individual blocks. Every G code consists of the address "G" plus a 3-digit number (00 to 399)

- Effective G Code Ranges

One-shot : A one-shot G code is effective only in a specified block and is automatically canceled when program execution moves to the next block.

Modal : A modal G code is effective until it is changed to another G code in the same group.

- Special G Codes

The mnemonic codes of subprogram calls (G101 through G110, for instance) and branch instructions are called special G codes. Every special G code must be specified at the beginning of a block, not part way through a block. Note, however, that a "/" (block delete) and a sequence name may be placed before a special G code.

1. Dwell (G04)

[Function]

If dwell is specified, execution of the next block is suspended for the specified length of time after the completion of the preceding block.

[Programming format]

G04 F__

- F : Specify the length of time for which the execution of a program is suspended.
The unit of command values is determined by the selected programming unit system.
For details, refer to the optional parameter (unit system).
The maximum allowable length of a dwell period is 9999.99 seconds.

2. Zero Shift/Max. Spindle Speed Set (G50)

2-1. Zero Shift

[Function]

With the G50 code, zero offset value is automatically calculated and zero setting is carried out according to the calculated value.

This feature is effective when cutting a workpiece on which the same contour is repeated.

[Programming format]

G50 X__ Z__ C__

X/Z/C : Specify the coordinate value to be taken as the actual position data after zero shift.

[Details]

For the present X- and Z-axis position, the coordinate value specified following G50 are assigned.

[Program]

```
N004 G00 X0 Z0
N005 G50 X1 Z1
N006 G00 X2 Z2
```

With the program above, the axes are positioned to the coordinate point (X0, Z0) by the commands in block N004 first. When the commands in N005 are executed, the coordinate system is re-established so that (X0, Z0), where the axes have been positioned, now has the coordinate values (X1, Z1) which are specified following G50.

This program shifts the origin of the coordinate system:

$$X = X0 - X1$$

$$Z = Z0 - Z1$$

Provided X0 = 100 mm and X1 = 200 mm, zero offset amount is calculated as;

$$100 - 200 = -100 \text{ mm}$$

This amount can be checked on the screen.

Dimension words in sequences N006 and after that are all referenced to the origin newly established by the commands in N005.

NOTICE

- 1) Axes not specified in the block containing G50 are not subject to zero offset.
- 2) G50 is non-modal and active only in the programmed block. (Zero offset is calculated only in the G50 block. All dimension words after that block are referenced to the shifted new origin.)
- 3) When the control is reset, all zero set data are cleared and the initial zero offset data become effective.
- 4) No tool offset number entry is allowed in the block containing the G50 code.

2-2. Max. Spindle Speed Set

[Function]

Sometimes the spindle speed must be clamped at a certain speed due to the restrictions on the allowable speed of a chuck, influence of centrifugal force on workpiece gripping force, imbalance of a workpiece, or other factors. This feature allows a maximum spindle speed to be set in such cases.

[Programming format]

G50 S__

S : Specify the maximum spindle speed.

[Details]

Once set, the specified speed remains effective until another spindle speed is specified.

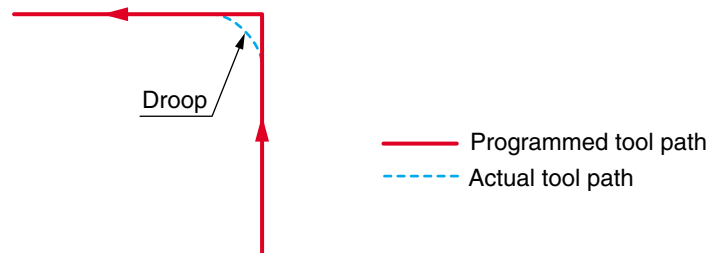
3. Droop Control (G64, G65)

[Function]

The axis movements of the machine are controlled by a servo system in which the axis moves to eliminate the lag (termed DIFF or droop) between the actual tool position and the commanded coordinate.

Due to existence of DIFF (servo error), the actual path does not precisely agree with the commanded tool path when cutting a sharp corner, as illustrated below:

The Droop Corner Control Function is provided to eliminate or reduce such path tracing error to acceptable amounts by stopping the generation of functions (pulses) at the corner until the DIFF reaches the preset permissible droop amount.



[Programming format]

- Droop corner control OFF command
G64
(The control is placed in the G64 mode when G64 is turned ON.)
- Droop corner control ON command
G65

[Details]

- With G65 presented, axis movement commands in G00, G01, G02, G03, G31, G32, G33, G34, and G35 mode are completed after the DIFF amount becomes smaller than the permissible droop amount.
- The permissible droop amount can be set within a range from 0 to 1.000 mm for a user parameter at the NC operation panel.

4. Feed Per Revolution (G95)

[Function]

Specify G95 to control tool movement (feedrate) in terms of “distance per spindle revolution” for turning operations.

[Programming format]

G95 F__

F : Specify movement distance per spindle revolution.

The unit of setting is determined according to the setting for the optional parameter (UNIT)

[Details]

- The allowable maximum feedrate depends on the machine specifications.
- On turning on the power, and after reset, the feed per revolution mode is selected.

5. Feed Per Minute (G94)

[Function]

Specify G94 to control tool movement (feedrate) in terms of “distance per minute” for turning operations.

[Programming format]

G94 F__

F : Specify tool movement distance per minute.

The unit of setting is determined according to the setting for the optional parameter (UNIT)

[Details]

- The allowable maximum feedrate depends on the machine specifications.

6. Constant Speed Control (G96/G97)

[Function]

When the constant speed cutting function is selected, cutting at a constant cutting speed is possible. This feature can reduce cutting time and also assure stable finish in end face cutting operations.

- Constant Speed Cutting Command

[Programming format]

G96 S__

S : Set the cutting speed (setting unit: m/min)

- Canceling Constant Speed Cutting

[Programming format]

G97 S__

S : Set the spindle speed to be used after canceling the constant speed cutting mode.

[Program Example]



N 000 G96 S100.....All cutting following this block is executed at a cutting speed of 100 m/min.



N 000 G97 S500.....After this block, cutting is carried out at a spindle speed of 500 min⁻¹ {rpm}.



NOTICE

- 1) If the spindle speed exceeds the maximum or minimum speed allowed within the range selected by an M code while in the constant speed cutting mode, it is fixed at the allowed maximum or minimum speed automatically; the LIMIT indication light on the operation panel goes on.
- 2) If the X-axis is moved a large distance at the rapid traverse rate while in the constant speed cutting mode, for example from the turret indexing position toward the workpiece or vice versa, there will be sudden changes in the rotational speed which, depending on the chucking method, could be dangerous.
Therefore, the constant speed cutting mode must be cancelled before commanding positioning of the cutting tool near the workpiece, return of the tool to the turret indexing position, or any other operation that causes large X-axis travel.
- 3) A block containing G96 or G97 must contain an S word.
- 4) Thread cutting programs cannot be executed in the G96 constant speed cutting mode.
- 5) To activate the constant speed cutting mode on turret B, specify G111 with G96. To restore the constant speed cutting mode to turret A, specify G110.
- 6) To execute the commands over two blocks continuously with control in the constant speed cutting mode without waiting for the spindle speed arrived signal, specify M61. To cancel this, specify M60.

SECTION 5 S, T, AND M FUNCTIONS

This section describes the S, SB, T, and M codes that specify the necessary machine operations other than axis movement commands.

- S : Spindle speed
- SB : Spindle speed of M-tool spindle
- T : Tool number, tool offset number, tool nose radius compensation number
- M : Miscellaneous function to control machine operation

One block can contain: one S code, one T code, and eight M codes.

1. S Functions (Spindle Functions)

[Function]

By specifying number following address S, spindle speed can be specified.

[Programming format]

S__

[Details]

- S command range: 0 to 65535
- If there is an S command and an axis move command in the same block, the S command is executed first and then the axis move command is executed.
- The S command will not be canceled when the NC is reset, however, it will be set to 0 when the power supply is turned off.
- To rotate the spindle, the S command must be specified in a block that precedes the block containing the spindle start command or in the same block.

NOTICE

- 1) For a machine equipped with the transmission gears, the required gear range should be selected with the corresponding M code.
- 2) Spindle rotation (forward, reverse) and stop are specified by M codes.

2. SB Code Function

[Function]

M-tool spindle speed is specified using address SB.

[Programming format]

SB = ___

If an address consisting of two or more characters is used, an equal symbol must be entered before a numeric value.

- SB command range: 0 to 65535
- M-tool spindle rotation (forward, reverse) and stop are specified by M codes.
- The SB command will not be canceled when the NC is reset, however, it will be set to 0 when the power supply is turned off.
- To rotate the M-tool spindle, the SB command must be specified in a block that precedes the block containing the M-tool spindle start command or in the same block.

NOTICE

- 1) For the machine equipped with the transmission gears for driving the M-tool spindle, the required gear range should be selected by a corresponding M code.
- 2) M-tool spindle rotation (forward, reverse) and stop are specified by M codes.

3. T Functions (Tool Functions)

[Function]

By specifying a 4-digit number (NC without tool nose radius compensation function) or a 6-digit number (NC with tool nose radius compensation function) following address T, tool number, tool offset number, and tool nose radius compensation number are indicated.

[Programming format]

T00△△□□

OO: Tool offset number

△△: Tool number (00 to 99, assuming maximum number of turret stations)

□□: Tool nose radius compensation number

The setting ranges for nose radius compensation numbers and tool compensation numbers are as follows:

- 1) For offset 32-set specification
 - Tool offset number: 00 to 32
 - Tool nose radius compensation number: 00 to 32
(if tool nose radius compensation function is supported.)
- 2) For offset 64-set specification
 - Tool offset number: 00 to 64
 - Tool nose radius compensation number: 00 to 64
(if tool nose radius compensation function is supported.)
- 3) For offset 96-set specification
 - Tool offset number: 00 to 96
 - Tool nose radius compensation number: 00 to 96
(if tool nose radius compensation function is supported.)

[Details]

If there is a T command and an axis move command in the same block, the T command is executed first and then the axis move command is executed.

NOTICE

The construction of the turret and its direction of rotation (forward, reverse, shorter-path) vary according to the machine specifications.

4. M Functions (Auxiliary Functions)

[Function]

The M codes are used for miscellaneous ON/OFF control and sequence control of the machine operation such as spindle start/stop and operation stop at the end of program. The programmable range for M codes is from 0 to 511.

[Examples of M codes]

The M codes listed below are processed as special functions.

For details on those M codes not listed here, refer to APPENDIX 3. "List of M Codes".

- 1) M00 (program stop)
After the execution of M00, the program stops. If the NC is started in this program stop state, the program restarts.
- 2) M01 (optional stop)
When M01 is executed when the optional stop switch on the machine operation panel is ON, the program stops. If the NC is started in this optional stop state, the program restarts.
- 3) M02, M30 (end of program)
These M codes indicate the end of a program.
When M02 or M30 is executed, the main program ends and reset processing is executed. The program is rewound its start. (In the case of a schedule program, execution of M02 or M30 in the main program does not reset the NC.)
- 4) M03, M04, M05 (spindle CW, CCW, stop)
These M codes control spindle rotation and stop; spindle CW (M03), spindle CCW (M04), and spindle stop (M05).
- 5) M12, M13, M14 (rotary tool CW, CCW, stop)
These M codes control rotary tool rotation and stop for the turning center; rotary tool stop (M12), rotary tool CW (M13), rotary tool CCW (M14).
- 6) M15, M16 (C-axis positioning direction)
These M codes control the C-axis rotation direction for positioning for the turning center; C-axis positioning in the positive direction (M15), C-axis positioning in the negative direction (M16).
- 7) M19 (spindle orientation)
This controls spindle orientation.
- 8) M20, M21 (tailstock barrier ON, OFF)
These M codes set and cancel the tailstock barrier which generates an alarm if the tool enters the area defined by the barrier; tailstock barrier ON (M21), tailstock barrier OFF (M20).
- 9) M22, M23 (chamfering ON, OFF for thread cutting)
These M codes set and cancel chamfering for thread cutting; chamfering ON (M23), chamfering OFF (M22).
- 10) M24, M25 (chuck barrier ON, OFF)
These M codes set and cancel the chuck barrier which generates an alarm if the tool enters the area defined by the barrier; chuck barrier ON (M25), chuck barrier OFF (M24).
- 11) M26, M27 (thread pitch axis X-axis, Z-axis)
These M codes specify the effective thread pitch axis for conventional thread cutting cycles; X-axis pitch command (M27), Z-axis pitch command (M26).
- 12) M32, M33, M34 (thread cutting mode; straight, zigzag, straight (reversed))
These M codes are used to specify the thread cutting mode in the compound fixed cycle and LAP; M32 for infeed along one side of the thread face to be cut (straight), M33 for zigzag infeed, and M34 for straight infeed along the opposite thread face from the one in the M32 mode (straight (reversed)).
- 13) M40, M41, M42, M43, M44 (spindle drive gear range; neutral, gear 1, gear 2, gear 3, gear 4)
These M codes are used to select the spindle drive gear range; neutral (M40), gear 1 (M41), gear 2 (M42), gear 3 (M43), and gear 4 (M44).

- 14) M48, M49 (spindle speed override ignore)
When the spindle speed override ignore function is valid, the spindle speed override rate is fixed at 100% regardless of the setting of the spindle override switch. The spindle speed override ignore function is canceled by specifying the cancel M code, resetting the CNC, or changing the operation mode.
< M codes >
- Spindle speed override ignore..... M49
Spindle speed override ignore cancel.....M48
- 15) M55, M56 (tailstock spindle retract, advance)
These M codes specify tailstock retract/advance operation.
- 16) M60, M61 (fixed surface speed arrival ignore OFF, ON)
These M codes are used to specify whether or not a program with constant surface speed control is executed continuously without waiting for attainment of the specified surface speed; M61 specifies advance to the next block without waiting for attainment of the specified surface speed, and M60 specifies advance to the next block only after attainment of the specified surface speed.
- 17) M63 (spindle rotation answer signal ignore)
The M codes relating to spindle control (M03, M04, M05, M19, M40 - M44) and S command are executed at the same time with axis move commands specified in the same block.
- 18) M73, M74, M75 (thread cutting pattern 1, 2, 3)
In multi-machining fixed cycle and thread cutting cycle in LAP, the cutting pattern (infeed pattern) is specified by these M codes. M73 for pattern 1, M74 for pattern 2, and M75 for pattern 3.
- 19) M83, M84 (chuck clamp, unclamp)
Regardless of the chuck clamp direction (I.D. or O.D.), the M code used to specify the clamping of a work-piece is always M83.
- 20) M85 (no return to the start point after the completion of LAP roughing cycle)
In LAP4, a roughing cycle is called by G85 or G86. When this M code is specified, the cutting tool does not return to the reference point of the cycle after the completion of the called roughing cycle, and the next block is executed continuously.
- 21) M86, M87 (turret clockwise rotation ON, OFF)
These M codes are used to specify whether or not the turret rotation direction is fixed in the clockwise direction; M86 specifies turret clockwise rotation ON, and M87 specifies turret clockwise rotation OFF.
- 22) M109, M110 (C-axis connection ON, OFF)
These M codes are used to select the spindle control mode for the multiple-process machining specification models. By specifying M110, the spindle is controlled in the C-axis control mode and by specifying M109, the control mode is returned to the spindle control mode. Note that M110 must be specified in a block without other commands.
- 23) M124, M125 (STM time-over check ON, OFF)
These M codes are used to determine whether or not an alarm is generated if the counted STM execution cycle time exceeds the parameter-set time; M124 specifies that the alarm is generated, and M125 specifies that the alarm is not generated.
- 24) M136 (shape definition for compound fixed cycle)
This M code is used to specify the shape for the compound fixed cycles provided for the multiple-process specification models. After the execution of the compound fixed cycle, the cutting tool returns to the start point of rapid traverse.
- 25) M140 (tapping cycle rotary tool fixed speed arrived answer signal ignore)
This M code is used to ignore the tapping cycle rotary tool fixed speed arrived answer signal; by specifying this M code, the timing difference between the output of rotary tool fixed speed arrived answer signal and the start of cutting feed can be zeroed. Note that this M code is available with the multiple-process specification models.

- 26) M141, M146, M147 (C-axis clamp used/not-used selection, C-axis unclamp, C-axis clamp)
For a compound fixed cycle carried out under light load on multiple-process specification models, it is not necessary to clamp the C-axis to carry out cutting. In such a case, M141 is used to select the "C-axis clamp is not used" state, thereby reducing cutting time.
M146 and M147 are used to control C-axis clamping and unclamping; M146 for C-axis clamp and M147 for C-axis unclamp.
- 27) M156, M157 (center work interlock ON, OFF)
When center work is selected, operation is possible only when the tailstock spindle is at the predetermined position. For chuck work, the tailstock spindle must be at the retract end position. These M codes are used to cancel the interlock function.

[Supplement]

- When the power supply is turned off or after the NC is reset, the NC is in the M156 state.
 - The state selected by these M codes is effective only for MDI and automatic operation modes.
- 28) M160, M161 (feedrate override fixed at 100% OFF, ON)
These M codes are used to specify whether or not the setting of the feedrate override dial, when other than 100%, is valid; in the M161 mode, if the setting of the feedrate override dial on the machine operation panel is in other than 100%, the setting is ignored and the feedrate commands are executed assuming a setting of 100%, and in the M160 mode, the setting of the feedrate override dial is valid.
- 29) M162, M163 (rotary tool spindle override fixed at 100% OFF, ON)
These M codes are used to specify whether or not the setting of the rotary tool spindle speed override dial, when other than 100%, is valid; in the M163 mode, if the setting of the rotary tool spindle speed override dial on the machine operation panel is in other than 100%, the setting is ignored and the rotary tool spindle speed commands are executed assuming the setting of 100%, and in the M162 mode, the setting of the rotary tool spindle speed override dial is valid.
- 30) M164, M165 (slide hold and single block ignore OFF, ON)
These M codes are used to specify whether or not the slide hold ON and single block ON statuses, set by the switches on the machine operation panel, are valid; in the M165 mode, if the slide hold or single block function is set ON with the corresponding switch on the machine operation panel, these functions are made invalid, and in the M166 mode, if the slide hold or single block function is set ON by the corresponding switch on the machine operation panel, these functions are made valid.
- 31) M166, M167 (tailstock spindle advance/retract interlock during spindle rotation ON, OFF)
To ensure safety, the tailstock spindle cannot normally be advanced or retracted while the spindle is rotating. However, tailstock spindle operation is permitted even while the spindle is rotating by turning OFF the interlock.

[Supplement]

- When the power supply is turned off or after the NC is reset, the NC is in the M166 state.
 - The state selected by these M codes is effective only for MDI and automatic operation modes.
- 32) M184, M185 (chuck open/close interlock ON, OFF)
To ensure safety, the chuck cannot normally be opened or closed while the spindle is rotating. However, chuck open/close operation is permitted even while the spindle is rotating by turning OFF the interlock.

[Supplement]

- When the power supply is turned off or after the NC is reset, the NC is in the M184 state.
- The state selected by these M codes is effective only for MDI and automatic operation modes.
- The state selected by these M codes is effective only when the door is closed.
- The chuck interlock OFF state is effective for chuck clamp/unclamp operation specified by M codes or external commands and it is not effective for the operation using the foot pedal and pushbutton switches.

- 33) M193, M194 (thread cutting phase matching control OFF, ON)
In the M194 mode, the phase offset amount at the thread cutting start point is calculated and compensation is carried out at the start and end points. After the completion of the thread cutting cycle, the M194 mode must be canceled by specifying M193 in a block without other commands.
- 34) M195, M196 (thread cutting phase matching move amount valid OFF, ON)
By specifying M196 in the block preceding the block which contains the commands to stop a program for thread cutting phase matching, the amount of manual axis movement done in phase matching is stored. M196 must be specified in a block without other commands.
After the completion of manual axis movement for phase matching, the M196 mode must be canceled by specifying M195 in a block without other commands.
- 35) M197 (clearing thread cutting phase matching amount)
This M code is used to clear the amount which is stored as the manual axis movement amount for phase matching.
- 36) M211, M212, M213, M214 (key-way cycle cutting mode; uni-directional, zigzag, specified cutting amount, equally-divided cutting amount)
M211 and M212 are used to specify the cutting direction in the key-way cutting cycle; uni-directional cutting (M211) and zigzag cutting (M212).
M213 and M214 are used to specify the infeed pattern; M213 specifies the specified cutting amount and M214 specifies the equally-divided cutting amount.
- 37) M241, M242 (rotary tool spindle speed range, LOW, HIGH)
These M codes are used to select the spindle speed range of the rotary tool spindle for the multiple-process specification models; low-speed range (M241), high-speed range (M242).

5. M-tool Spindle Commands

5-1. Programming Format

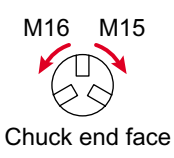
| | | | | | |
|------|------|--------------|--------------|------|---|
| % | | | | | |
| N001 | G00 | X1000 | Z1000 | | T△△□□ |
| N002 | | | | | M110 |
| N003 | G094 | X△△△ | Z△△△ | C△△△ | M15(M16) SB=△△△△ |
| N004 | G01 | X(Z)△△△ | F△ | | M147 M13 (M14) |
| | | | | | Program block for rotary tool machining |
| N100 | | X(Z)△△△ | | | |
| N101 | G00 | <u>X1000</u> | <u>Z1000</u> | | M146 |
| N102 | | | | | M109 |
| N103 | | | | | M02 |

[Details]

- M110 must be programmed in a block without other commands.
- It is advisable to limit the direction of rotation of the C-axis to either of the two directions, M15 or M16, for better positioning accuracy.
- M110 and M147 cannot be reset or canceled even when the control system is reset. To cancel them, specify M109 and M146, respectively.
- If commands relating to M-tools are specified while the C-axis is not engaged, an alarm occurs. An alarm does not occur if the M-tool spindle interlock (optional) is designated.

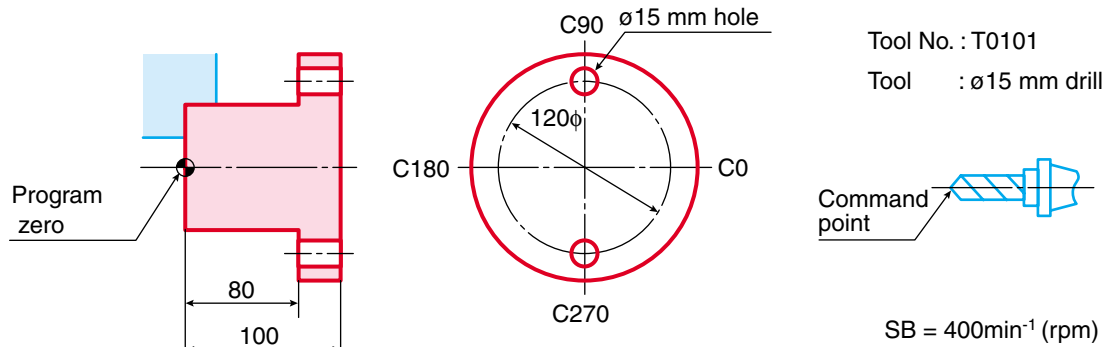
5-2. M Codes Used for C-axis Operation

The following codes are necessary for programming C-axis movements.

| Code | Details | |
|------|--|---|
| M110 | Used to designate the spindle to be controlled in the C-axis control mode. When programming C-axis commands, first specify M110 in a block without other commands. | |
| M109 | Used for switchover from the C-axis control mode to the spindle control mode. | |
| M147 | Used to clamp the C-axis. | |
| M146 | Used to unclamp the C-axis. The control system automatically selects the M146 mode when the power is turned on. Program M146 before starting C-axis rotation. | |
| M141 | C-axis clamp ineffective (compound fixed cycle mode) | |
| M15 | Used to rotate the C-axis in the positive direction. |  <p>Chuck end face</p> |
| M16 | Used to rotate the C-axis in the negative direction. | |
| QA = | Used to specify the number of C-axis revolutions. For example, QA=5 rotates C-axis five times. | |

* When the NC is reset, it is placed in the M15 mode.

[Example of Program]



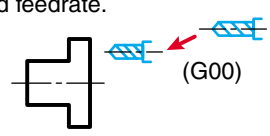
To drill two 15 mm dia. holes, create a program as indicated below:

| Continued from turning operation program | | | | | |
|--|------|-------|-------|------|-----------------|
| N099 | G00 | X1000 | Z1000 | | M05 |
| N100 | | | | | M01 |
| N101 | | | | | M110 |
| N102 | | | | M15 | |
| N103 | G94 | X120 | Z102 | C90 | T0101 SB=400 |
| N104 | G01 | | Z75 | F40 | M13 M147 |
| N105 | G00 | | Z102 | | |
| N106 | | | | C270 | M146 |
| N107 | G01 | | Z75 | | M147 |
| N108 | G00 | | Z102 | | |
| N109 | G095 | X1000 | Z1000 | | M12 M146 |
| N110 | | | | | M109 |
| N111 | | | | | M02 |

Designates the spindle as the C-axis.

Indexes C-axis in the positive direction.

The spindle indexes at the 90° position in positive direction and the drill is positioned near the workpiece surface at the rapid feedrate.

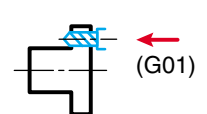


(G00)

Feedrate in mm/min mode is selected.

The drill starts rotation at 400 min⁻¹{rpm} in the leftward direction.

After the spindle is clamped, 15 mm dia. hole is drilled at a feedrate of 40 mm/min.



(G01)

The drill returns to the commanded point at the rapid feedrate.

The spindle is indexed at the 270° position after it is unclamped.

The second hole is drilled after the spindle is clamped.

The M-tool stops and the turret returns to the turret index position.

- Calculate the feedrate (mm/min) for drilling with the equation below:

$$\text{Feedrate (mm/min)} = \text{Tool speed (rpm)} \times \text{Feedrate (mm/rev)}$$

Therefore, when the tool speed is 400 min⁻¹{rpm} and the feedrate is 0.1 mm/rev, the feedrate (mm/min) is calculated as:

$$F = 400 \times 0.1 = 40 \text{ mm/min}$$
- When an end mill is used, its feedrate (mm/min) is calculated with the following equation:

$$\text{Feedrate (mm/min)} = \text{Tool speed (rpm)} \times \text{Feed (mm/blade)} \times \text{Number of end mill blades}$$
- Assuming an end mill with four blades (flutes) is used at 300 min⁻¹{rpm} and a feedrate of 0.05 mm/blade, the feedrate (mm/min) is

$$F = 300 \times 0.05 \times 4 = 60 \text{ mm/min}$$

6. STM Time Over Check Function

The duration of S, T, M cycle time is measured and if the measured time exceeds the parameter-set cycle time, an alarm occurs.

6-1. Check ON Conditions

- The check function is set effective or ineffective according to the setting for a machine parameter.
- The check function is turned on and off using the following M codes.
M124 : STM time over check start
M125 : STM time over check end

6-2. S, T, M Cycle Time Setting

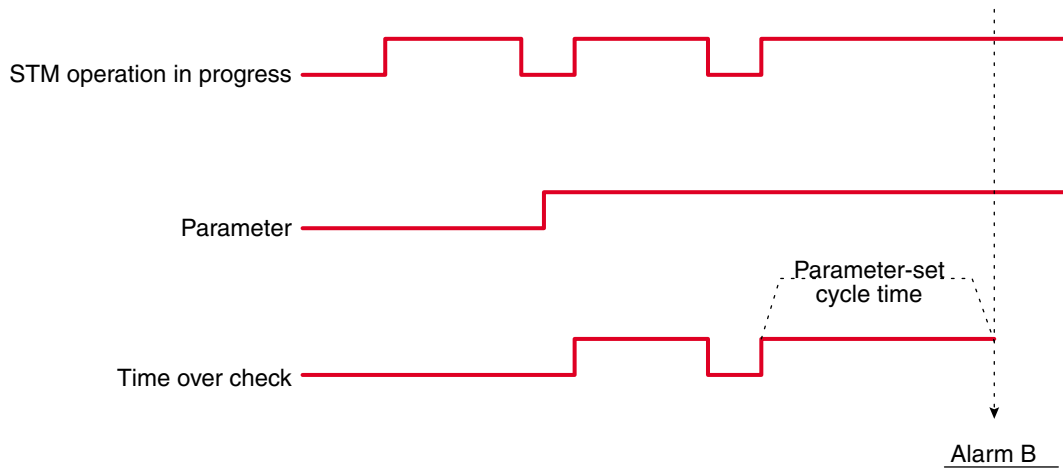
Set, for the machine parameter, the allowable limit of cycle time when executing an S, T, and M codes.

- Parameter setting
Units : 0.1 seconds
Maximum setting : 600 seconds

6-3. Timing Chart Example

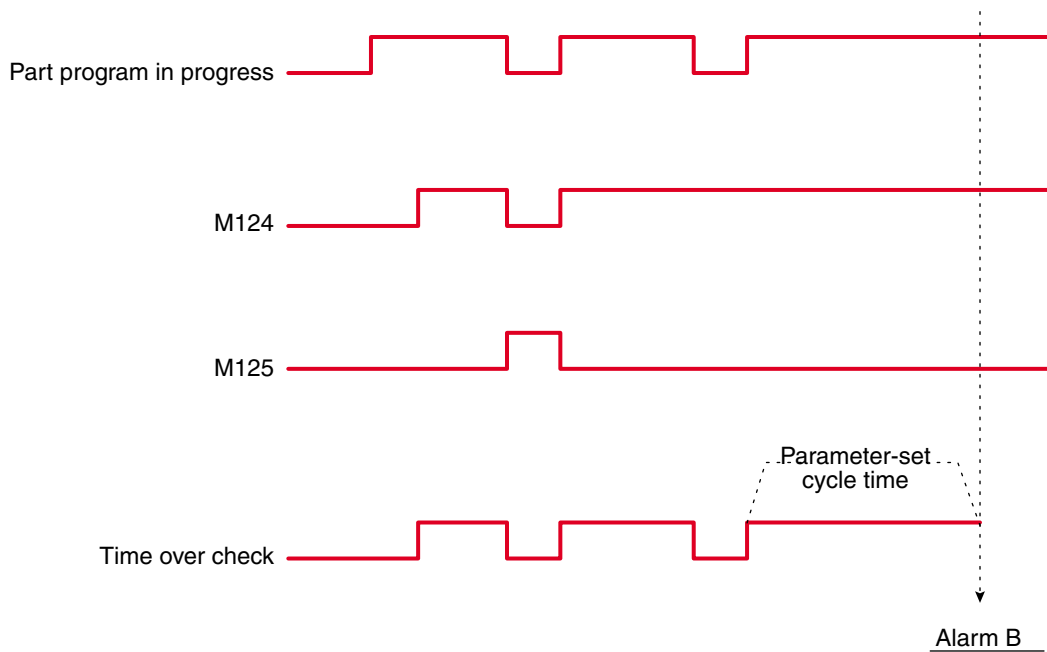
(1) Parameter setting

Parameter: ON STM time over check start
 Parameter: OFF STM time over check end



(2) M Codes

M124 : STM time over check start
 M125 : STM time over check end



SECTION 6 OFFSET FUNCTION

1. Tool Nose Radius Compensation Function (G40, G41, G42)

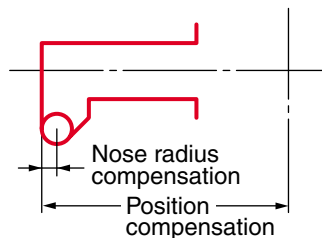
1-1. General Description

The tool tip point radius of most cutting tools used in turning operation is the cause of inconsistencies between the designated tool paths and the actually finished workpiece contour. With the tool radius compensation function, such geometric error is automatically compensated for by simple programming.

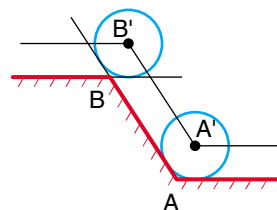
1-2. Tool Nose Radius Compensation for Turning Operations

(1) Tool Offset and Nose Radius Compensation

In turning operations, various types and different shapes of tools are used to finish one workpiece. ID cutting tools, OD cutting tools, rough cut tools, finish cut tools, drills, etc. Accordingly, the tool nose radius compensation function has to be activated simultaneously with the tool offset function.



(2) Tool Nose Radius Compensation at Discontinuous Point



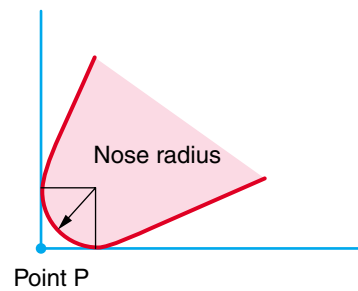
Point A in the figure above constitutes a discontinuous point and an angle less than 180° . By using the tool nose radius compensation function, the tool path shown above can be generated by simply entering the coordinates of points A and B.

1-3. Compensation Operation

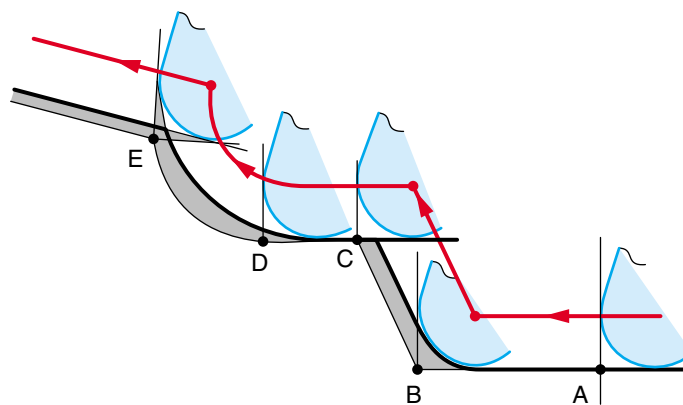
(1) Geometrical Cutting Error due to Tool Nose Radius

If cutting along paths A-B-C-D-E in the figure below is intended but the tool nose radius compensation function is not activated, the shaded portions will remain uncut and cause geometrical errors. This is because the tool setting is made to locate the imaginary cutting point P at the datum point and trace the programmed path as controlled by NC commands. However, the actual cutting tip point is not precisely located on that datum point because of the tool nose radius and this produces geometrical errors.

The tool nose radius compensation function automatically compensates for the inconsistency between the designated and actual tool paths caused by the tool nose radius (see the figure below).



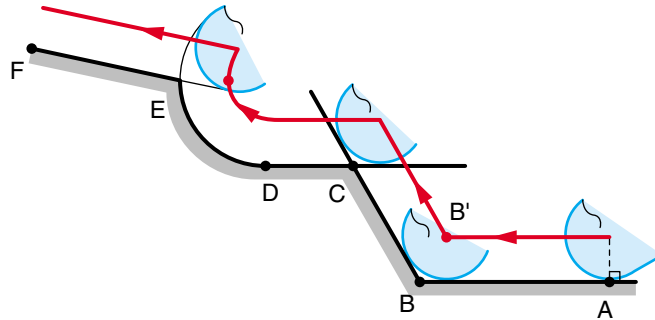
Tool Setting Point



Tool Path and Resulting Error Without Tool Nose Radius Compensation

(2) Compensation Movement

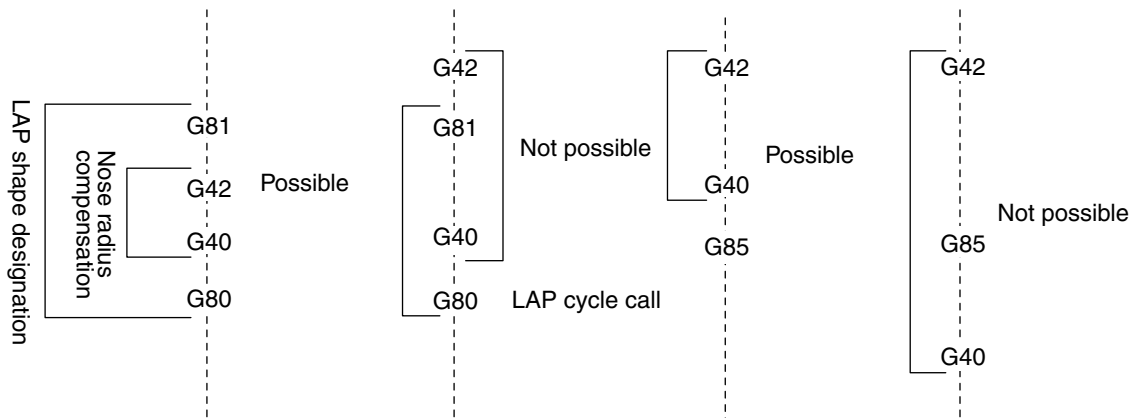
With the tool nose radius compensation function activated, the error in the tool path described in (1) is compensated for as shown below to finish the workpiece to the dimensions specified in a program.



Tool Path with Tool Nose Radius Compensation

(3) Nose radius compensation during LAP mode

To use the tool nose radius compensation function in the LAP mode, programs for the respective turrets must contain the tool nose radius compensation programs independently as shown below.



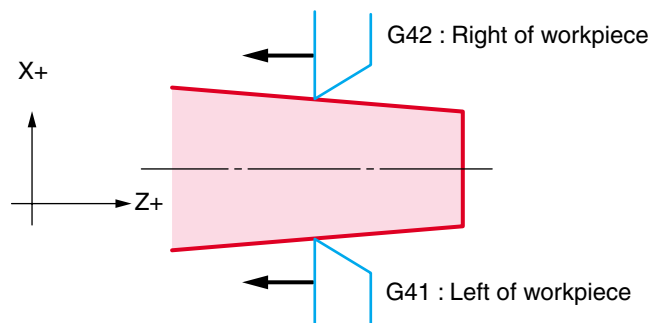
1-4. Nose Radius Compensation Commands (G, T Codes)

The programming commands - G and T codes, used to activate the tool nose radius compensation function, are detailed in this section.

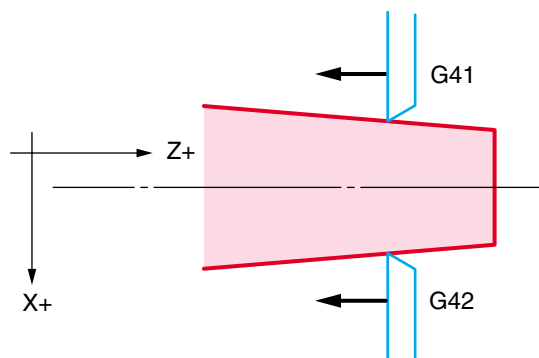
(1) G Codes

- G40 : Used to cancel the tool nose radius compensation mode.
- G41 : Tool nose radius compensation - Left
Used when the tool moves on the left side of the workpiece.
- G42 : Tool nose radius compensation - Right
Used when the tool moves on the right side of the workpiece.

The term indicating the side of the workpiece, right or left, is determined according to the direction in which the tool is advancing.



Since G41 and G42 codes are selected to agree with the coordinate system (right-hand system) the machine employs, they should be selected as below for lathes which have a coordinate system in which the positive direction of the X-axis is directed toward the operator.



(2) T Codes

Six numerical characters following address character "T" specify the nose radius compensation number, tool number, and tool offset number.

TOO $\Delta\Delta$ $\square\square$

OO: Tool nose radius compensation number

$\Delta\Delta$: Tool number

$\square\square$: Tool offset number

NOTICE

To change the tool offset during the execution of tool nose radius compensation, designate the tool nose radius compensation number and the tool number.

Example:

```
G01  Xa   Za   (T010101.....1)
G03  Xb   Zb   K
G01           Zd   (T110111.....2)
G03  Xd   Zd   I
```

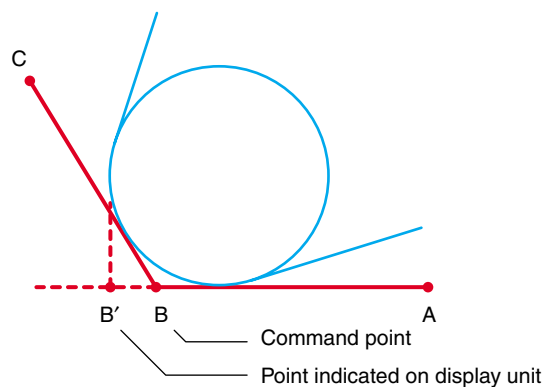
Entry of only the tool offset No. (T01 or T11) in G code command (1) or (2) will cancel the nose radius compensation amount.

1-5. Data Display

The screen display during nose radius compensation is described here.

1) Actual Position

Actual position data is displayed on the screen as with the conventional control system. However, the data displayed on the screen may be different from the programmed data because of the tool nose radius compensation.



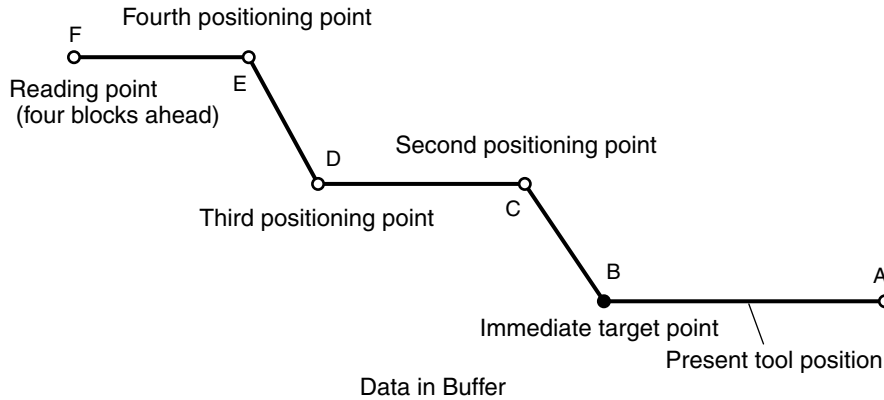
2) Alarm Display

If an alarm relating to the tool nose radius compensation function occurs, the ALARM light under STATUS DISPLAY goes on and the screen displays the message indicating the alarm contents.

1-6. Buffer Operation

The NC usually operates in the 3-buffer mode. While the positioning command from point A to point B is being executed, the positioning point data of points C, D and E are read and stored in the buffer. This is called the 3-buffer function.

When the tool nose radius function is activated, the target point E is calculated from straight lines DE and EF. This means that the data in the block four blocks ahead the current target point are read if the tool nose radius compensation function is active.



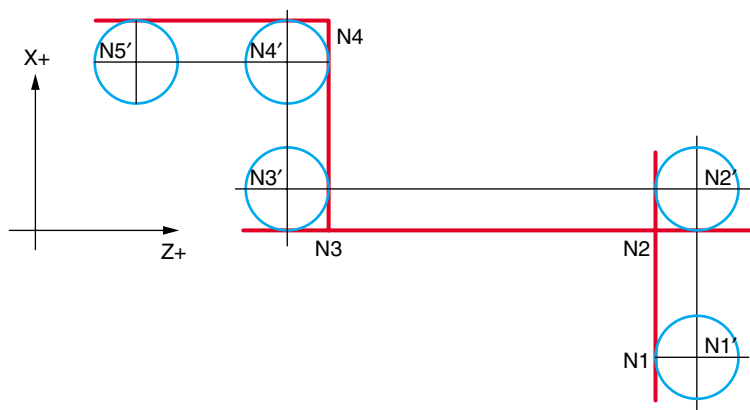
1-7. Path of Tool Nose "R" Center in Tool Nose Radius Compensation Mode

To execute the motion shown below in the following program in the tool nose radius compensation mode, the path of the tool nose R center is obtained as follows:

```

N1 G42 X1 Z1
N2 X2 Z2
N3 X3 Z3
N4 G41 X4 Z4
N5 X5 Z5

```



- 1) To obtain point N2' when the center of the tool nose R is at point N1', proceed as follows:
 - Draw a straight line parallel to the direction of tool advance, N1 - N2, offset in the specified direction, (to the right since G42 is specified), by the tool nose radius compensation amount. This yields the straight line passing N1' and N2'.
 - Draw a straight line parallel to the direction of tool advance, N2 - N3, offset in the specified direction, (to the right of or above N2 - N3 since G42 dominates the compensation mode) by the tool nose radius compensation amount. This yields the straight line passing N2' and N3'.
 - The nose R center for the commanded point N2' is the point of intersection of these two straight lines. The center of the tool nose radius advances from point N1' to N2'.
- 2) To obtain point N3':
 - Draw a straight line parallel to the direction of tool advance, N2 - N3, offset in the specified direction, (to the right of or above N2 - N3 since G42 dominates the compensation mode), by the tool nose radius compensation amount. This yields the straight line passing N2' and N3'.
 - Draw a straight line parallel to the direction of tool advance, N3 - N4, offset in the specified direction, (to the left since G41 is specified), by the tool nose radius compensation amount. This yields the straight line passing N3' and N4'.
 - The nose R center for commanded point N3 is the point of intersection of these two straight lines. The center of the tool nose radius advances from point N2' to point N3'.
- 3) To obtain point N4':

Follow the same procedure indicated above using points N3, N4 and N5.

1-8. Tool Nose Radius Compensation Programming

1-8-1. G41 and G42

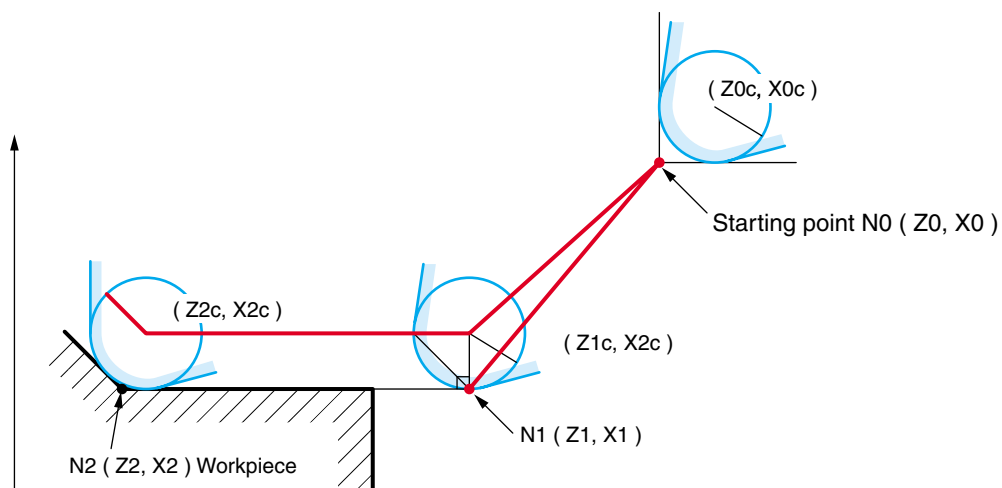
The G41 and G42 codes are used to call out the tool nose radius compensation mode. Since the uses of these G codes are often confused in programming a part, this section deals with their particular differences.

- G41 : This tool nose radius compensation code is used when the cutting tool moves on the left side of the workpiece in relation to its direction of advance.
- G42 : This tool nose radius compensation code is used when the cutting tool moves on the right side of the workpiece in terms of its direction of advance.

1-8-2. Behavior on Entering Tool Nose Radius Compensation Mode

| | | | | |
|----|-----|----|----|---------|
| N0 | G00 | X0 | Z0 | |
| N1 | G42 | X1 | Z1 | T000000 |
| N2 | G01 | X2 | Z2 | |

The following example uses the program above to perform OD cuts with an OD turning tool.



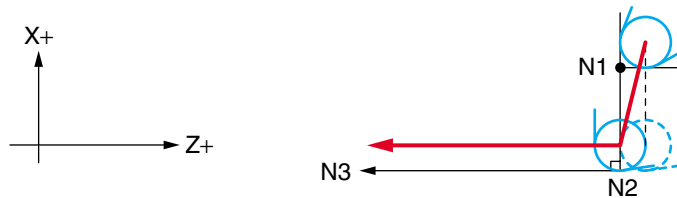
Without the tool nose radius compensation function, positioning is performed so that the tool tip reference point is located exactly at the programmed coordinates. At the start up of the tool nose radius compensation mode activated by either G41 or G42, positioning is carried out so that the tool tip circle contacts the segment passing the programmed coordinates in the block containing G41 or G42 and those in the next block. This motion of the axes is called "Start-Up".

- At the start up of the tool nose radius compensation mode, both X- and Z-axis may move even if the block contains only one dimension word, either X or Z.

```

N1 G00 X100 Z100 S1000 T010101 M3
N2 G42 X80
N3 G01 Z50 F0.2

```



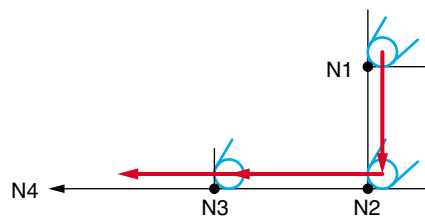
Although the programmer might expect the axis movement indicated by broken lines because the N2 block contains only an X word, the actual tool path generated at the start up of the tool nose radius compensation mode is as shown by solid lines.

- Example of an ideal program for entry into the compensation mode:

```

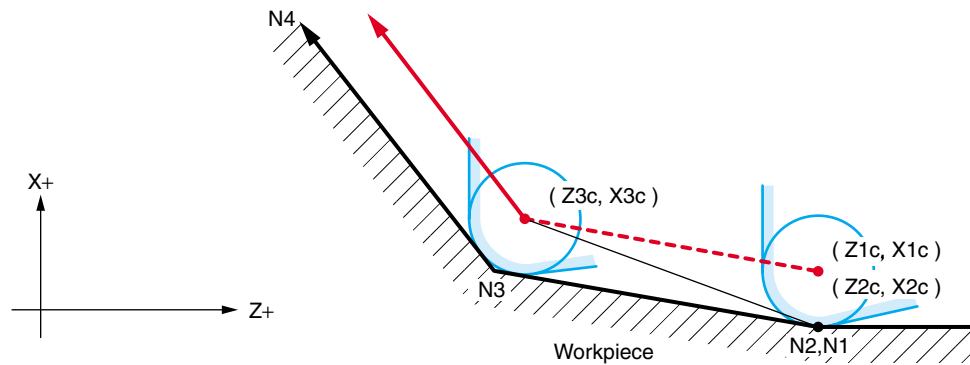
N1 G00 X100 Z100 S1000 T010101 M3
N2 X80
N3 G42 Z90
N4 G01 Z50 F0.2
: :

```



In this program, the G42 block contains only a Z word, and points N2, N3 and N4 are all positioned on the same straight line.

- Either G00 or G01 must dominate the operation mode when entering into the tool nose radius compensation mode. Otherwise, an alarm will occur.
- When neither an X nor Z word is presented at the start up of the tool nose radius compensation mode, or when the point where the axes are presently located is specified in the start-up block, positioning is executed so that tool tip circle comes in contact with the segment passing through the designated coordinates and the coordinates in the next sequence. The tool nose radius compensation motion is activated from the following sequence.



```

N1 G00 X100 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M3
N2 G42
N3 X60 Z80
N4 X100 Z50

```

With the program above, the tool tip circle is positioned so that it comes into contact with segments N2N3 and N3N4. That is, the blocks of commands after N3 sequence are all executed in the tool nose radius compensation mode.

- If the same point as in the start-up block is specified in the succeeding block, an alarm will result if the successive two blocks after that do not have dimension words, X and Z.

Faulty program example 1:

```

N1 G01 X50 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M3
N2 G42
N3 X50 Z100
N4 X60 Z80
N5 X100 Z50

```

Since sequence N3 designates a point identical to the one designated in the start-up sequence N2, an alarm occurs.

Faulty program example 2:

```

N1 G01 X50 Z100 F0.2 S500 T010101 M3
N2 G42
N3 S1000
N4 M08
N5 X50 Z100
N6 X60 Z80

```

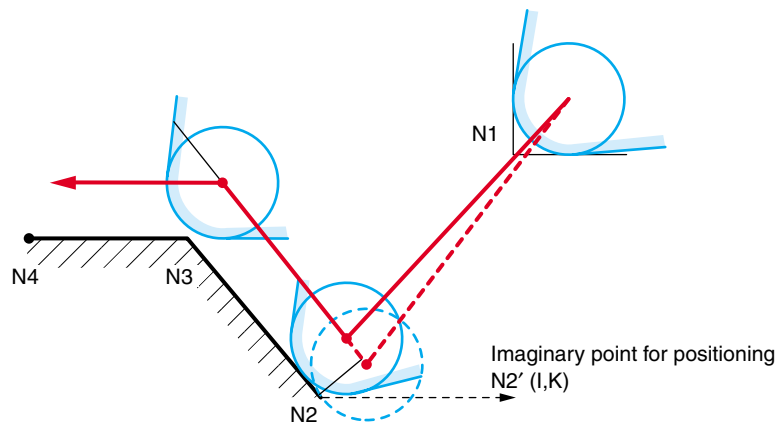
Since sequences N3 and N4, the successive two sequences after the start-up of the tool nose radius compensation mode, do not contain X and Z axis movement commands, an alarm occurs.

- I and K command with G41 and G42
In the block containing G41 and G42, by entering I and K words that specify the imaginary point, along with X and Z words that specify the nose radius compensation start-up, unnecessary axis motion required in conventional start-up program is eliminated.

```

N1  G00  X100  Z100  F0.2  S1000  T010101  M3
N2  G42  X60   Z80   K20
N3  G01  X80   Z65
N4           Z50

```



If block N2 containing G42 had no I and K words, positioning of the cutting tool by the commands in block N2 would be executed so that the tool nose radius comes into contact with line N2-N3 at designated point N2 and then moves to N3.

Addition of I and K words in block N2 positions the cutting tool to the point where the tool nose R is brought into contact with straight line N2-N3 and imaginary straight line N2-N2' when the commands in block N2 are executed. Execution of the commands in block N3 brings the cutting tool to the programmed point N3 where the tool nose radius compensation is not active.

[Supplement]

- I and K words should be commanded in incremental values. In this case the dimensions are referenced to point N2.
- When only either I or K is provided without the other, the control interprets the word to have the value "0". Therefore, KO in the above program can be omitted.

1-8-3. Behavior in Tool Nose Radius Compensation Mode

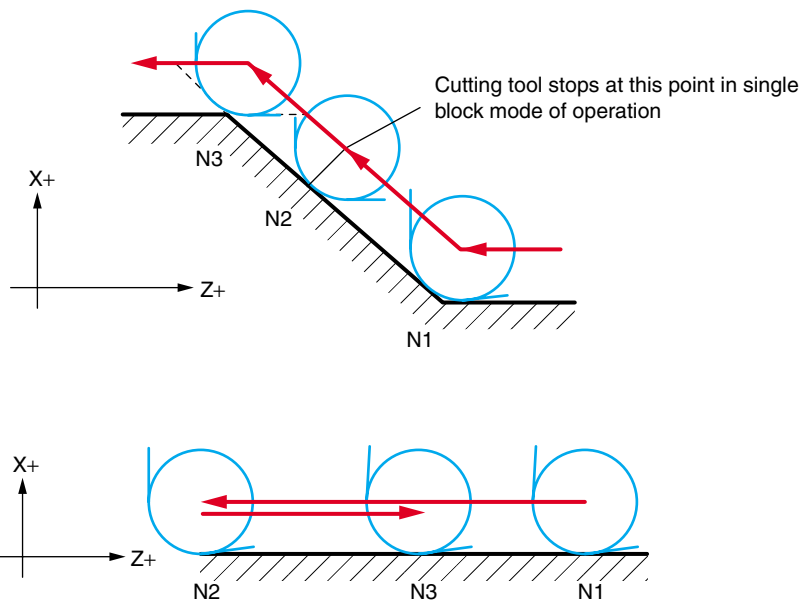
The tool nose radius compensation function provides the means to automatically compensate for the tool nose radius in continuous cutting.

Since such compensation is performed automatically, there are some restrictions in programming when the tool nose radius compensation function is used.

(1) Straight line to straight line cutting

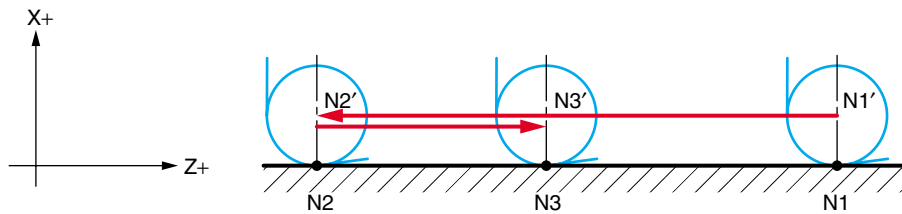
- Midpoint on a straight line
When specifying a midpoint on a straight line, the point should be commanded carefully.
When point N2 in the figure below is located on line N1 - N3, the cutting tool is positioned so that the tool tip circle comes into contact with line N1 - N3 at point N2.
- Returning along a straight line
Such axis movement causes no problem when the program is written without using the tool nose radius compensation function.
However, when this function is used the axis movements must be programmed carefully.

Program Example:



| | | | | |
|----|-----|-----|----|----|
| N1 | G42 | G01 | X1 | Z1 |
| N2 | | | X2 | Z2 |
| N3 | G41 | | X3 | Z3 |

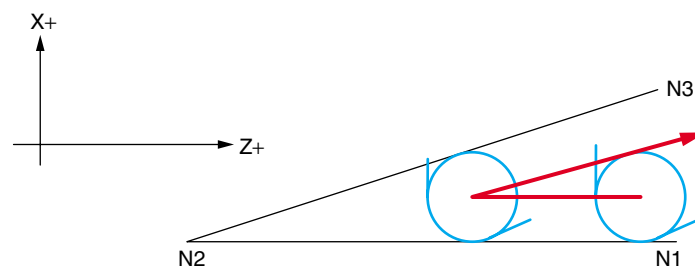
In this example points N2 and N3 are commanded while the cutting tool is at point N1. When the cutting tool advances from point N1 to point N2, G42 is designated since the cutting tool moves on the right side of the workpiece with respect to the direction of tool advance. However, in the return motion of the tool from point N2 to point N3, the cutting tool is on the left side of the workpiece with respect to the direction of tool advance. Therefore, G41 is specified instead of G42.



The axis movements above are possible by the special processing for the tool nose radius compensation function. Let's consider the operation in this program in the light of section 1-7. "Path of Tool Nose "R" Center in Tool Nose Radius Compensation Mode."

- (1) The center of the tool nose R (N2') at point N2 is obtained as follows:
 - The line parallel to the straight line N1 - N2 is obtained, with an upward offset (G42) by the tool nose radius amount effective at N1.
 - The line parallel to the straight line N2 - N3 is obtained, with an upward offset (G41) by the tool nose radius amount effective at N2.
 - The center of the tool nose R is obtained as the point of intersection of the two straight lines obtained in steps in 1) and 2). However, since those two lines are parallel to each other, no point of intersection is obtained in this case. For such case, the control has a special processing feature in which the positioning is carried out so that the tool nose R comes into contact with point N2. Therefore, the path of the tool nose R center, when the cutting tool advances from point N1 to point N2, is obtained as N1' - N2'.
 - (2) The center of the tool nose R (N3') at point N3 is obtained in the same manner as in 1).
- In this way, the program on the previous page can return the cutting tool along the same straight line with the tool nose radius compensation function active.
- If any of these three points is not precisely located on the same straight line, the tool path will be shifted considerably from the expected path.

- Two lines making an acute angle
In the figure below, although positioning from N1 to N2 is intended, the cutting tool cannot reach point N2. This is because it can move only up to the point where the tool nose R comes into contact with line N2 - N3.



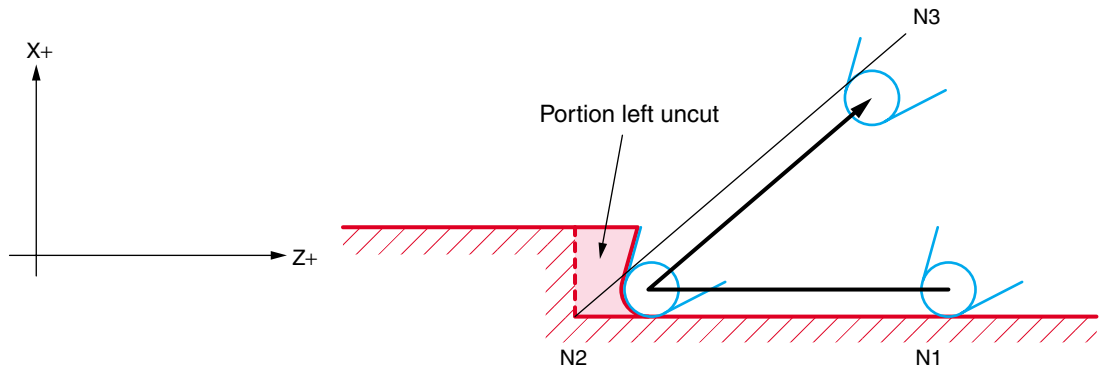
This example illustrates a case where programmers are apt to be confused. Another example is provided below.

Example of faulty program 1 (completion of cutting):

```

N1 G42 G01 X100 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M3
N2           Z50
N3 G00      X300 Z300 M05

```



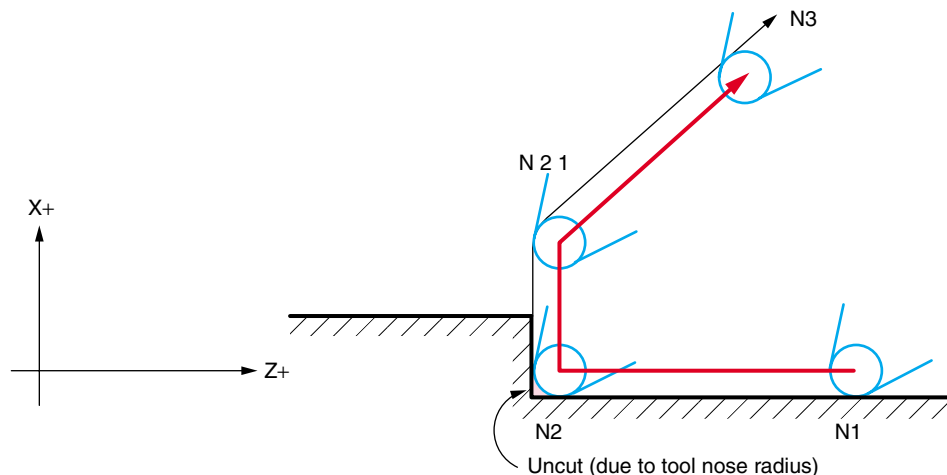
With the program above, the programmer expected to cut up to point N2, (i.e., up to Z50) allowing a slight uncut portion on the sharp corner due to tool nose R. Contrary to this intention, however, the cutting tool leaves a considerable uncut section since it stops before reaching the desired point. To improve such a program, enter one more point in the program as shown below:

Example of improved program 1:

```

N1 G42 G01 X100 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M3
N2           Z50
N21          X104 ..... [ > 100 + 4 x (nose R) ]
N3 G00 X300      Z300 M05

```



The improved program generates the tool path shown above, and almost all the cutting can be accomplished as expected except for a slight uncut section due to the tool nose R.

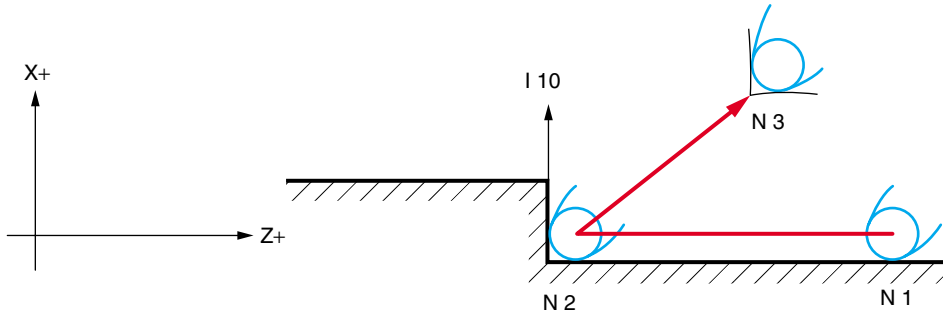
To relieve the tool along X-axis in the positive direction in the N21 block, an X word must have a value larger than four times the nose R. This is because a distance twice the nose R is necessary for the tool tip circle to fit in. In addition, because X words are expressed as diameters, the X word data has to be doubled. That is, the numerical value in such an X word must be larger than four times the tool nose R.

If a value smaller than the required amount is used, it might cause the cutting tool to move in the opposite direction toward point N21 and cut into the N1 - N2 surface.

Example of improved program 2 (using G40):

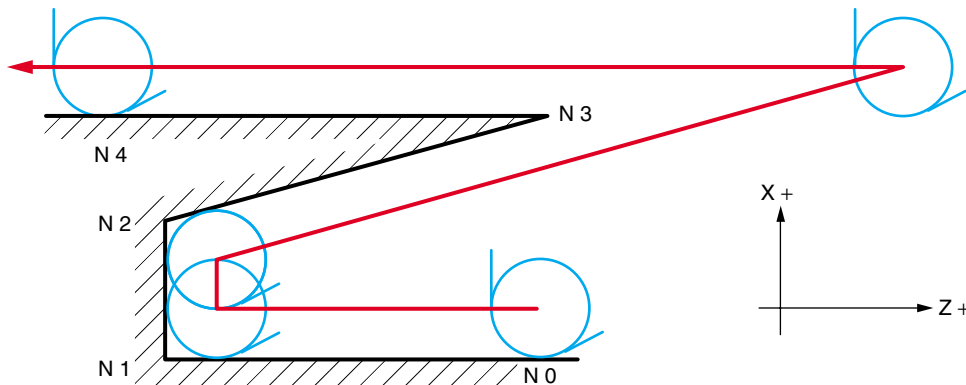
```

N1 G42 G01 X100 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M03
N2           Z50
N3 G40 G00 X300 Z300 I10 M05
    
```



The G40 command in N3 cancels the tool nose radius function. At point N2, the cutting tool moves so that the tool nose R contacts the line N1 - N2 and the vector I10 extending from point N2.

- Two lines making an obtuse angle
 Consider the case where the cutting tool is fed along the path N0 - N1 - N2 - N3 - N4 in the figure below. Angle N2N3N4 is an acute angle and the cutting tool moves along the line outside of that angle. Therefore, the cutting tool is moved to a point some distance from the workpiece at point N3. When preparing a program in which cutting similar to this contour is required, it is necessary to check the safety of tool motion and ensure that the tool does not strike against obstacles when moving to such a distant point.



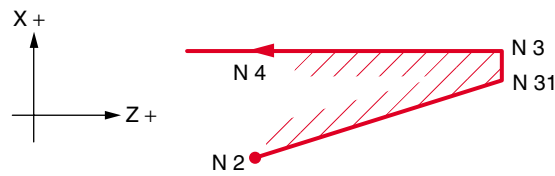
Example program for the path above:

```

N0 G42 G00 X100 Z300           S1500 T010101 M03
N1 G01           Z100 F0.2
N2           X104 ..... [ > 100 + 4 × (nose R) ]
N3 G00           X200 Z300
N4 G01           Z50 S1000
    
```

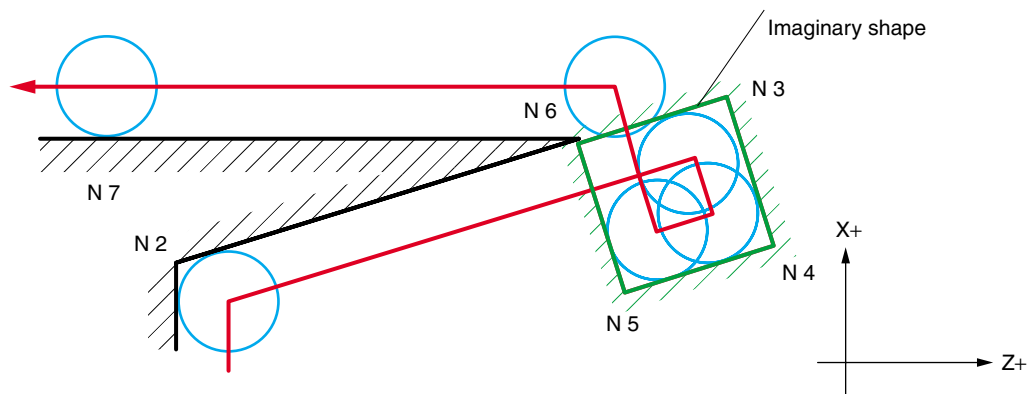

It is advantageous to improve the program and eliminate a positioning sequence to a distant point through commands in the N3 block.

If N2N3N4 were not a sharp angle, such a problem would not occur. To eliminate sharp angles from the required contour, one possible solution is to interpose a short straight line N3 - N31.



In some cases, such a modification is not possible. In these cases, to cut a sharp angle without positioning the cutting tool at a distant point, follow the steps detailed below.

Example of Improved Program:



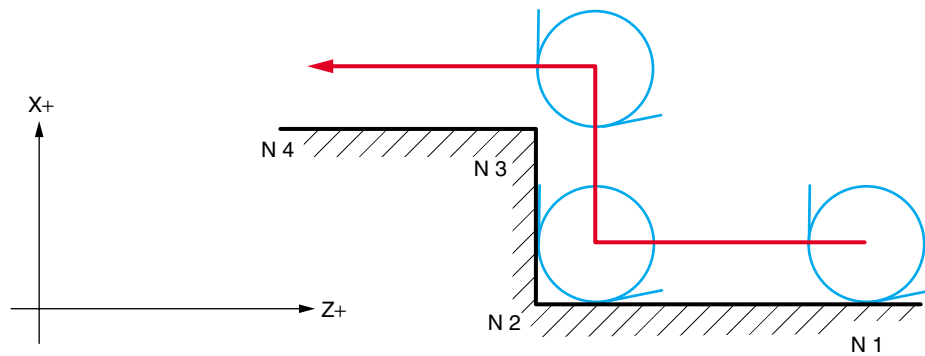
```

N0  G42  G00  X100  Z300  S1500  T010101  M03
N1  G01  Z100  F0.2
N2  X104
N3  G00  X200.48  Z301
N4  X198.48  Z301.24  F1
N5  X198  Z300.24
N6  G01  X200  Z300
N7  Z50  F0.2  S1000

```

In this improved program, the cutting tool moves along the imaginary square N3N4N5N6. This permits the operator to estimate the departure of the cutting tool from the programmed contour. Note that one side of the imaginary square must be longer than twice the nose radius.

- Two lines forming a right angle



```

N1 G42 G01 X100 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M03
N2           Z60
N3           X150
N4           Z20

```

There are no particular problems in this case.

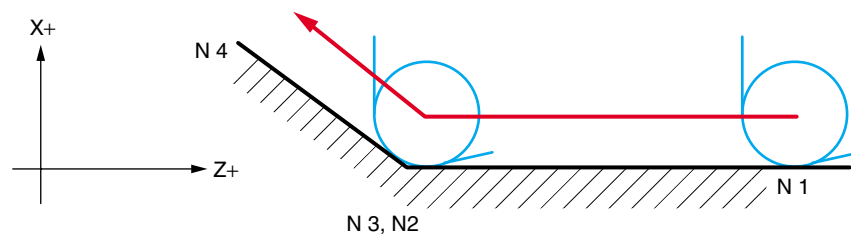
- Command of identical point

- (1) If a block without axis movement commands is programmed during the tool nose radius compensation mode, the path of the tool nose R is the same as the one generated when there is no such block.

```

N1 G42 G01 X50 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M03
N2           Z80
N3
N4           X60 Z70 M08

```



- (2) When two or more blocks without axis movement commands are programmed, or when the same point as commanded in the preceding sequence is repeatedly commanded during the tool nose radius compensation mode:

In this case, an axis motion that brings the tool nose R into contact with the programmed contour at the programmed coordinate point takes place. When the block of commands containing dimension words, X and/or Z, is read, the cutting tool returns to the correct compensated position.

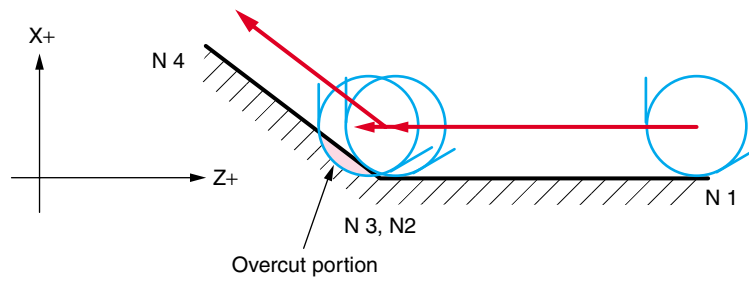
Program 1:

```

N1 G42 G01 X50 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M04
N2           Z80
N3           Z80 M08
N4           X60 Z70

```

A program like this might cause overcutting as shown below:



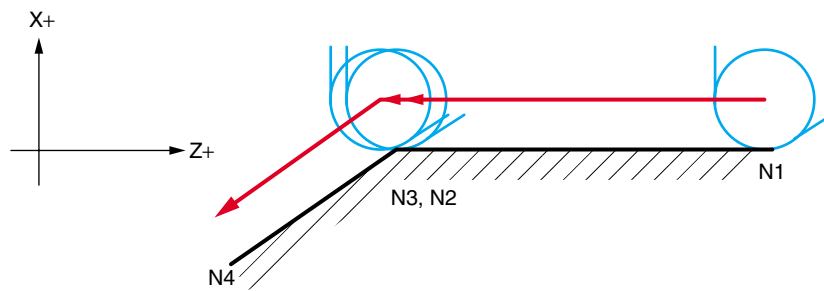
Depending on the contour to be cut, the unexpected motion may not result in overcut, as in program 2.

Program 2:

```

N1 G42 G01 X50 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M04
N2 Z80
N3 Z80
N4 X40 Z70 M08

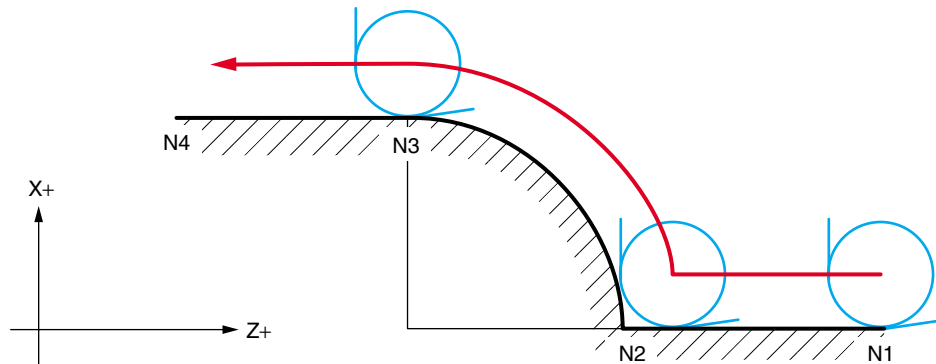
```



(2) Straight line to arc cutting (arc to straight line cutting)

- Arc within one quadrant

In a program where the cutting tool moves continuously from a straight line to an arc, the movement of the cutting tool is handled in the same way as in a case where the movement is from a straight line to a straight line.



```

N1 G42 G01 X100 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M04
N2           Z80
N3 G03     X140 Z60 K-20
N4 G01           Z40

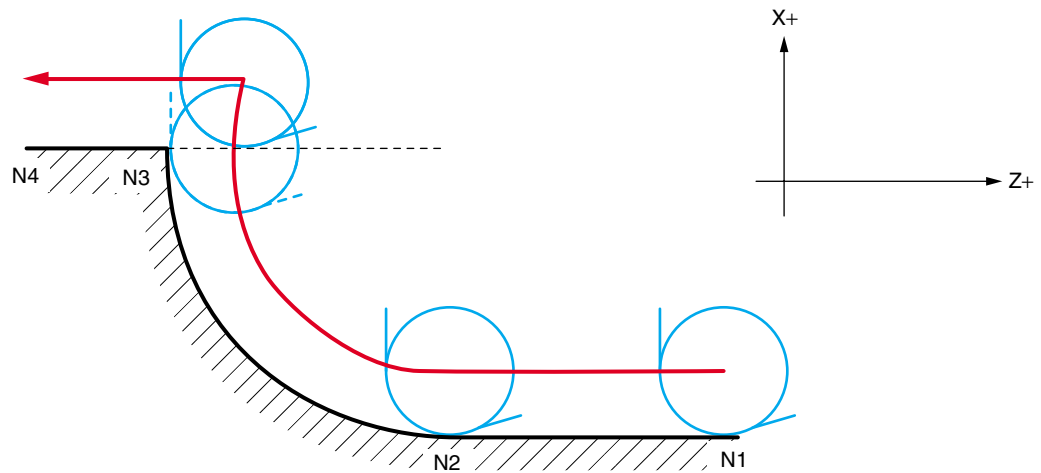
```

The tool position at point N2 is determined so that the tool nose R comes into contact with both line N1 - N2 and arc N2 - N3. At point N3, the cutting tool is positioned in a similar way - the tool nose R makes contact at point N3.

When the cutting tool moves from point N3 to point N4, the cutting mode changes from circular interpolation to linear interpolation. If discontinuity at point N3 results during the tool path calculation, an alarm is displayed and machine operation is stopped.

- Arc in two quadrants

(1) Case where the arc radius is greater than "2 x nose R":



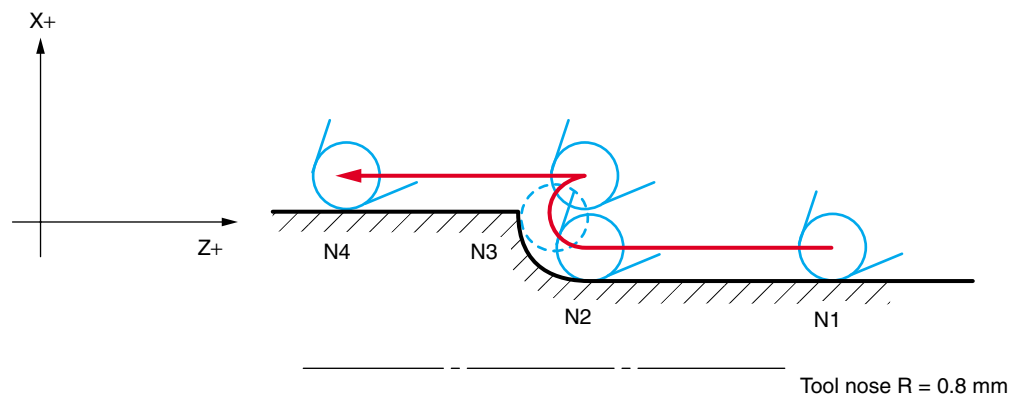
```

N1 G42 G01 X100 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M04
N2 Z80
N3 G02 X140 Z60 I20
N4 G01 Z40

```

The tool position determined by the commands in the N2 block is the point where the tool nose R comes into contact with line N1 - N2 at point N2. In the N3 sequence, the cutting tool is positioned so that it comes into contact with both the extension of straight line N2 - N3 and the extension of arc N3 - N4.

(2) Case where the arc radius is equal to "2 x nose R":



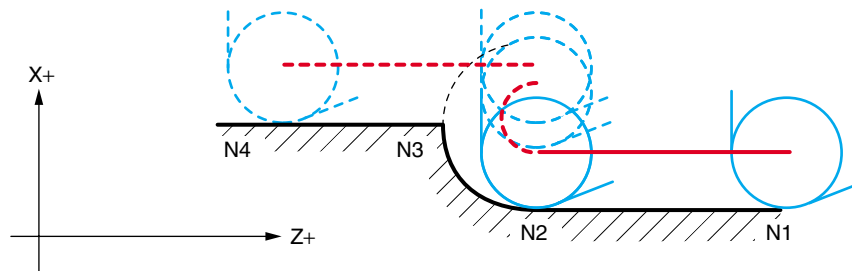
```

N1 G42 G01 X100 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M04
N2 Z80
N3 G02 X103.2 Z78.4 I1.6
N4 G01 Z40

```

When the radius of the programmed arc equals twice the tool nose R, the cutting tool is located at the point where the tool nose R comes into contact with both the extension of arc N2 - N3 and the extension of straight line N3 - N4, after the execution of the commands in N3 block (see the figure in "1" above). That is, the cutting tool is positioned right above point N2, as shown in the figure directly above.

(3) Case where the arc radius is less than "2 x nose R" (impossible):



```

N1  G42  G01  X100  Z100  F0.2  S1000  T010101  M04
N2          Z80
N3  G02          X102  Z79  I1
N4  G01          Z40

```

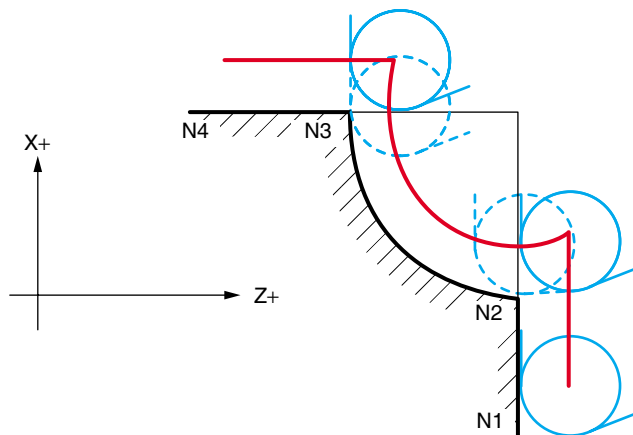
The commands in block N3 specify positioning of the cutting tool at the point where the tool nose R comes into contact with both the extension of arc N2-N3 and the extension of straight line N3-N4; however, such a point cannot be obtained. Therefore, when the control executes the commands in block N3, an alarm occurs and the machine stops.

In this kind of case, cutting using the tool nose radius compensation function is not possible.

NOTICE

When cutting inside an arc, the programming must satisfy the following condition:
 $R \geq 2 \times R_N$ (where R: arc radius, R_N : nose R)

- Arc in three quadrants



```

N1  G42  G01  X100  Z100  F0.2  S1000  T010101  M04
N2          X120
N3  G02          X160  Z80  I20
N4  G01          Z60

```

Positioning by the commands in block N2 is to the point where the tool nose R comes into contact with both the extension of straight line N1 - N2 and the extension of arc N2 - N3.

Other axis motions of the cutting tool are identical to those for cutting an arc in two quadrants.

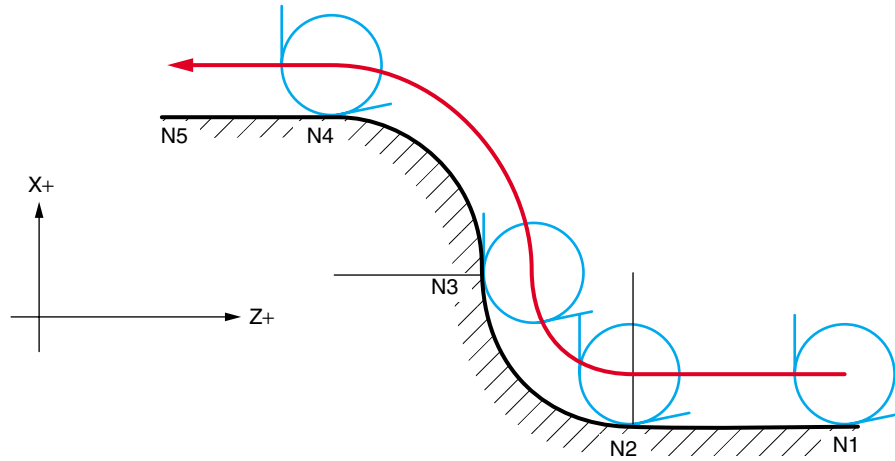
(3) Arc to arc cutting

Arc to arc cutting can be programmed in the same manner as straight line to arc cutting.

The tool path is generated so that the tool nose R is brought into contact with each arc or its extension.

If the tool path becomes discontinuous in the process of path calculation due to an error, the machine stops with an alarm displayed on the screen.

Other motions of the cutting tool are as explained in (2), "Straight line to arc cutting".



| | | | | | | | | |
|----|-----|-----|------|------|--------|-------|---------|-----|
| N1 | G42 | G01 | X100 | Z100 | F0.2 | S1000 | T010101 | M04 |
| N2 | | | | Z80 | | | | |
| N3 | G02 | | X140 | Z60 | I20 | | | |
| N4 | G03 | | X180 | Z40 | K - 20 | | | |
| N5 | G01 | | | Z20 | | | | |

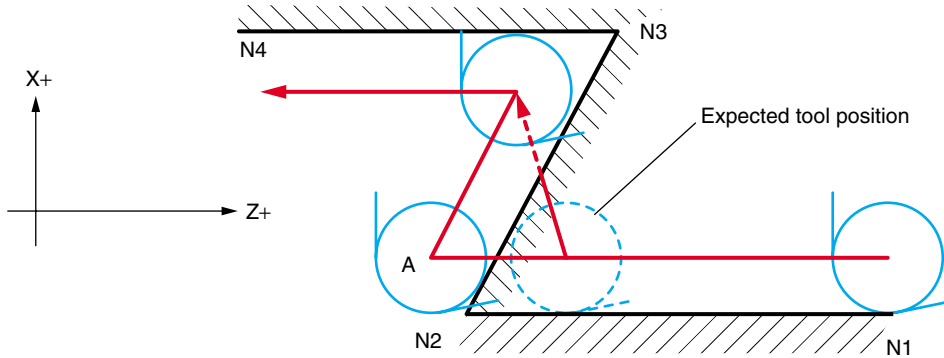
(4) Switching from G41 to G42 or from G42 to G41

Before switching the tool nose radius compensation mode from G41 to G42 or from G42 to G41, it is advisable to cancel the compensation mode by specifying G40.

If a switch-over is to be done with the compensation mode active, carefully check the movement of the cutting tool resulting from the switch-over.

- Switch-over in straight line to straight line cutting

Program Example:



```

N1 G42 G00 X1 Z1 T
N2 G01 X2 Z2 F
N3 G41 G00 X3 Z3
N4 X4 Z4
    
```

The motion of the cutting tool generated by the above program is as follows:

Commands in blocks, N1 and N2 are governed by G42 and those in blocks N3 and later are governed by G41. To position the cutting tool at point N2, the tool nose R center lies to the right side of straight line N1 - N2 since block N2 is in the G42 mode. As for block N3, the tool nose R center lies to the left side of straight line N2 - N3 since block N3 is in the G41 mode. As a result, the cutting tool is positioned at point A as shown above.

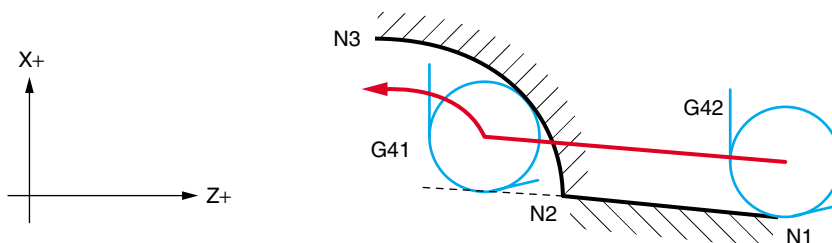
Positioning in block N2 is carried out at the left side of straight line N2 - N3.

- Switch-over in straight line to arc cutting

The concept is the same as for straight line to straight line cutting.

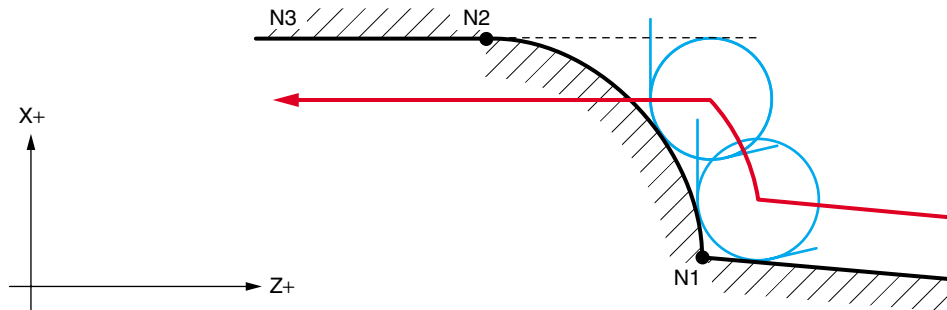
```

N1 G42 G01 X1 Z1 F1 T
N2 X2 Z2
N3 G41 G03 X3 Z3 I3 K3
    
```



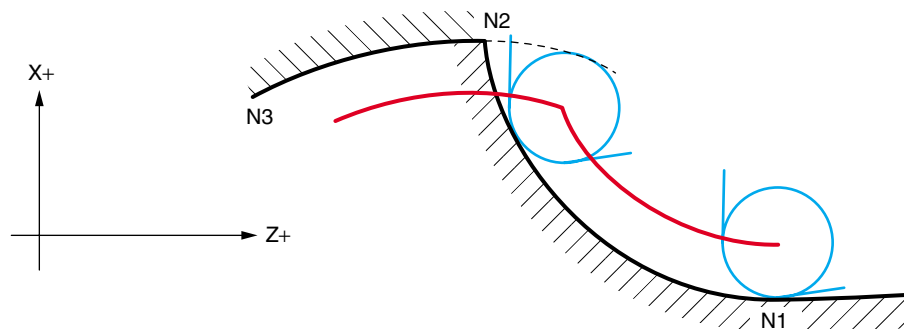
- Switch-over in arc to straight line cutting
Again, the concept is the same as for straight line to straight line cutting.

| | | | | | | |
|----|-----|-----|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| N1 | G42 | G01 | X ₁ | Z ₁ | F ₁ | T |
| N2 | G03 | | X ₂ | Z ₂ | I ₂ | K ₂ |
| N3 | G41 | G01 | X ₃ | Z ₃ | | |



- Switch-over in arc to arc cutting
Once again, the concept is the same as for straight line to straight line cutting.

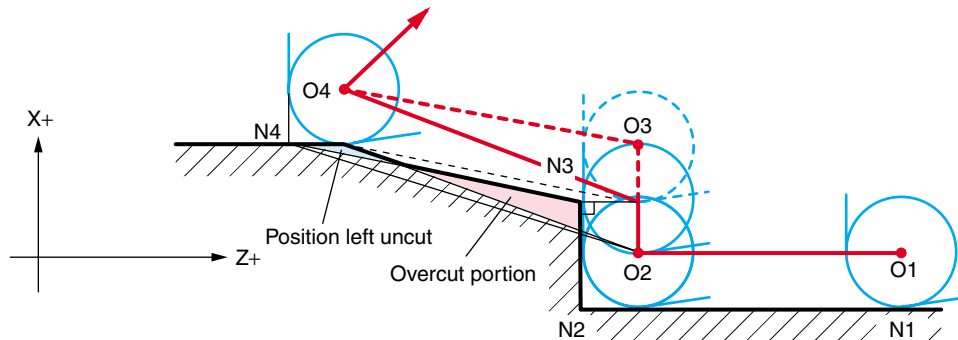
| | | | | | | |
|----|-----|-----|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| N1 | G42 | G01 | X ₁ | Z ₁ | F ₁ | T |
| N2 | G02 | | X ₂ | Z ₂ | I ₂ | Z ₂ |
| N3 | G41 | | X ₃ | Z ₃ | I ₃ | Z ₃ |



1-8-4. Behavior on Cancellation of the Tool Nose Radius Compensation Mode

(1) G40 given with X- or Z-axis motion command

To cancel the tool nose radius compensation mode, the G40 code is used. It is essential to understand the cutting tool movements that result from the cancellation of the compensation mode in order to avoid unexpected trouble. In the tool nose radius compensation mode, the tool path is generated so that the tool nose R is always in contact with the programmed contour, but the axis position is controlled so that the tool tip reference point traces the programmed contour when the tool nose radius compensation mode is not active. Therefore, under- or over-cut often results when entering into or when canceling the tool nose radius compensation mode.



Cutting a contour comprising straight line segments as illustrated above is programmed as shown below if the tool nose radius compensation mode is not active.

```

N1 G01 X100 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M03
N2           Z60
N3          X120
N4          X130 Z20
N5 G00 X300 Z300

```

With the commands above, the cutting tool moves along the path indicated by broken lines. That is, for designated point N3 the tool center is positioned at point O3, and at point O4 for designated point N4.

The uncut part parallel to straight line N3 - N4 is left. Therefore the tool nose radius compensation function can be effectively used to cut such a contour accurately. See the programs on the following pages.

- When the tool nose R compensation cancel command is designated:

```

N1 G42 G01 X100 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M03
N2           Z60
N3          X120
N4 G40          X130 Z20
N5 G00          X300 Z300

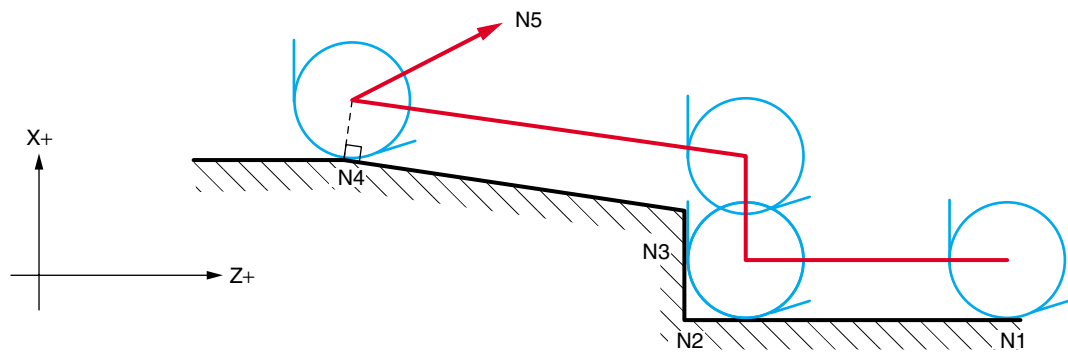
```

The tool path generated in the above program is shown by solid lines.

Positioning for programmed point N3 is carried out at the point where the tool nose R comes into contact with point N3, and that for programmed point N4 is carried out at point O4; the same point reached by the program in which the tool nose radius compensation function is not activated.

Therefore, the uncut part will be near point N4 while the section near point N3 is overcut.

Improved program:



```

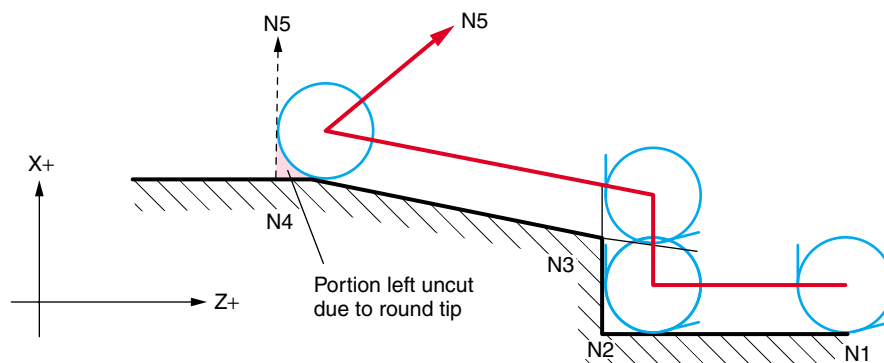
N1 G42 G01 X100 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M03
N2           Z60
N3           X120
N4           X130 Z20
N5 G40 G00 X300 Z300

```

To cut the exact contour up to Point N4, the G40 command which cancels the tool nose radius compensation mode is specified in block N5.

Although the program yields almost the expected contour, the tool nose R goes beyond the designated point N4 along Z-axis since it comes into contact with line N3 - N4 at point N4. When this kind of overtravel causes no interference or overcutting, there are no problems.

- Eliminating possible overcutting along Z-axis, see the program below:



```

N1 G42 G01 X100 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M03
N2           Z60
N3           X120
N4           X130 Z20
N5 G40 G00 X300 Z300 I10

```

I and K words specified in the G40 block allow the tool to move to the point where the tool nose R is brought into contact with both line N3 - N4 and line N4 - N5.

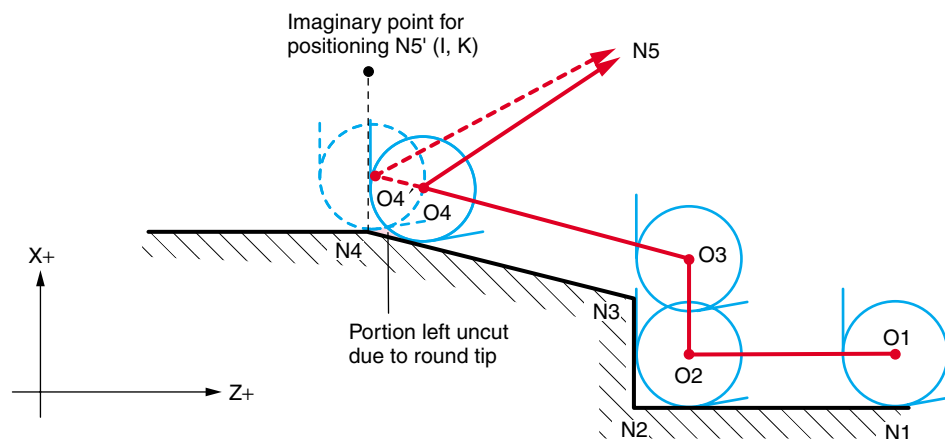
(2) I and K command with G40

In the block containing G40, by entering I and K words that specify the imaginary point along with X and Z words that specify the point where nose radius compensation is canceled, unnecessary axis motion required in conventional canceling program is eliminated.

```

N1  G42  G01  X100  Z100  F0.2  S1000  T010101  M03
N2                                Z60
N3                                X120
N4                                X130  Z20
N5  G40  G00  X300  Z300  I10  K0

```



If block N5 containing G40 has no I and K words, positioning of the cutting tool by the commands in block N4 is executed so that the tool nose R comes into contact with line N3 - N4 at designated point N4 and then moves along the path indicated by broken lines toward point N5.

Addition of I and K words in block N5 positions the cutting tool to the point where the tool nose R is brought into contact with straight line N3 - N4 and imaginary straight line N4 - N5' when the commands in block N4 are executed. Execution of the commands in block N5 brings the cutting tool to the programmed point N5 where tool nose radius compensation is not active.

[Supplement]

- I and K words should be commanded as incremental values. In this case the dimensions are referenced to point N4.
- When either I or K only is specified without the other, the control interprets the word to have the value "0". Therefore, K0 in the above program can be omitted.

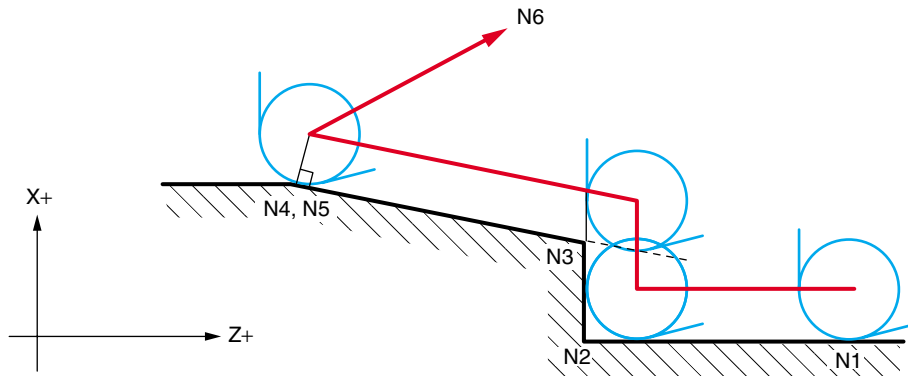
(3) Independent G40

When the G40 code is programmed without other commands in the same block, positioning is carried out at the point where the tool nose R comes into contact with the point specified in the previous block since the G40 block has no X and Z words which call for axis movement.

```

N1 G42 G01 X100 Z100 F0.2 S1000 T010101 M03
N2           Z60
N3           X120
N4           X130 Z20
N5 G40
N6 G00       X300 Z300

```



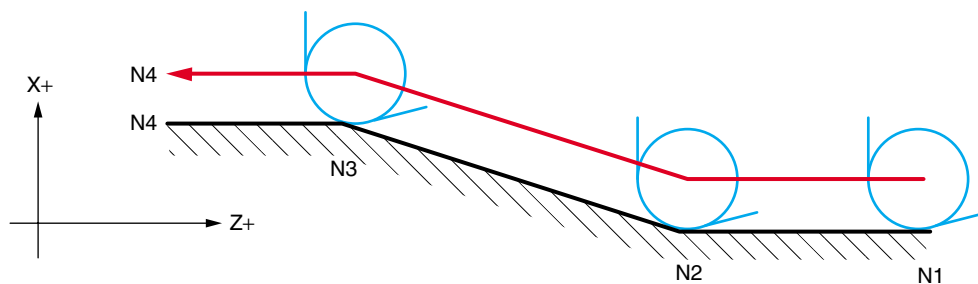
When the tool nose radius compensation mode is canceled (G40), the mode of operation must be either G00 or G01. If not, an alarm occurs.

1-8-5. Relieving Tool to Change "S" or "M" Code during Cutting

The tool nose radius compensation function is designed to automatically compensate the tool nose radius in a continuous cutting program; with the dimensions of the workpiece programmed, compensation is automatically applied to finish the part to the programmed dimensions. However, such a powerful function requires careful programming when continuous cutting is interrupted to change S and/or M commands.

This section deals with some programming examples in which the programmer experienced unexpected results by relieving the cutting tool during cutting on a continuous path.

(1) Original contour and associated program (program 1):



Program 1:

```

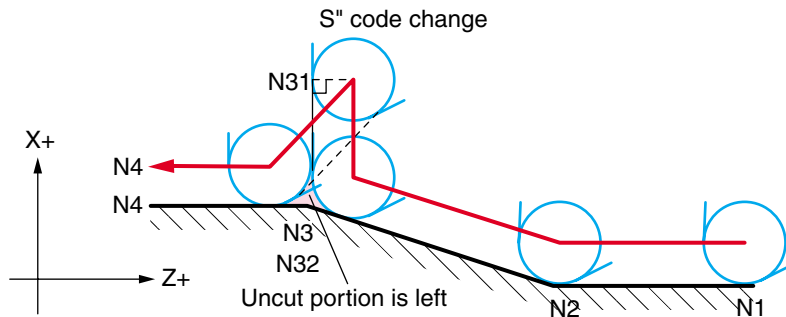
N1 G42 G01 X100 Z100 F0.2 S1500 T010101 M03
N2           Z80
N3           X120 Z40 S1000
N4           Z20

```

The original contour comprises: straight line - slope - straight line.

(2) Program 2

The contour is the same as in program 1, but the cutting tool is relieved at point N3 in the +X direction to change the spindle speed, then continuous cutting is intended.



Program 2:

```

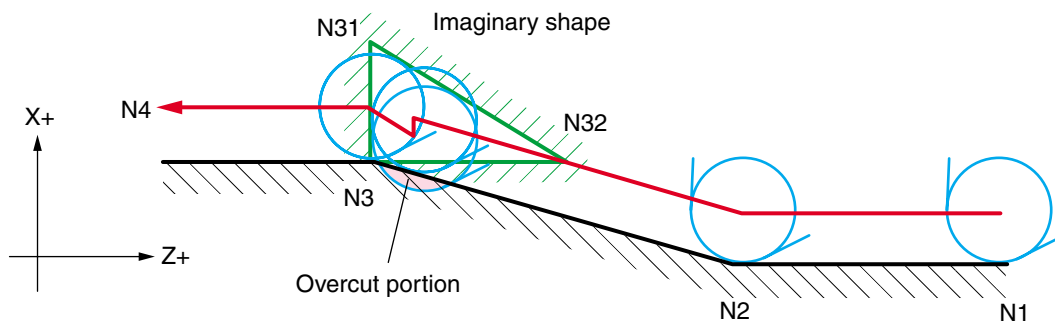
N1  G42  G01  X100  Z100  F0.2  S1500  T010101  M03
N2           Z80
N3           X120  Z40
N31  G00      X124
N32  G01      X120           S1000
N4           Z20

```

In program 2, the cutting tool is positioned at a point where the tool nose R is in contact with line N3 - N31 at point N31 when the commands in block N31 are executed since the three designated points N3, N31 and N32 lie on the same straight line. From N3 to N31, the positioning is on the right hand side of the line. Commands in block N32 position the cutting tool at the point where the tool nose R is brought into contact with straight lines N31 - N32 and N3 - N4 on the right side of the direction of tool advance. This causes the cutting tool to move not only in the X-axis direction but also in the Z-axis direction although block N32 contains only an X word. Such cutting tool movements leave an uncut portion as shown above.

(3) Program 3

In this program, an attempt is made to eliminate the uncut portion caused by program 2.



Program 3:

```

N1  G42  G01  X100  Z100  F0.2  S1500  T010101  M03
N2           Z80
N3           X120  Z40
N31  G00           X124
N32           X120  Z42           S1000
N4           G01           Z20

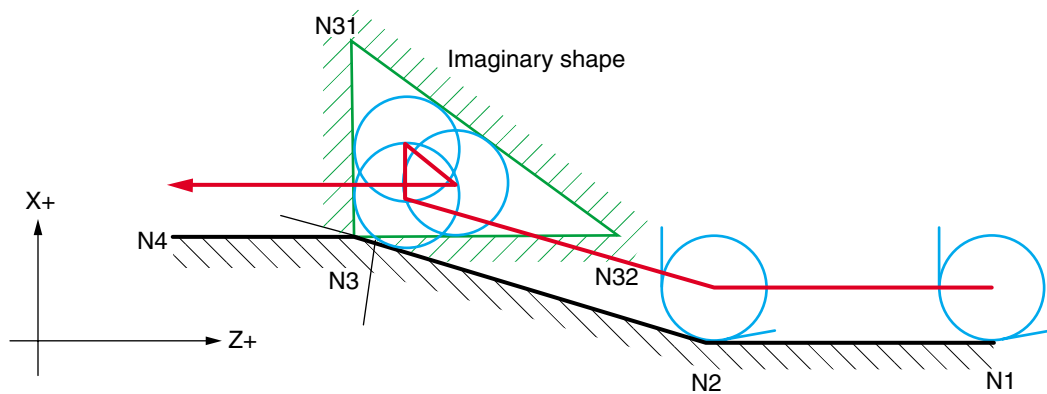
```

When the control feeds the cutting tool from point N2 to point N3, it reads the position data of point N31 as well as those of point N3. This permits the tool nose R to be positioned at the point where it is in contact with the two straight lines N2 - N3 and N3 - N31.

After that, positioning is carried out at the point where the tool nose R comes into contact with the two straight lines N3 - N31 and N31 - N32, when positioning is performed with the commands in block N31. This moves the cutting tool in the -X direction although the commands in that block specify tool movement in the +X direction. This is due to the positioning in block N3, where the tool nose R goes beyond side N31 - N32.

Similarly, positioning of the cutting tool in block N32 is carried out at the point where the tool nose R comes into contact with both straight lines N31 - N32 and N32 - N4. This also causes the cutting tool to move in the direction opposite to the programmed direction. The result is overcutting.

(4) Program 4



Program 4:

In this program, a tool looping similar to that performed in program 3 is executed with the numeral values modified to avoid overcutting.

```

N1  G42  G01  X100  Z100  F0.2  S1500  T010101  M03
N2           Z80
N3           X120  Z40
N31  G00           X126
N32           X120  Z43           S1000
N4  G01           Z20

```

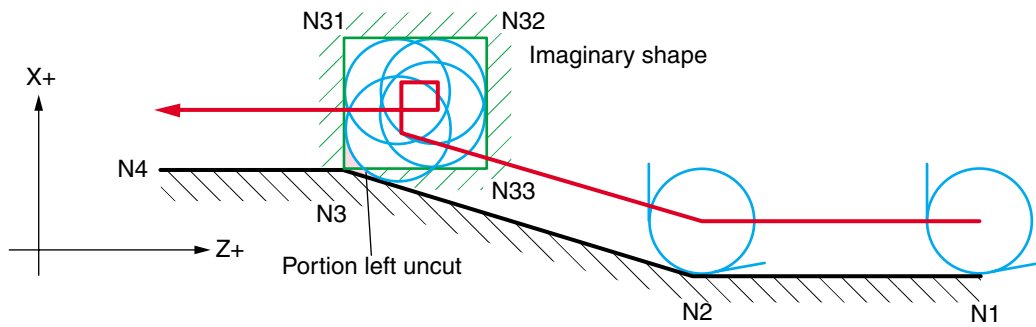
This program almost yields the expected finish. However, there are still latent problems, such as:

- overcutting is caused depending on the size of the tool nose R
- the length of side N31 - N32 cannot be readily found.

These problems are solved by looping the tool path along a square as explained next.

(5) Program 5

Program 5 solves the problems encountered with program 4.



Program 5:

```

N1  G42  G01  X100  Z100  F0.2  T010101  M03
N2                      Z80
N3                      X120  Z40
N31  G00          X124.....( > 120 + 4 × (nose R) )
N32                      Z42  S1000.....( > 40 + 2 × (nose R) )
N33  G01          X120
N4                      Z20

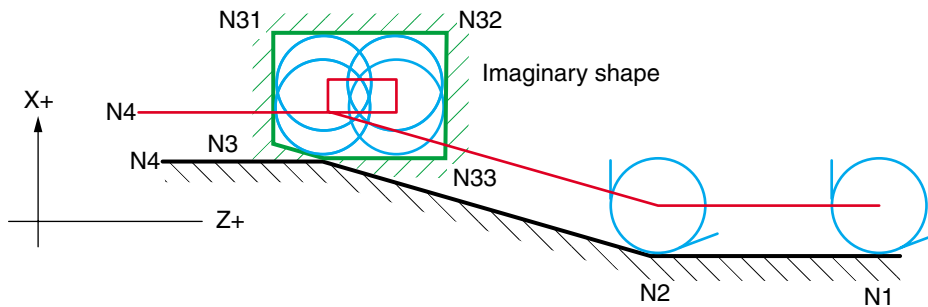
```

In this looping path, the tool nose R moves inside the programmed rectangle, N3 - N31 - N32 - N33. Therefore, axis behavior can be easily expected if only these respective sides are longer than twice the tool nose R (four times on the X-axis).

Since this program still leaves an uncut portion, it can be further improved as indicated in program 6.

(6) Program 6

In this program, point N3 is shifted in the -Z direction by an amount equivalent to the tool nose R to eliminate the uncut part seen in Program 5. This program gives a fully satisfactory result.



Program 6:

```

N1  G42  G01  X100  Z100      F0.2  S1500  T010101  M03
N2                      Z80
N3                      X120.5  Z39
N31  G00          X124.....(> 120.5 + 4 × (nose R) )
N32                      Z42  S1000.....(> 39 + 2 × (nose R) )
N33  G01          X120
N4                      Z20

```

Programs 1 through 5 will provide some clues to complete the program for the intended cutting.

As an imaginary shape for tool path looping, select a rectangle or polygon but not a triangle. Triangles are apt to lead to unexpected tool movements.

NOTICE

- 1) If either the X- or Z-axis exceed its soft-limit, a "Limit Alarm" results.
- 2) During the tool nose radius compensation mode, commands that do not cause axis motion, although dimension words are present, (zero offset by G code for instance, or thread cutting fixed cycle (G31, G32 and G33)) cannot be specified.
- 3) To activate the tool nose radius compensation mode from LAP mode operation, designate G41 or G42 in the block preceded by the one containing G81 or G82 in which the cutting dimensions in the LAP are specified. In LAP mode operation, tool nose radius compensation is active both in rough and finish cut cycles.
Be sure to enter G40, which cancels the tool nose radius compensation mode, before specifying the end of LAP contour designation code G80.
- 4) While in the tool nose radius compensation mode, the same point should not be commanded repeatedly. However, one block that does not contain axis motion commands can be programmed; the control is designed to accept such block.
- 5) At the start up of tool nose radius compensation mode, the control starts execution of the commands after it read in the commands in the successive two blocks. Therefore, pressing the CYCLE START button in the MDI mode after entering the commands for one block cannot start machine operation.
- 6) Incremental commands (G91) can be provided in the tool nose radius compensation mode.

2. Cutter Radius Compensation Function

2-1. Overview

This function automatically offsets the tool paths to generate the required shape in multi-processing just by programming the final shape.

Using this function, cutters of different diameters can be used to machine workpieces of the same shape without modifying the program.

2-2. Programming

(1) Designation of offset plane (G17, G18, G119)

[Function]

Changeover among the X-Z plane (nose R compensation), the X-Y plane (cutter radius compensation on contour generation machining plane (face)), and C-X-Z plane (cutter radius compensation on contour generation machining plane (side)) is possible by designating the appropriate G code.

[Programming format]

G17 : X-Y plane
(cutter radius compensation on contour generation machining plane, face)
G18 : X-Z plane (nose R compensation)
G119 : C-X-Z plane
(cutter radius compensation on contour generation machining plane, side)

[Details]

- G17 and G119 are effective only while the C-axis is joined.
- When the C-axis control cancel command (M109) is executed, the X-Z plane (G18) is automatically selected.
- When the power is turned on or the control is reset, the X-Z plane (G18) is selected.

(2) Cutter radius compensation function ON/OFF (G40, G41, G42)

[Function]

Turn the cutter radius compensation function on and off by means of G codes.

[Programming format]

G40 : Cutter radius compensation function OFF
G41 : Cutter radius compensation function, left
(viewed in the direction of tool advance, the tool is positioned at the left side of the workpiece)
G42 : Cutter radius compensation function, right
(viewed in the direction of tool advance, the tool is positioned at the right side of the workpiece)

[Details]

- In the G17 plane, compensation can be activated in the following G code modes.
G00, G01, G101, G102, G103
- In the G119 plane, compensation can be activated in the following G code modes.
G00, G01, G132, G133

(3) Cutter radius compensation values

[Function]

The cutter radius compensation values are designated using a 6-digit T command.

T O O Δ Δ □ □

O O : Tool nose radius compensation number

Δ Δ : Tool number

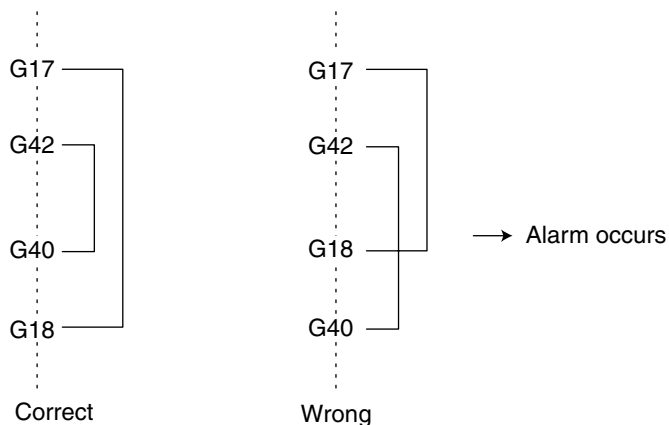
□ □ : Tool offset number

[Details]

- Set the cutter radius compensation value in advance at the nose R column in the tool data setting screen.
- Set the same value for both X and Z. If different values are set, the value having larger absolute value takes effect.
- The nose R pattern number is effective only in the G18 (nose R compensation) mode. In the G17 and G119 (cutter radius compensation) modes, it is ignored.

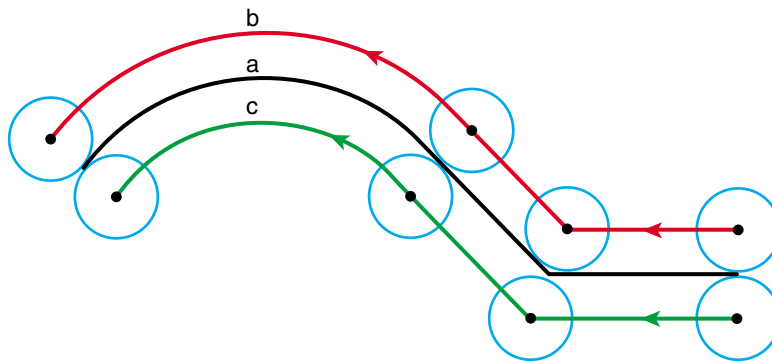
(4) Designation of cutter radius compensation plane and turning on/off the function

- Before calling the cutter radius compensation function (G41, G42), designate the plane (G17, G18, G119).
- When switching the cutter radius compensation direction (G41, G42), cancel the cutter radius compensation function first by designating G40 before calling the other G code.
- To change the compensation plane, cancel the cutter radius compensation function by designating G40. If G17, G18 or G119 is designated in the G41 or G42 mode, an alarm occurs.



2-3. Operations

Tool motion in the G17 and G19 modes with the cutter radius compensation function active, is illustrated below.

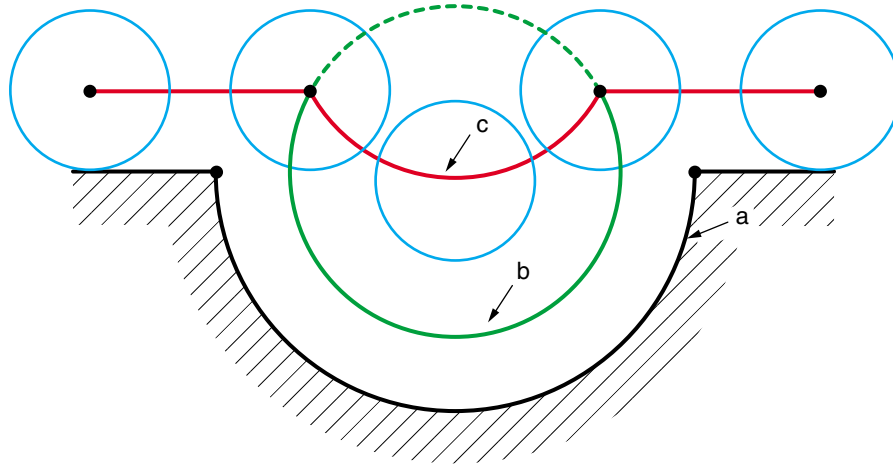


- a : Programmed path (final shape)
- b : Tool path in the G42 mode
- c : Tool path in the G41 mode

In the cutter radius compensation OFF (G40) state, the cutter center moves along the path "a".



- 1) If the tool paths calculated in the G102 or G103 mode with the cutter radius compensation active, create an arc having a center angle of greater than 180° , the arc which has the center angle of " 360° - obtained angle" is selected. See the figure below. This is because the contour generation function selects the arc with a center angle of less than 180° from the two possible arcs satisfying the designated arc definition.

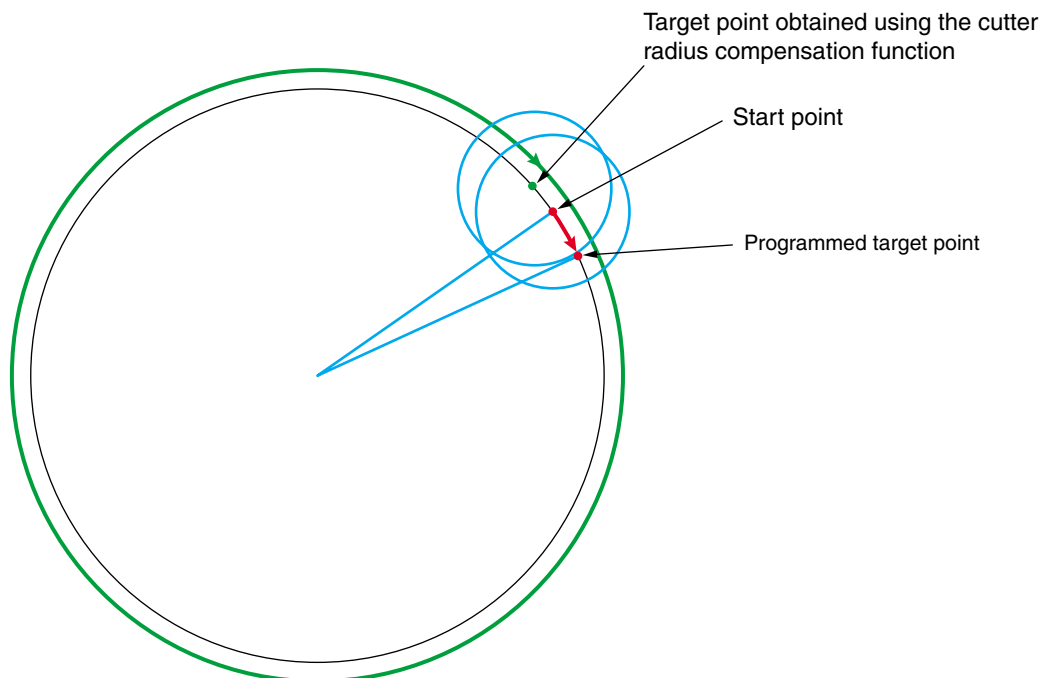


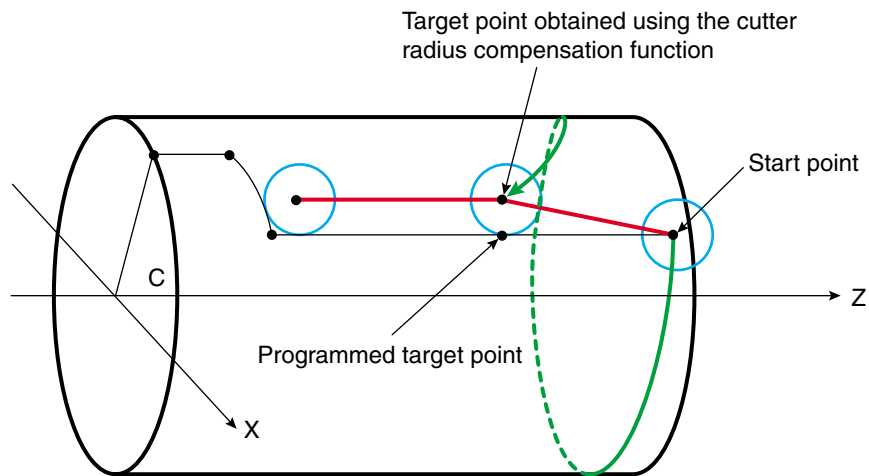
a : Programmed tool paths

b : Tool paths obtained using the cutter radius compensation function ($> 180^\circ$)

c : Actual tool paths ($< 180^\circ$)

- 2) In the G00 and G01 modes, if the C-axis motion amount is less than the radius of the cutter, the C-axis might make a full circle when the cutter radius compensation function is activated for such a command. See the figure below.



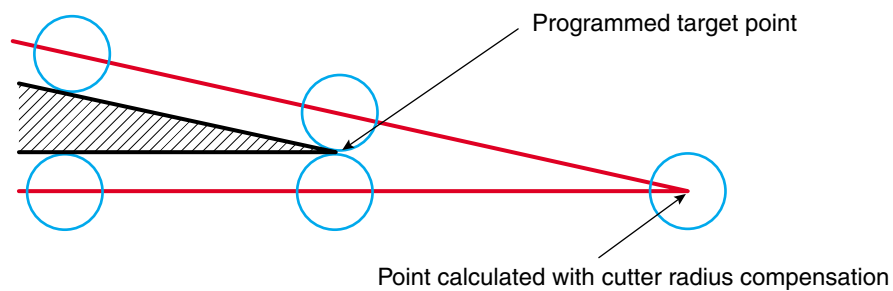


Cutter Radius Compensation for Contour Generation (Side) (2/2)

In the G00 and G01 modes, the direction of rotation follows the designated command (M15, M16). In the G101, G102, and G103 modes, the direction of rotation is automatically determined by the control. Therefore, if M15 is designated because the programmed target point is in the M15 direction viewing from the start point, there may be cases in which the target point calculated using the cutter radius compensation function comes to lie in the M16 direction. As the result, the C-axis makes virtually a full circle.

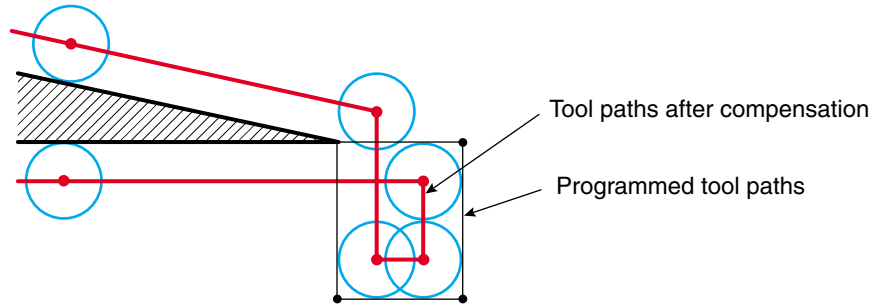
If such a problem occurs, designate the cutter radius compensation function in a different block, or change the target point.

- 3) If the cutter radius compensation function is made active for tool paths which run outside the acute angle shape, there may be cases in which the calculated target point lies far from the programmed target point. See the figure below.





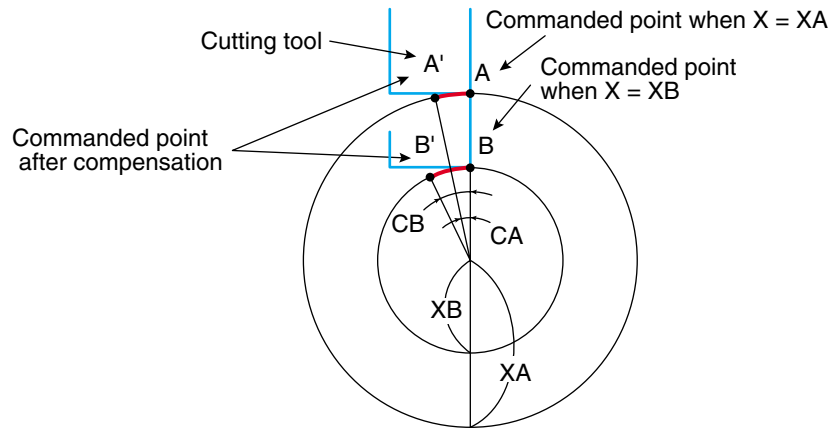
To avoid such a problem, it is necessary to change the program as shown in the figure below.



Example of Programmed Escape

- 4) An alarm occurs if the X position is changed during the cutter radius compensation on the G119 plane (C-X-Z plane). This is because the compensation plane is changed when the X value is changed on the G119 plane, thus making it impossible to guarantee the compensation value. See the figure below.

The commanded points change between A and B according to the X value (XA, XB) even when the Z-C commands are the same. As illustrated below, the actual compensation values will vary at points A and B even when a tool of the same diameter is used.



Machining (Side) Viewed from Front
Cutter Radius Compensation for Contour Generation

SECTION 7 FIXED CYCLES

1. Fixed Cycle Functions

Using G31, G32, G33, G34, and G35, it is possible to cut a variety of threads - straight thread, taper thread, thread on an end face, and variable lead thread.

2. Fixed Thread Cutting Cycles

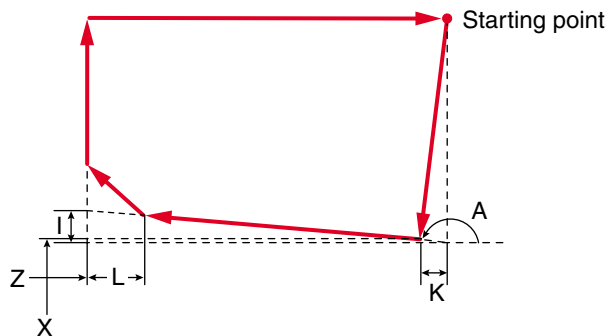
For details on writing thread cutting programs, refer to section 4. "Precautions when Programming Thread Cutting Cycles".

2-1. Fixed Thread Cutting Cycle: Longitudinal (G31, G33)

[Programming format]

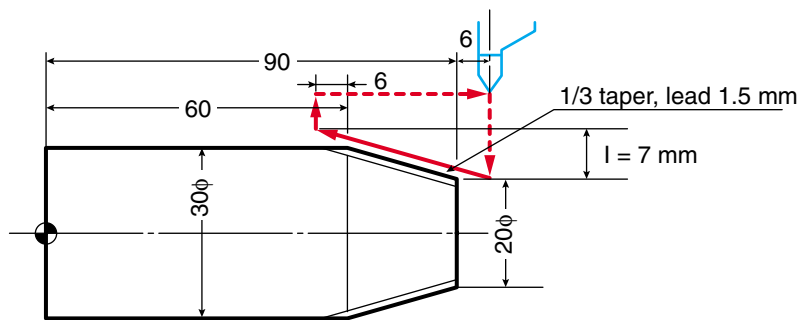
G33 X__ Z__ { I__ } (E__) F__ (K__)(L__)(J__)(C__)
(G31)

- G33 : Fixed thread cutting cycle (longitudinal) command
- G31 : Fixed thread cutting cycle command
- X : Thread diameter for each thread cutting cycle
- Z : Coordinate value of thread end point in Z-axis direction
- F : Thread lead (F/J if a J word is provided.)
- I : Difference in radius between start and end of taper
- A : Taper angle (Taper is specified by either an I or A word.)
- E : Z-axis shift amount of thread cutting starting point
(When no K word is specified, the control assumes K=0.)
- L : Chamfering distance
(When no L word is specified, the control assumes L=one lead at thread cutting start)
L word is effective in the thread chamfering ON (M23) mode.
- J : Number of threads within a distance specified by the F word
(When no J word is specified, the control assumes J=1.)
- C : Phase difference for multi-thread thread cutting
(when no C word is specified, the control assumes C=0.)



A thread cutting cycle can be programmed in the same manner with G31 as with G33.

Example Program: Constant Lead Taper Thread



| | | | |
|------|-----|--------|-------------|
| N001 | G00 | X40 | Z96 |
| N002 | G33 | X17 | Z54 17 F1.5 |
| N003 | | X16.5 | |
| N004 | | X16.2 | |
| N005 | | X16.05 | |

Thread lead is commanded as a lead along the Z-axis.

Positioning to the thread cutting starting point, X = 40 mm (in dia.) and Z = 96 mm, at a rapid feedrate.

- With an I word in the G33 block, the taper thread cutting cycle indicated in the drawing above is carried out.
- X, Z and F words are determined in the same manner as when cutting a straight thread.
- The value I in this example can be calculated according to the following equation:

$$[(96 - 54) \times 1/3]/2 = 7$$

Note that the I word specifies a difference in radius.

Program X dimension (as a diameter) for each succeeding thread cutting pass.

NOTICE

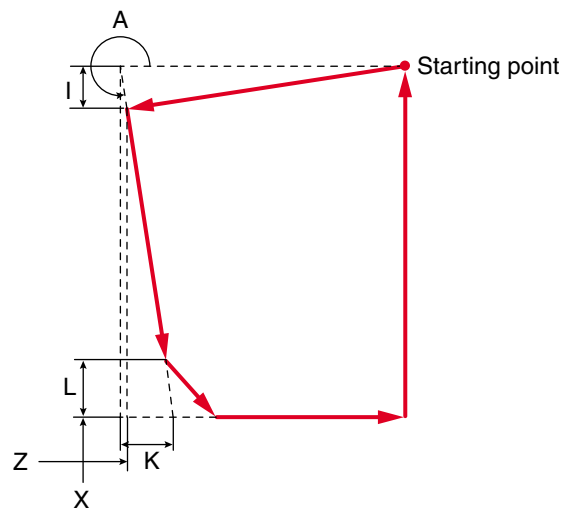
- 1) The sign of an I word determines increasing or decreasing taper (“+” for increasing taper and “-” for decreasing taper). The plus sign (+) may be omitted.
- 2) The difference in radius between the starting point and end point is expressed by an I word.

2-2. Fixed Thread Cutting Cycle: End Face (G32)

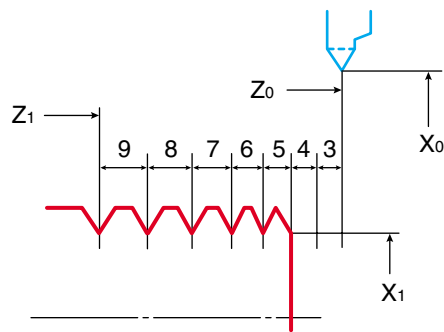
[Programming format]

G32X__Z__ { $\begin{matrix} K_ \\ A_ \end{matrix} \}$ (E__)(I__)(L__)(J__)F__(C__)

- X : Coordinate value of thread end point in X-axis direction
- Z : Coordinate value of thread cutting pass in Z-axis direction
- F : Thread lead (F/J if a J word specified.)
- K : Difference between starting point and end point for taper thread cutting
(When no K word is specified, the control assumes K=0.)
“+” increasing taper
“-” decreasing taper
- A : Taper angle referenced to axis parallel to Z-axis
(Taper is specified by either an I or A word.)
- E : Lead variation per lead in cutting variable lead thread
(When no E word is specified, the control assumes E=0.)
- I : X-axis shift amount of thread cutting starting point
(When no I word is specified, the control assumes I=0.)
- L : Chamfering distance
(When no L word is specified, the control assumes L=one lead at thread cutting starting)
- J : Number of threads within a distance specified by F word
(When no J word is specified, the control assumes J=1.)
- C : Phase difference for multi-thread thread cutting (C=0 if omitted.)



Example Program: Variable Lead Thread



| | | | | | | |
|------|-----|----|----|----|------|--|
| N001 | G00 | X0 | Z0 | | | |
| N002 | G33 | X1 | Z1 | E1 | F2.5 | |
| N003 | | X2 | | | | |
| N004 | | X3 | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

Positioning to thread cutting starting point X0, Z0 at a rapid feedrate.

- With an E word in G33 block, variable lead thread cutting cycle is performed along the paths indicated in the drawing above.
- X and Z words can be determined in the same manner as when cutting a straight thread.
- The value of an E word is used to specify the lead variation rate per pitch. If it is 1 mm, set "E1".
- The F word specifies the first lead employed in starting the thread cutting cycle. F2.5 in this example.

Program Z dimension for each succeeding thread cutting pass.

NOTICE

The sign of an E word expresses increasing or decreasing lead.

- Increasing lead: E+
- Decreasing lead: E-

The "+" sign may be omitted.

NOTICE

When determining the F word value, use the following equation:

$$D = n \times (F_0 \pm \frac{n \times E}{2})$$

where,

D : displacement after "n" revolutions, (mm)

n : number of revolutions required for displacement D, $\text{min}^{-1}\{\text{rpm}\}$

F_0 : thread lead at start of thread cutting cycle

E : lead variation amount per revolution

\pm : increasing or decreasing lead

"+" : increasing lead

"-" : decreasing lead

Using the equation above, the F value can be calculated as follows:

$$D = n \times (F_0 + \frac{nE}{2})$$

$$42 = 7 (F_0 + \frac{7 \times 1}{2})$$

$$F_0 = 2.5$$

3. Non-Fixed Thread Cutting Cycle (G34, G35)

[Function]

Used for a variety of special thread cutting, such as parts combining a straight thread with a taper thread, or a variable lead thread and straight thread.

[Programming format]

G34 X__ Z__ (E__) F__ (C__) (J__)

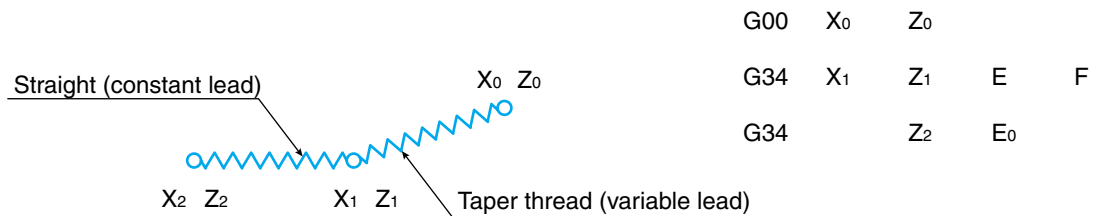
G35

F : Thread lead
 E : Lead variation amount
 C : Thread cutting phase difference (if not specified, the control assumes C=0)
 J : Number of threads within the specified lead F (if not specified, the control assumes J=1)

[Details]

- Thread cutting is performed from the actual position to the position X, Z with a lead of F.
- If a lead variation amount, E, is specified, the thread cutting start position increases (G34) or decreases (G35) by the amount specified for E every pitch.

Example:



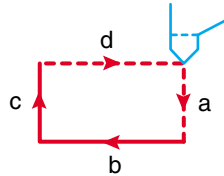
NOTICE

- 1) The lead for the straight thread in the example above is the one at the start point (Z0) of the variable lead thread. If the straight thread is required to be cut with the lead obtained at point Z1, specify an F word again.
- 2) To specify the thread lead along the axis parallel to the X-axis, command M27. As M27 is effective only within one block, specify M27 for individual blocks when selecting the thread lead along the X-axis. For thread lead along the Z-axis, specify M26.

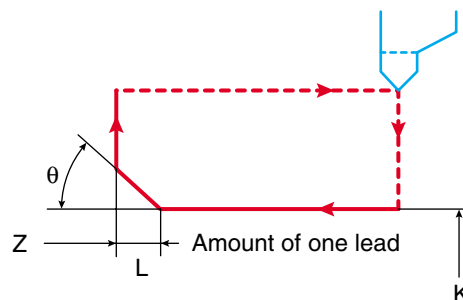
4. Precautions when Programming Thread Cutting Cycles

Observe the following points when programming thread cutting cycles:

- The G codes commanding thread cutting (G31 to G35) cannot be designated in the G96 (constant peripheral speed cutting ON) mode.
- Motion of Thread Cutting Tool
In thread cutting cycles called for by G31, G32 and G33, tool paths a and d are executed at a rapid feedrate, b at the feedrate specified by an F word, and c at the rate determined by parameter setting.



- Lead of Taper Thread
The lead of a taper thread is parallel to the Z-axis in the G31 and G33 mode, and parallel to the X-axis in the G32 mode.
In the G34 and G35 modes, an M code is used to designate the direction of thread lead:
M26: Cancellation of M27, parallel to Z-axis
M27: Parallel to X-axis
If no M code is specified in the G34 or G35 mode, the control assumes M26, parallel to the Z-axis.
- Number of Thread Cutting Passes
Determine the number of thread cutting passes to complete the thread according the workpiece material, thread lead, etc.
- Spindle Speed Change During Thread Cutting Cycle
If the spindle speed is changed during a thread cutting cycle, it will shift the starting point of the cycle, damaging the thread being cut.
Therefore, never change spindle speed during thread cutting cycle.
- Feedrate Override
The feedrate override dial is inoperative during a thread cutting cycle.
- Chamfering
Chamfering in thread cutting to produce a thread vanish cone can be programmed by commanding M23, if required. To cancel this mode, command M22.
M22: Chamfering OFF
M23: Chamfering ON



Equal to one lead when no L command is given

The feedrate used for chamfering in the X-axis direction is set at Feedrate of chamfering in thread cycle of optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 1).

$$\text{Feedrate on the X-axis (mm/min)} = \left\{ \frac{\text{Parameter setting } (\mu)}{10^3} \times \frac{60 \times 10^3 \text{ (msec)}}{12.8 \text{ (msec)}} \right\}$$

Therefore, the chamfering angle α is determined by the feed in the Z-axis direction (designated in the thread cutting program) and the feed in the X-axis direction.

Example chamfering program:

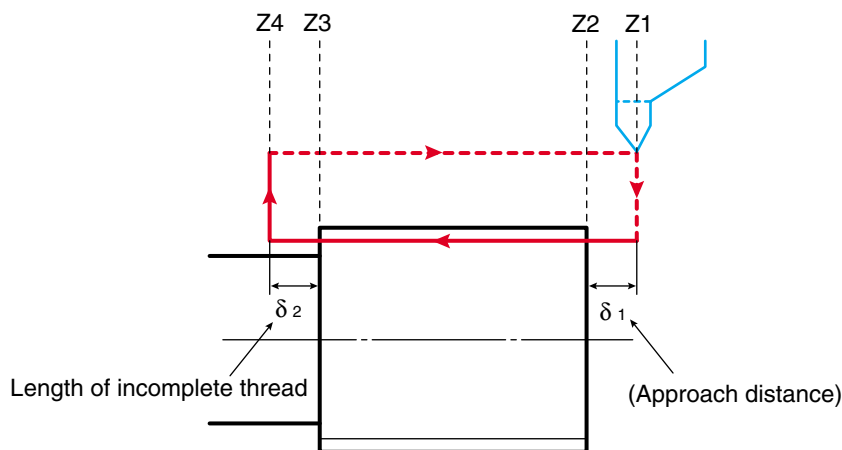
```

N001 G00 X40 Z80 M23
N002 G33 X29 Z50 F1.5
N003 X28.5
N001 X28.2
N001 X28.05
N001 G00 X1 Z1 M22

```

- Extra Length in Thread Cutting Program

Since a certain length of incomplete thread is usually produced near the start and end point of the cut, it is necessary to add appropriate amounts δ_1 and δ_2 at the start and end of the thread to be cut in order to cut the proper thread shape.



Values δ_1 and δ_2 vary depending on the cutting conditions. Generally, these values must satisfy the following equations:

$$\delta_2 > K \times N \times P$$

$$\delta_1 > K \times N \times P$$

where,

N: spindle speed

P: lead

K: machine-model-dependent constant

The values of constant K for individual models are indicated below:

| Model | K[X10 ⁻³] |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| LB10 II | 0.85 |
| LB15 II | 0.96 |
| LB25 II | 0.85 |
| LB35 II | 1.28 |
| LB35 II (AW model) | 2.56 |
| LB45 II | 0.96 |
| LS30N | 0.85 |
| LH35N | 1.07 |
| LH55N | 0.96 |
| LU15 | 1.07 |
| LU25 | 1.07 |

| Model | K[X10 ⁻³] |
|-------|-----------------------|
| LU35 | 0.85 |
| LU45 | 1.28 |
| LT10 | 0.85 |
| LT15 | 0.85 |
| LT25 | 1.07 |
| LCC15 | 1.07 |
| LCS10 | 0.75 |
| LCS15 | 0.85 |
| LCS25 | 0.64 |
| LAW | 2.56 |
| LAW-F | 1.28 |

Example:

For the LCS25, with a peripheral speed of 100 m/min, a 10 mm diameter and a thread lead of 1.5 mm, the spindle speed and feedrate are calculated as follows.

$$\text{Spindle speed } N = \frac{100 \times 10^3}{10\pi} = 3183 \text{ (rev/min)}$$

$$\text{Feedrate } N \times P = 3183 \times 1.5 = 4775 \text{ (mm/min)}$$

Since $\delta_1 = \delta_2 = 0.64 \times 10^{-3}$, δ_1 and δ_2 must be greater than 3.05 mm, calculated as follows:

$$0.64 \times 10^{-3} \times 4775 = 3.05 \text{ (mm)}$$

- Restrictions on Cutting Speed

In a thread cutting cycle, the following restrictions apply to the relationship between spindle speed and thread lead:

Programmable thread lead 0.001 to 1000.000 mm

Spindle speed: X-axis : Max. feedrate of X-axis > $N \times P$

 Z-axis : Max. feedrate of Z-axis > $N \times P$

 where,

 N: spindle speed

 P: lead

NOTICE

- 1) The same restrictions apply in G01 linear interpolation mode operation.
- 2) The maximum feedrates vary according to the machine specifications.

- Inch System Thread

When cutting inch threads, the metric lead converted from the desired inch lead is used in programming. To cut an accurate inch thread with the converted metric thread lead value, either enter 8 digits below the programmable increment, 1 μm , or use a J word in combination with an F word.

Example: To cut an inch thread of 11 threads per inch (25.4/11 8 2.309091)

| | | | | |
|-----|---|---|-----------|--------------------------------|
| G34 | X | Z | F25.4 J11 | (1 mm unit system) |
| G34 | X | Z | F230.9091 | (10 μm unit system) |
| G34 | X | Z | F2.309091 | (1 mm unit system) |
| G34 | X | Z | F2309.091 | (1 μm unit system) |

- Feed Hold During Thread Cutting Cycle

This function is effective while an the Z (X) axis is moving in the G33 (G32) mode. Pressing the SLIDE HOLD pushbutton during the thread cutting cycle stops axis movement immediately, breaking the thread being cut and damaging the workpiece. This function is provided to prevent such trouble.

Activate this function to check the dimensions and shape of the threads being cut and also to check the tip point of the thread cutting tool.

[Operation]

- When the SLIDE HOLD pushbutton is pressed during a thread cutting cycle:

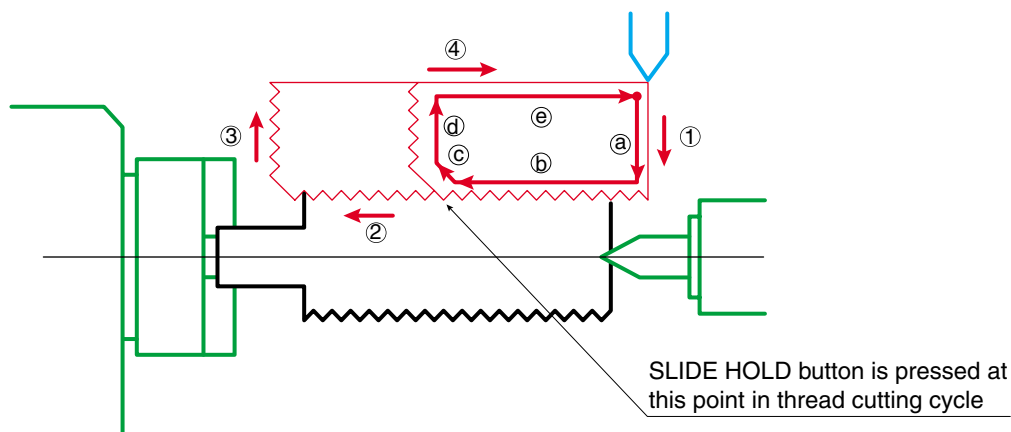
- (1) Chamfering equivalent to one lead length or the length specified by an L command is performed.
- (2) The X-axis returns to the thread cutting cycle starting point.
- (3) The Z-axis returns to the thread cutting cycle starting point.
- (4) The control is in cycle stop mode waiting for pressing of the CYCLE START button.

- When the CYCLE START button is pressed:

The interrupted thread cutting cycle is continued.

This interruption operation can be repeated as many times as necessary in the same thread cutting cycle. When the SLIDE HOLD button is pressed while the axes are moving along path (1) or (4) (see figure) where thread cutting is not executed, axis movement stops immediately. Pressing the CYCLE START button after that resumes the thread cutting cycle.

If the SLIDE HOLD button is pressed while the axis is moving along path (3), axis movement stops after it reaches the end point of path (3).



Normal thread cutting cycle : (1) → (2) → (3) → (4)

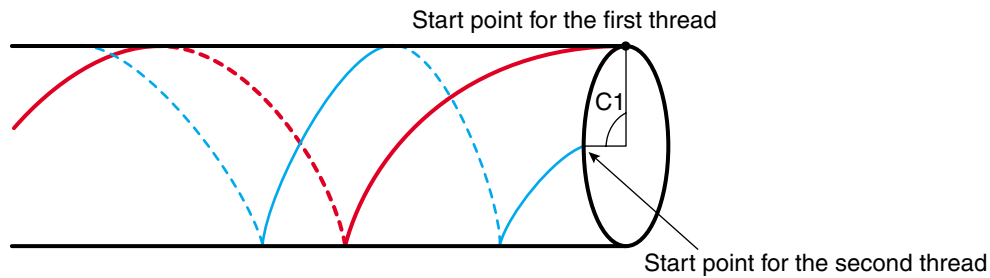
Cycle after slide hold : (a) → (b) → (c) → (d) → (e)

- Designation of Phase Difference (Angle) for Multi-thread Thread Cutting
Multi-thread thread can be programmed easily by designating the thread cutting start point.
For G33 cycle:

```

G33  X1  Z1  F  } First thread
      X2
      X3
G33  X1  Z1  F  } Second thread
      X2  C2
      X3  C3

```



Thread cutting is carried out by shifting the thread phase by the amount (angle) specified by the C command.
For G32 cycle:

```

G32  X1  Z1  F  C1
      Z2  C1
      Z3  C1

```

For G34, G35 cycle:

```

G34  X1  Z1  E1  C
G34      Z2  E2

```

The C command is ignored except in the first sequence

NOTICE

- 1) Programmable range for C command: 0 - 359.999
- 2) In the G32 and G33 cycles, the C command value designated in the first block remains effective for the subsequent blocks.
- 3) In the G32 and G33 cycles, if a C command value differing from the value designated in the first block is designated in a subsequent block, this C command value is ignored.
- 4) In the G34 and G35 cycles, a C command value can be designated only in the first sequence block; a C command value designated in the second and subsequent sequence blocks is not acceptable.

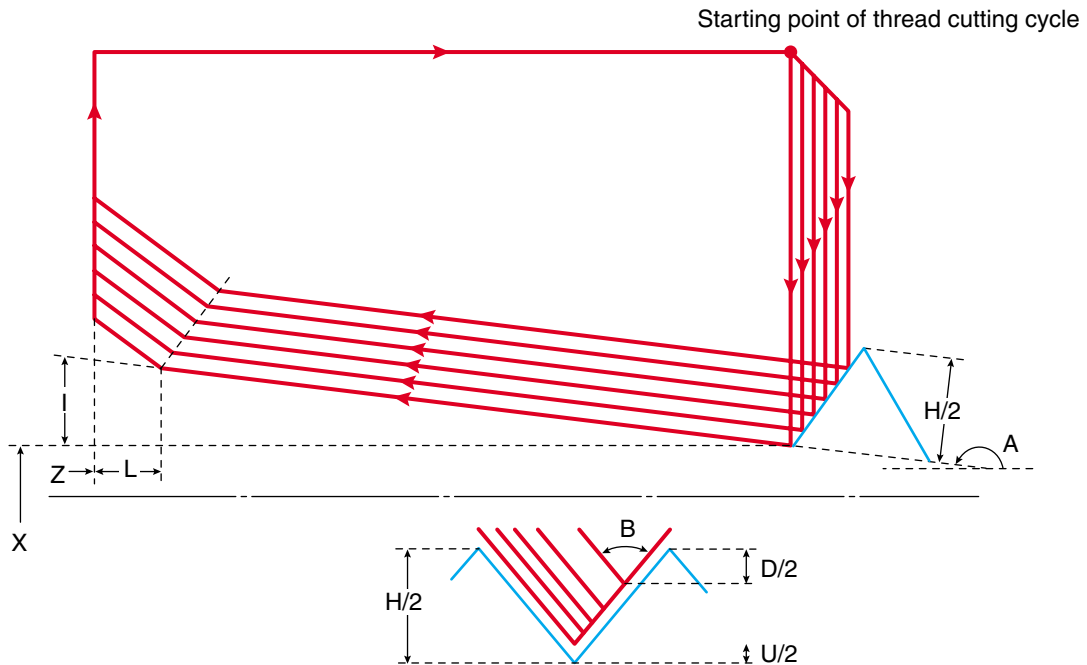
For multi-thread thread cutting operation, refer to the next section, 5. "Thread Cutting Compound Cycle (G71/G72)".

5. Thread Cutting Compound Cycle (G71/G72)

5-1. Longitudinal Thread Cutting Cycle (G71)

[Function]

In G71 mode thread cutting cycle as shown below is performed:

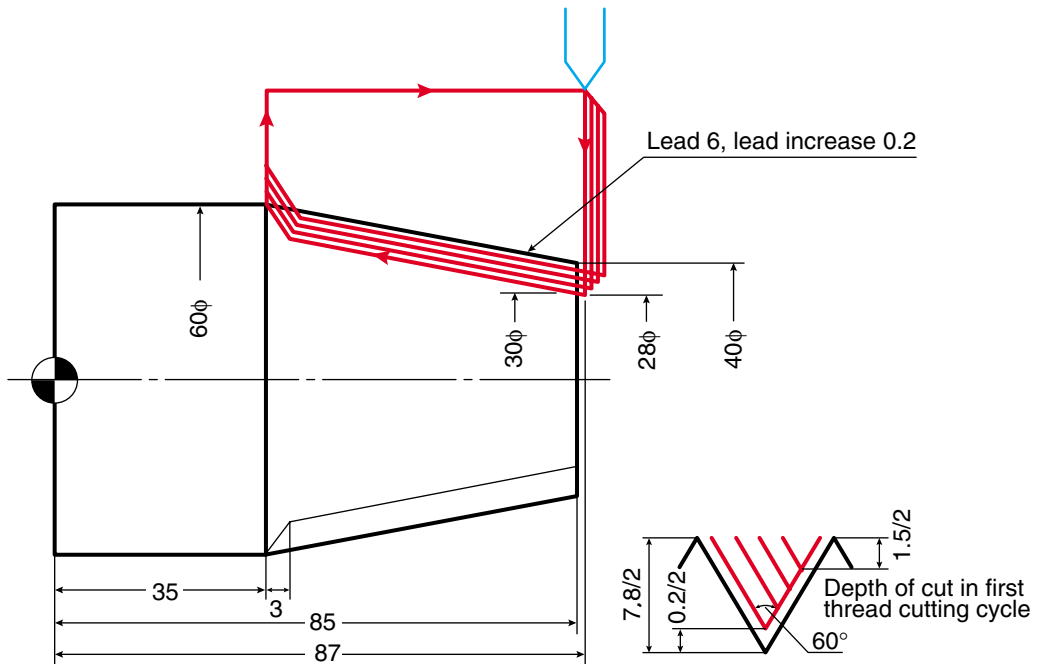


[Programming format]

G71X__Z__ { $\frac{A}{I}$ } B_D_U_H_L_E_F_J_M_Q

- X : Final diameter of thread
- Z : Z coordinate of end point of thread
- A : Taper angle
- I : Difference in radius between starting point and end point for taper thread (expressed as a radius)
For taper thread, use either an A or I word.
- B : Infeed angle
($0^\circ < B < 180^\circ$; 0° if no designation. Normally it is equal to the cutter tip point angle.)
- D : Depth of cut in the first thread cutting cycle
(Expressed as a diameter)
- U : Finishing allowance
(Expressed as a diameter; no finishing cycle is performed if no U word is designated.)
- H : Thread height
(Expressed as a diameter)
- L : Chamfering distance in final thread cutting cycle
(Effective in M23 mode; if no L word is designated in the M23 mode, L is assumed to be the distance equivalent to one lead.)
- E : Lead variation rate per lead for variable lead thread
- F : Thread lead (F/J if a J word specified.)
- J : Number of threads within a distance specified by F word
(When no J word is designated, the control assumes J=1.)
- M : Used to select thread cutting pattern and mode of infeed.
(For details, refer to 5-4. "M Code Specifying Thread Cutting Mode and Infeed Pattern")
- Q : The number of threads for multi-thread thread cutting (refer to 5-5. "Multi-thread Thread Cutting Function in Compound Fixed Thread Cutting Cycle".)

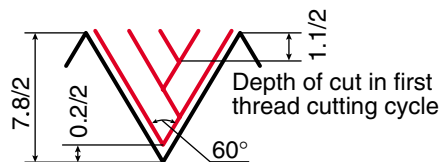
5-2. Program Example for Longitudinal Thread Cutting Compound Fixed Cycle (G71)



Example 1:
Using M32 (one-face cutting mode) and M75 (infeed pattern 3):

```
N001 G71 X28 Z35 I11 B60 D1.5 U0.2 H7.8 L3 E0.2 F6
$ M23 M32 M75
```

Example 2:
Using M33 (zigzag cutting mode) and M74 (infeed pattern 2)

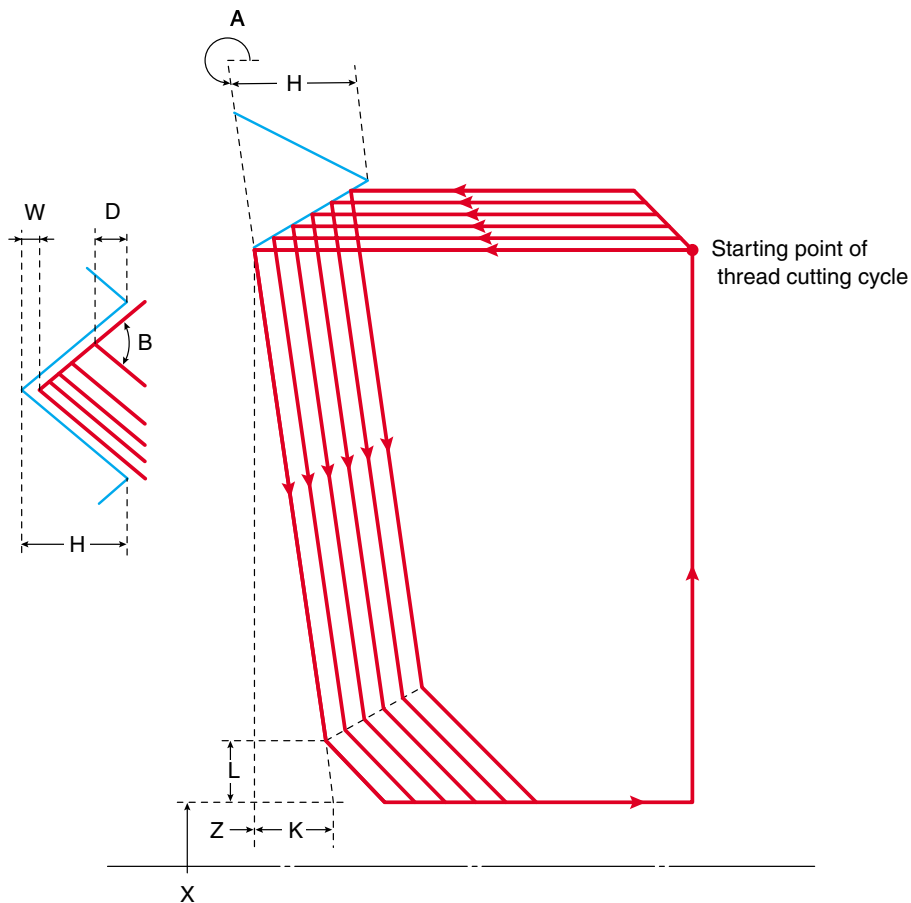


```
N0001 G71 X28 Z35 I11 B60 D1.1 U0.2 H7.8 L3 E0.2 F6
$ M23 M32 M75
```

5-3. Transverse Thread Cutting Compound Fixed Cycle (G72)

[Function]

In the transverse thread cutting compound fixed cycle, the thread cutting cycle shown below is performed.



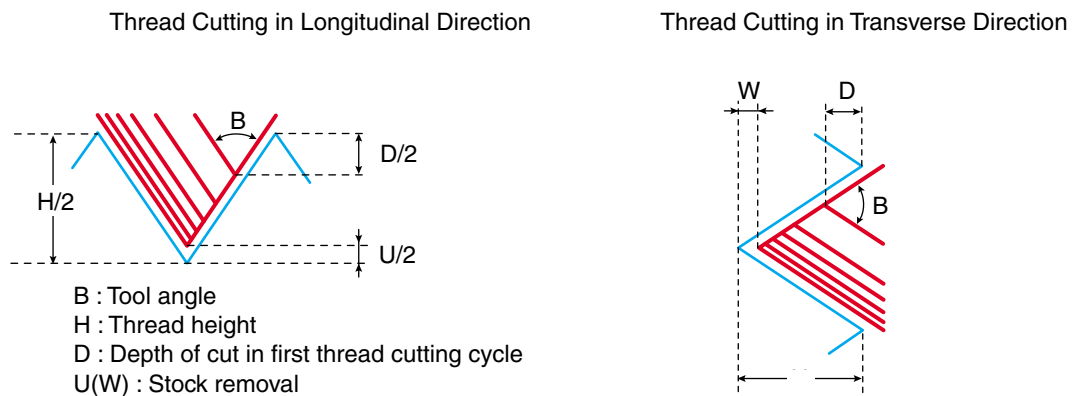
[Programming format]

G72 X_— Z_— {_A_K} B_— D_— W_— H_— L_— E_— F_— J_— M_— Q_—

- X : X coordinate of end point of thread
- Z : Z dimension of final thread cutting cycle
- A : Taper angle
- K : Distance between starting point and end point for taper thread
For taper thread, use either an A or K word.
- B : Infeed angle ($0^\circ < B < 180^\circ$; 0° if no B command is designated.)
- D : Depth of cut in the first thread cutting cycle
- W : Finishing allowance
(No finishing cycle is performed if no W word is designated.)
- H : Thread height
- L : Chamfering distance in final thread cutting cycle
(Effective in the M23 mode; if no L word is designated in the M23 mode, L is assumed to be the distance equivalent to one lead.)
- E : Lead variation per lead in cutting variable lead thread
(When no E word is specified, the control assumes E=0.)
- F : Thread lead (F/J if a J word specified.)
- J : Number of threads within a distance specified by F word
(When no J word is specified, the control assumes J=1.)
- M : Used to select thread cutting pattern and mode of infeed.
(For details, refer to 5-4. "M Code Specifying Thread Cutting Mode and Infeed Pattern")
- Q : The number of threads for multi-thread thread cutting (refer to 5-5. "Multi-thread Thread Cutting Function in Compound Fixed Thread Cutting Cycle")

5-4. M Code Specifying Thread Cutting Mode and Infeed Pattern

The tool angle, B , thread height, H , depth of cut in first thread cutting cycle, D , and stock removal, W , are indicated below for thread cutting in the longitudinal direction and in the transverse direction.



5-4-1. M Codes Specifying Thread Cutting Mode

The thread cutting mode is specified with an M code. The correspondence between modes and M codes is as follows:

- M32 : Straight infeed along thread face (on left face)
- M33 : Zigzag infeed
- M34 : Straight infeed along thread face (on right face)

When none of these M codes is specified, the control automatically selects the M32 mode. If tool angle B is 0° , the cutting tool is fed straight independent of the designated cutting mode.

5-4-2. M Codes Specifying the Infeed Pattern

The infeed pattern is specified with an M code. The correspondence between patterns and M codes is as follows:

- 1) M73: Infeed pattern 1
The amount of infeed is D (diameter value) in each thread cutting cycle up to the point D mm away from the position " $H - U(W)$ ". After that point is reached, the infeed amount is changed to $D/2$, $D/4$, $D/8$ and $D/8$, leaving stock removal $U(W)$ if specified. The infeed amount in the finishing cycle is the specified amount $U(W)$. When no $U(W)$ word is specified, the finishing cycle is not performed.
- 2) M74: Infeed pattern 2
The amount of infeed is D (in diameter) in each thread cutting cycle until the position " $H - U(W)$ " is reached. After that, the finishing cycle is carried out with an infeed amount of $U(W)$. If no $U(W)$ word is specified, the finishing cycle is not performed.
- 3) M75: Infeed patterns 3 and 4
In each thread cutting path of the thread cutting cycle, depth of cut is determined so that metal removal rate is optimum. Infeed pattern 3 or pattern 4 can be selected by the setting at Infeed pattern in the M75 mode of optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 1).

Infeed pattern 3

- When M32, M34 is designated

$$D^2 \leq \{H^2 - (H - U(W))^2\}$$

Each thread cutting path in the cycle is determined by the cutting point which is explained as the depth from the workpiece OD; the first path is created at cutting point "D", the second path at cutting point "D2D", and the "n"th path at cutting point "DnD" until the path reaches the cutting point of "H - U (W)". Finally, the cutting tool is fed by "U (W)" to carry out the finishing cycle. The finishing cycle is not carried out if U (W) is not designated in the program.

$$D^2 < \{H^2 - (H - U(W))^2\}$$

In each thread cutting path, assume the thread cutting point d_1 (D) and metal removal volume S_1 for the first path, d_2 and S_2 for the second path, and d_n and S_n for the "n"th path, then cutting points d_2 to d_n are determined so that S_2 to S_n will be the most appropriate metal removal volume to provide high cutting accuracy while minimizing the number of paths. This cycle is repeated until the cutting point of "H - U (W)" is reached. Finally, the cutting tool is fed by "U (W)" to carry out the finishing cycle. The finishing cycle is not carried out if U (W) is not designated in the program.

- When M33 is designated

$$D^2 \leq \{H^2 - (H - U(W))^2\}$$

The thread cutting cycle is repeated with the cutting point at each even numbered thread cutting path being "D" until the cutting point of "H - U (W)" is reached. In each odd numbered tool paths, the cutting point is calculated as;

$$\frac{1}{2} (\sqrt{n+1} D + \sqrt{n-1} D)$$

Finally, the cutting tool is fed by "U (W)" to carry out the finishing cycle. The finishing cycle is not carried out if U (W) is not designated in the program.

$$D^2 < \{H^2 - (H - U(W))^2\}$$

In each thread cutting path, assume the thread cutting point d_1 (D) and metal removal volume S_1 for the first path, d_2 and S_2 for the second path, and d_n and S_n for the "n"th path, then cutting points d_2 to d_n ($n = \text{even number}$) for the even numbered paths are determined so that S_2 to S_n ($n = \text{even number}$) will be the most appropriate metal removal volume to provide high cutting accuracy while minimizing the number of paths. For the odd numbered paths, the cutting point is determined by

$$d_n = 1/2 (d_{n-1} + d_{n+1}) \quad (d = \text{odd number}).$$

This cycle is repeated until the cutting point of "H - U (W)" is reached. Finally, the cutting tool is fed by "U (W)" to carry out the finishing cycle. The finishing cycle is not carried out if U (W) is not designated in the program.

Infeed pattern 4

- When M32, M34 is designated

The following pattern is created regardless of the values of H, D, and U(W).

In each thread cutting path, assume the thread cutting point d_1 (D) and metal removal volume S_1 for the first path, d_2 and S_2 for the second path, and d_n and S_n for the "n"th path, then cutting points d_2 to d_n are determined so that S_2 to S_n will be the most appropriate metal removal volume to provide high cutting accuracy while minimizing the number of paths. This cycle is repeated until the cutting point of "H - U (W)" is reached. Finally, the cutting tool is fed by "U (W)" to carry out the finishing cycle. The finishing cycle is not carried out if U (W) is not designated in the program.

- When M33 is designated

In each thread cutting path, assume the thread cutting point d_1 (D) and metal removal volume S_1 for the first path, d_2 and S_2 for the second path, and d_n and d_n for the "n"th path, then cutting points d_2 to d_n (n = even number) for the even numbered paths are determined so that S_2 to S_n (n = even number) will be the most appropriate metal removal volume to provide high cutting accuracy while minimizing the number of paths. For the odd numbered paths, the cutting point is determined by $d_n = 1/2 (d_{n-1} + d_{n+1})$ (d = odd number).

This cycle is repeated until the cutting point of "H - U (W)" is reached. Finally, the cutting tool is fed by "U (W)" to carry out finishing cycle. The finishing cycle is not carried out if U (W) is not designated in the program.

[Supplement]

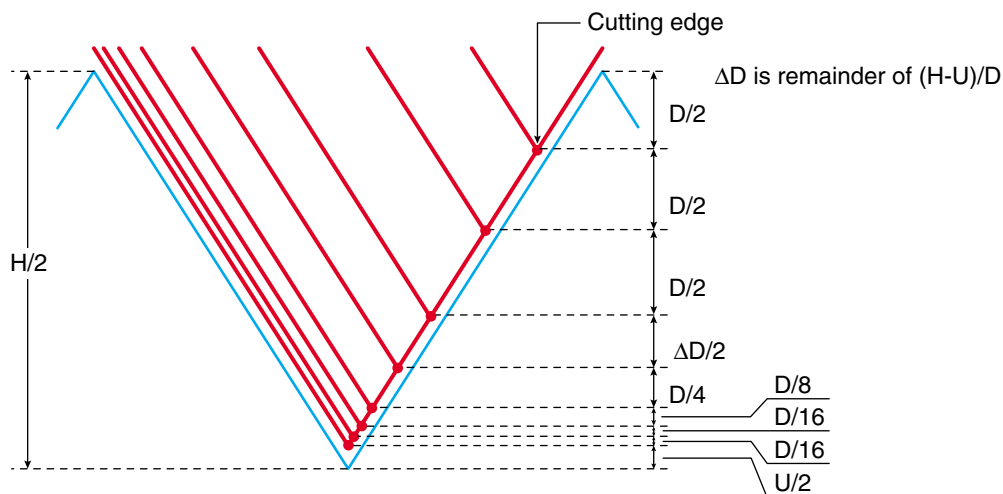
Since X commands are specified as diameter values, the actual infeed amount is "D/2".

When no infeed-pattern-designating M code is programmed, the control automatically selects M73.

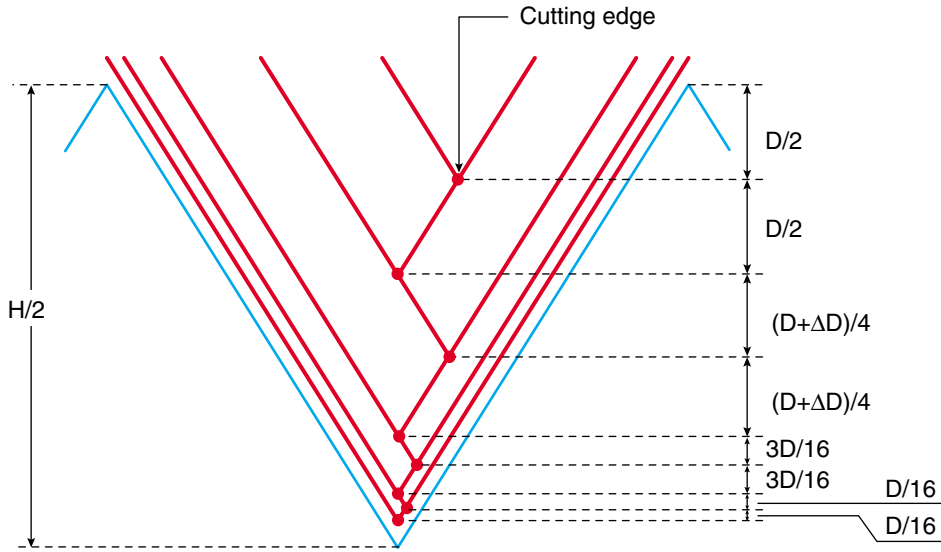
By combining the M codes designating cutting mode and infeed pattern, ten types of thread cutting cycle each are available for longitudinal thread cutting and transverse thread cutting.

5-4-3. Longitudinal Thread Cutting Cycles

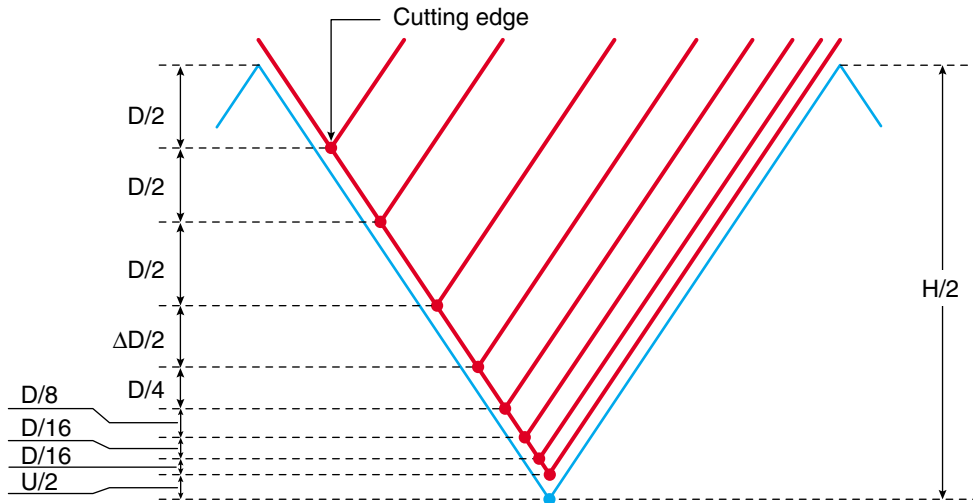
- M32 + M73 Mode



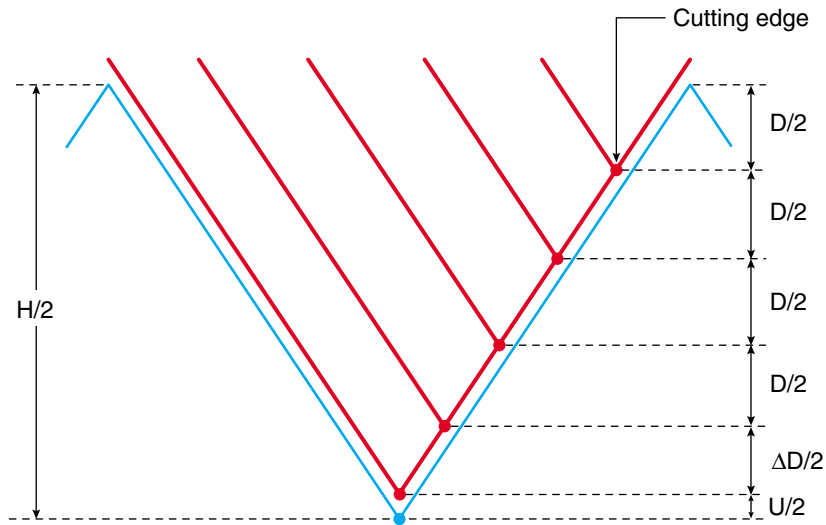
- M33 + M73 Mode



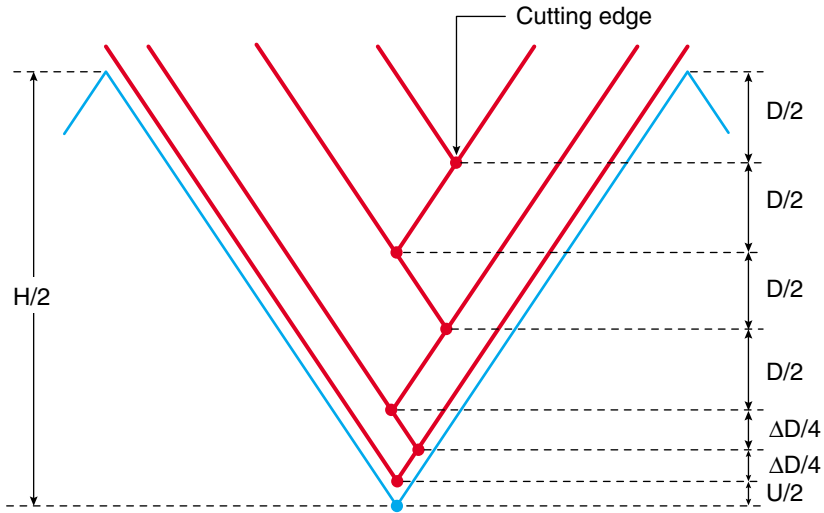
- M34 + M73 Mode



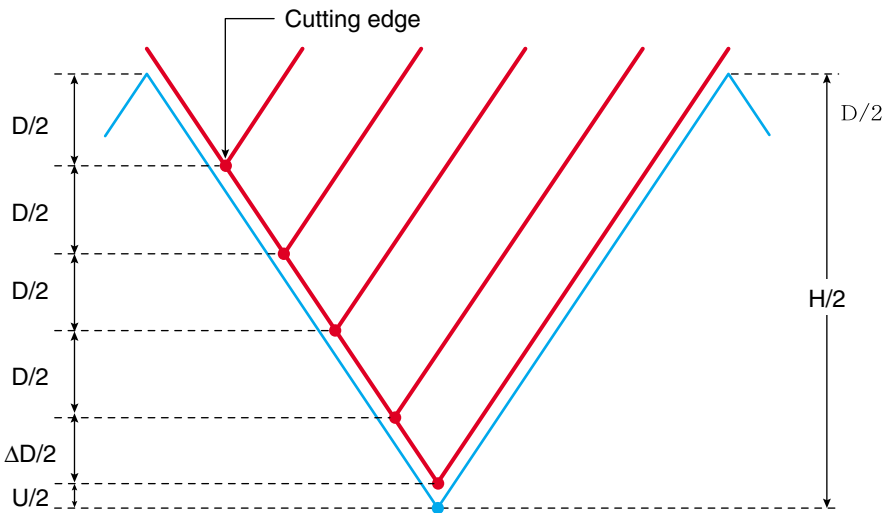
- M32 + M74 Mode



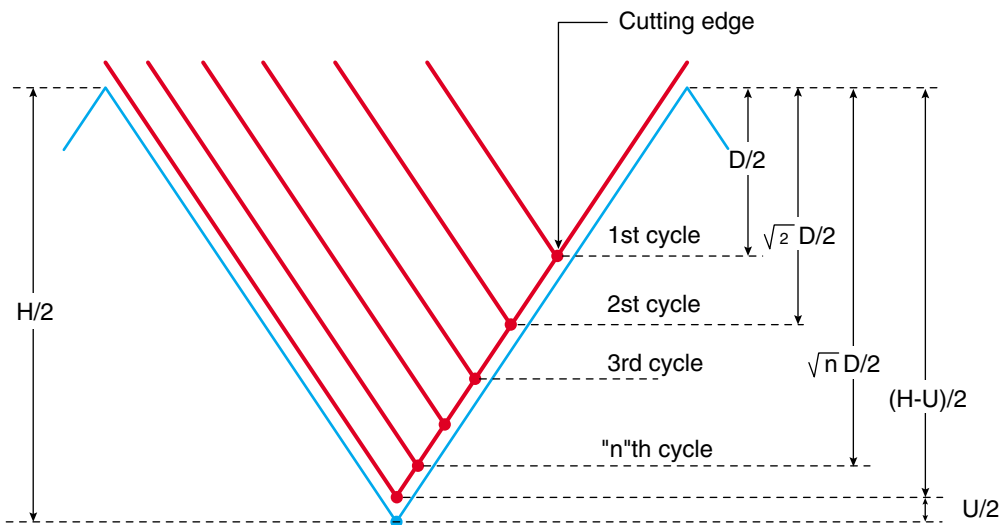
- M33 + M74 Mode



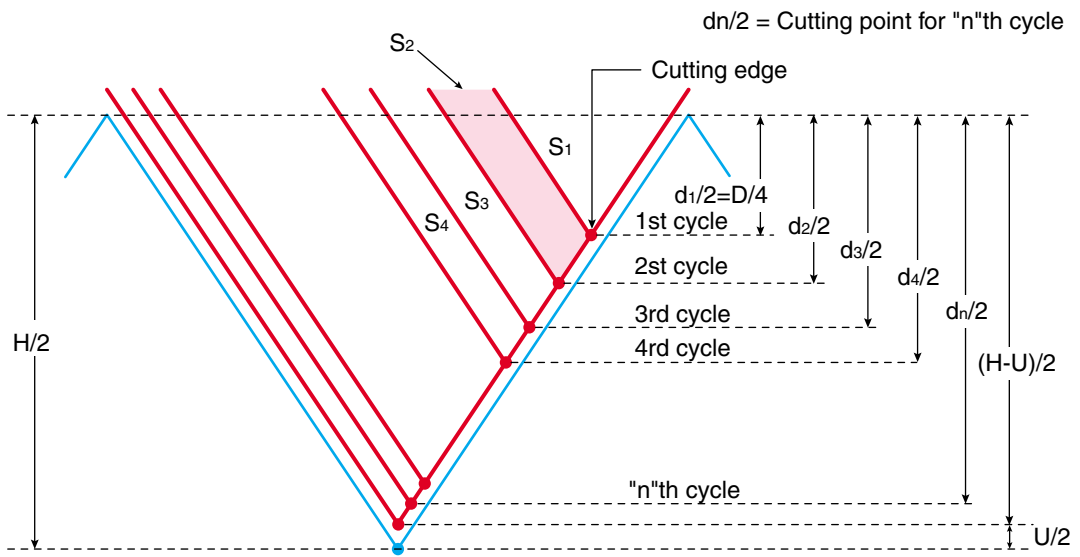
- M34 + M74 Mode



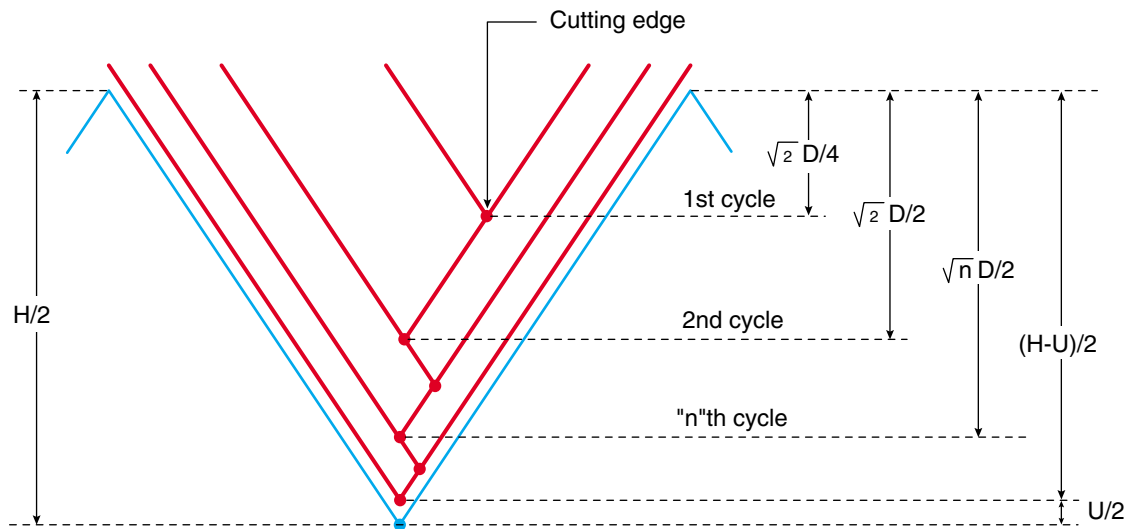
- M32 + M75 Mode (infeed pattern $3 D^2 \dot{S} \{H^2 - (H - U (W))^2\}$)



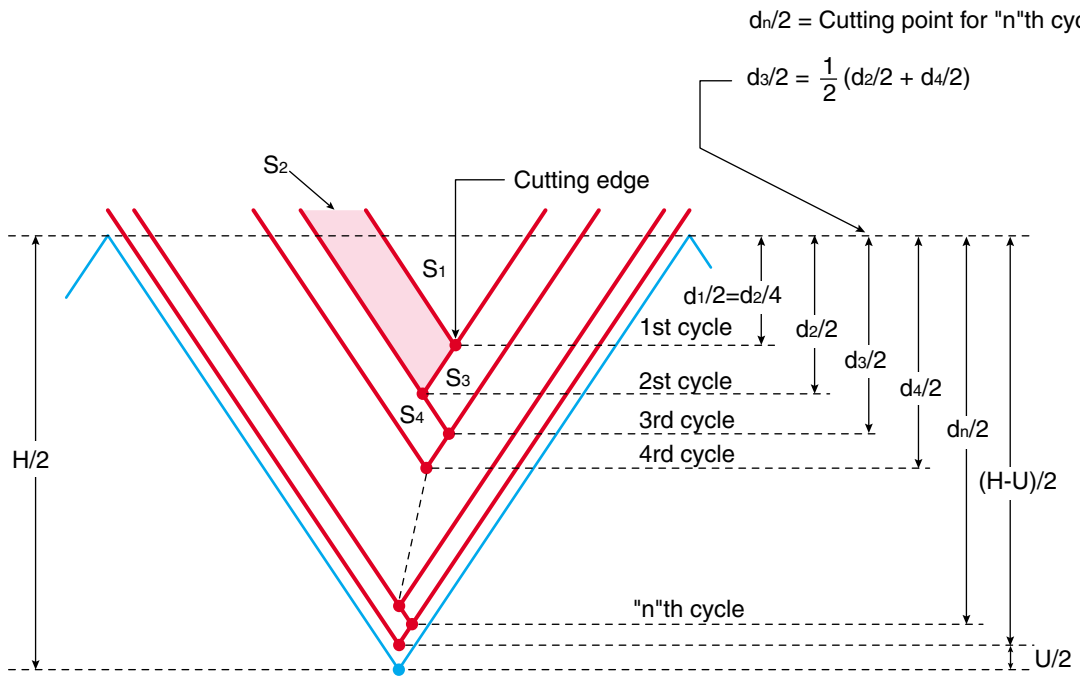
- M32 + M75 Mode (infeed pattern 3 $D^2 < \{H^2 - (H - U (W))^2\}$ or infeed pattern 4)



- M33 + M75 Mode (infeed pattern 3 $D^2 \leq \{H^2 - (H - U (W))^2\}$)

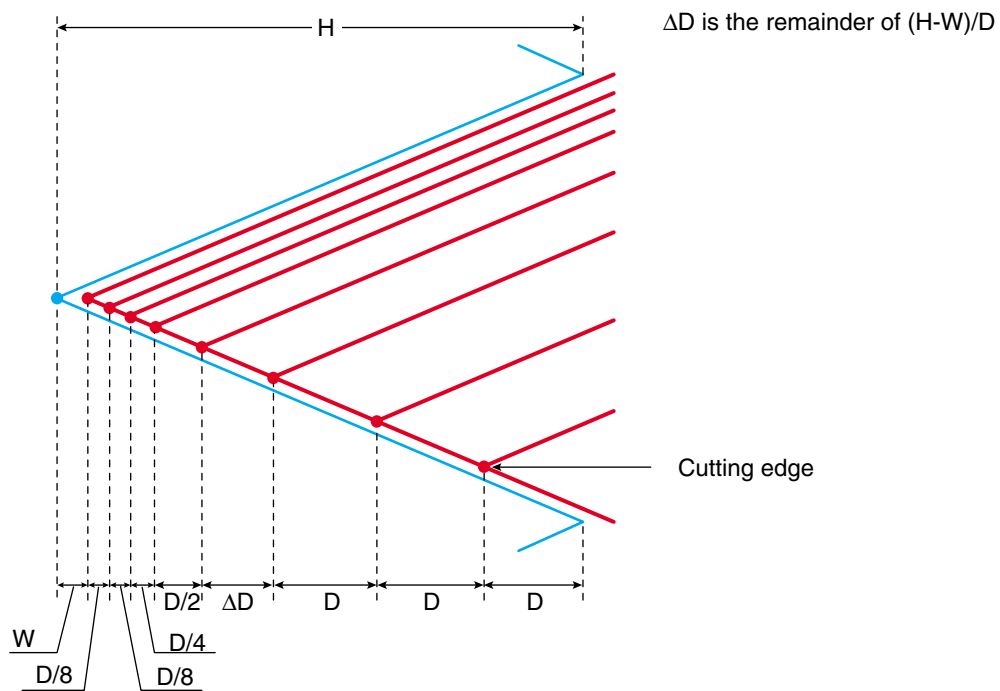


- M33 + M75 Mode (infeed pattern 3 $D^2 - \{H^2 - (H - U (W))^2\}$ or infeed pattern 4)

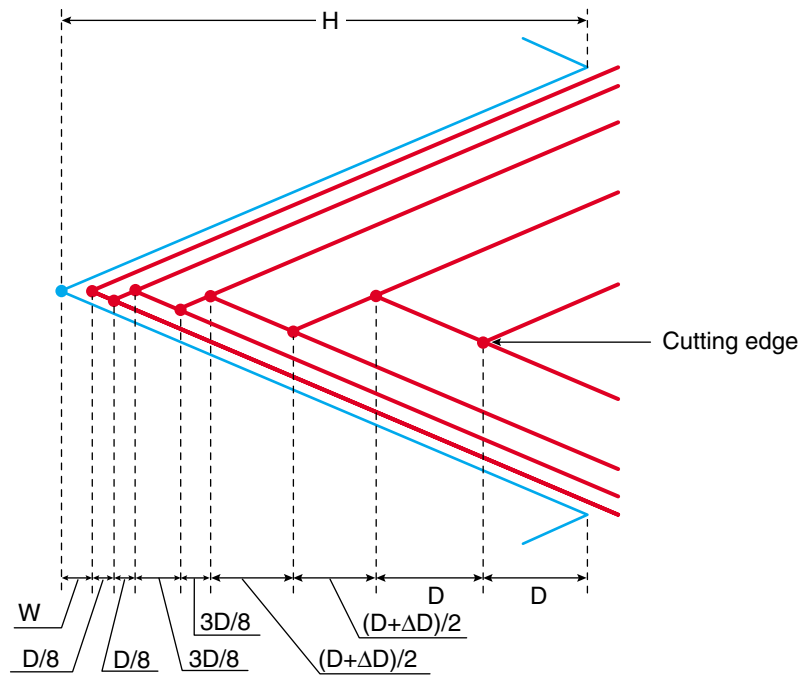


5-4-4. Transverse Thread Cutting Cycles

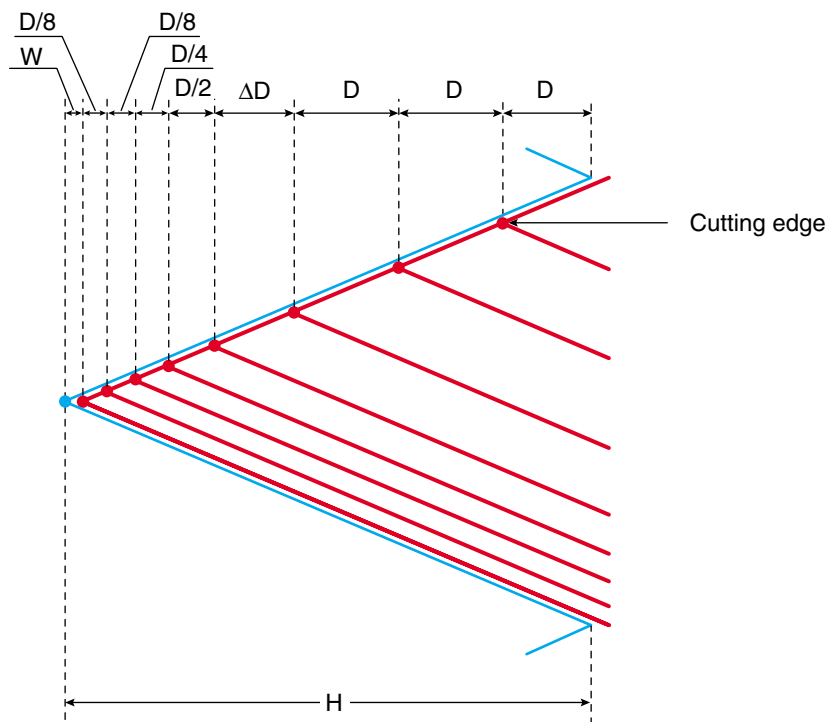
- M32 + M73 Mode



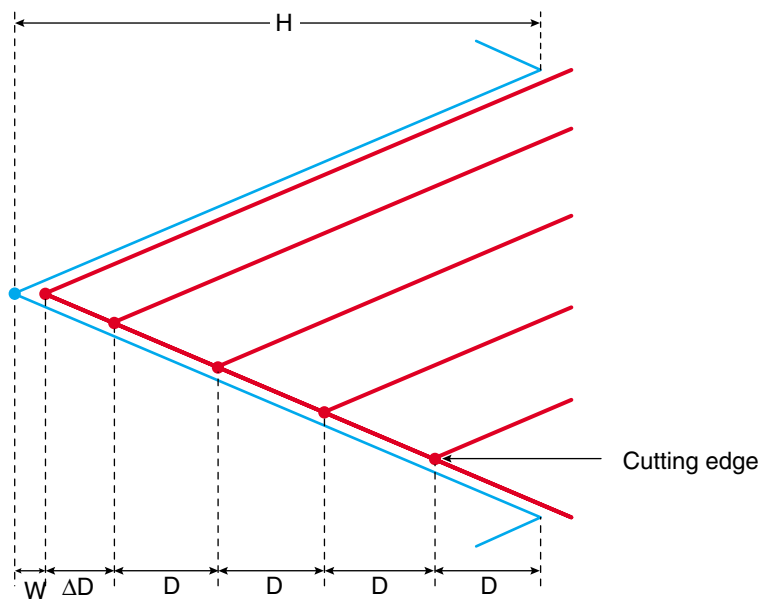
- M33 + M73 Mode



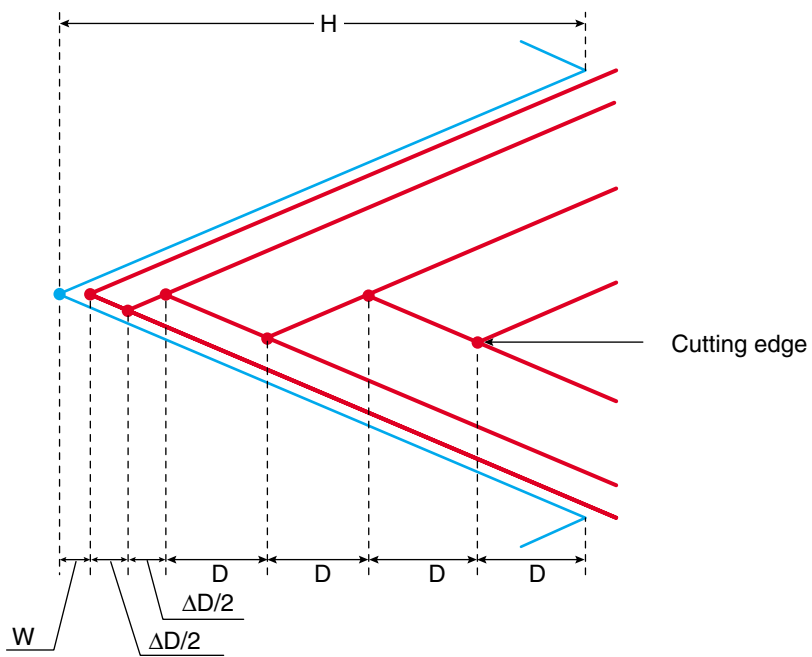
- M34 + M73 Mode



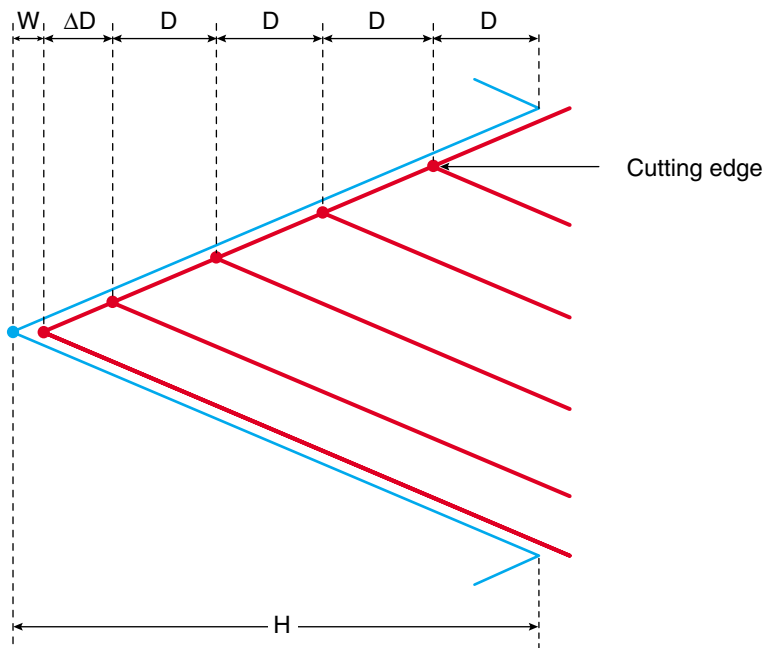
- M32 + M74 Mode



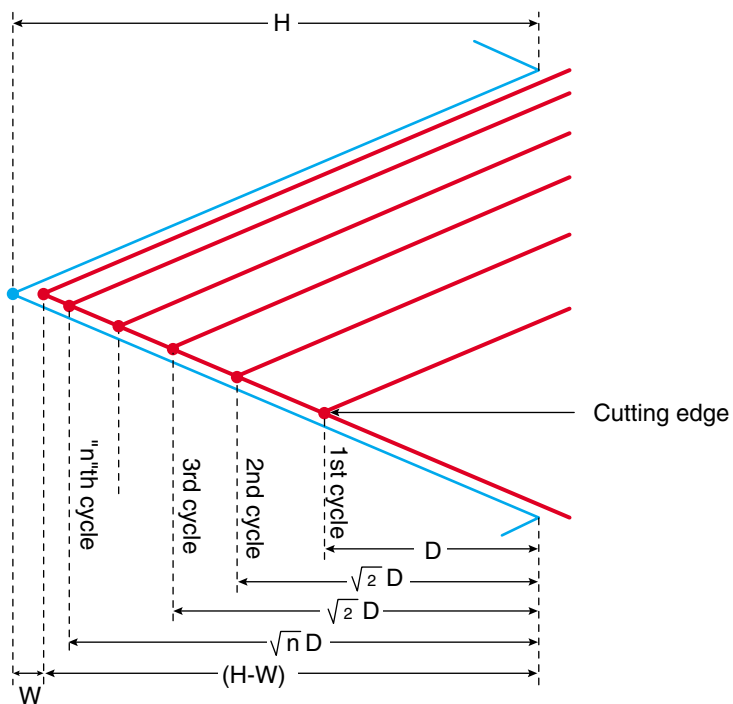
- M33 + M74 Mode



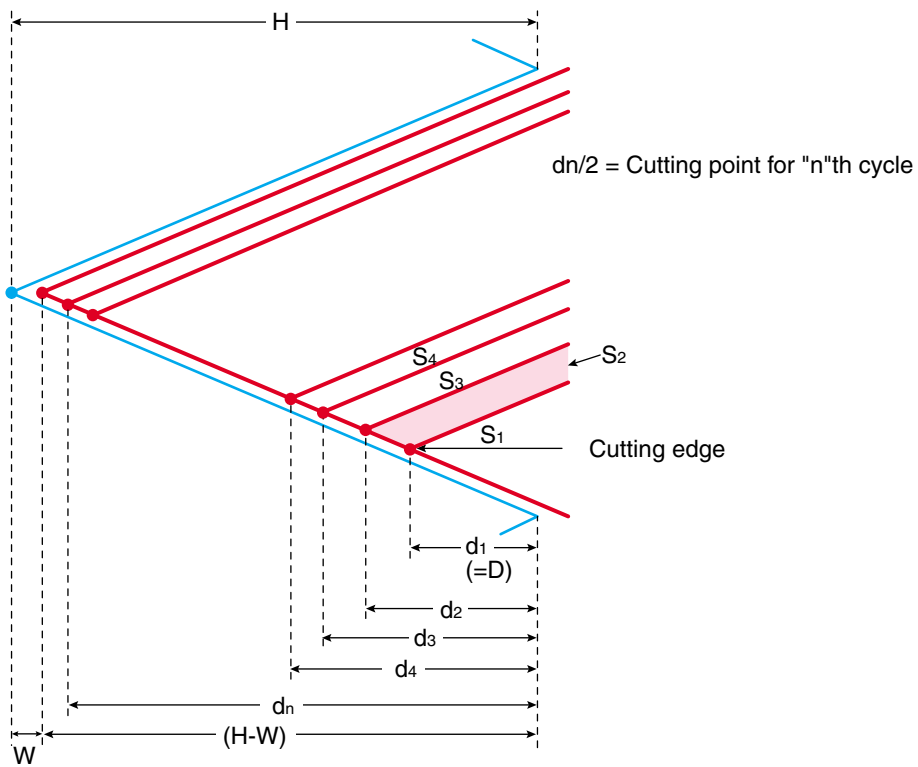
- M34 + M74 Mode



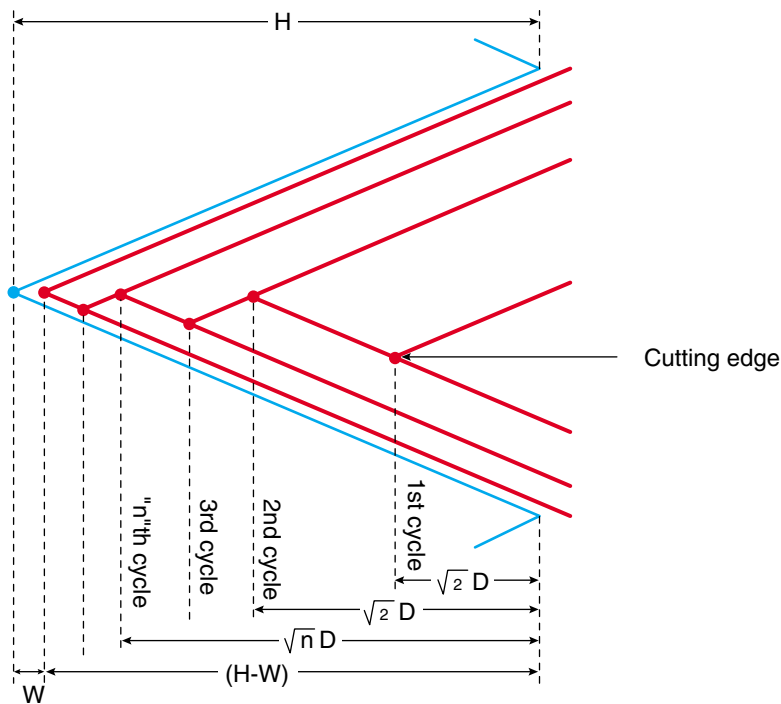
- M32 + M75 Mode (infeed pattern $3 D^2 \dot{S} \{H^2 - (H - U(W))^2\}$)



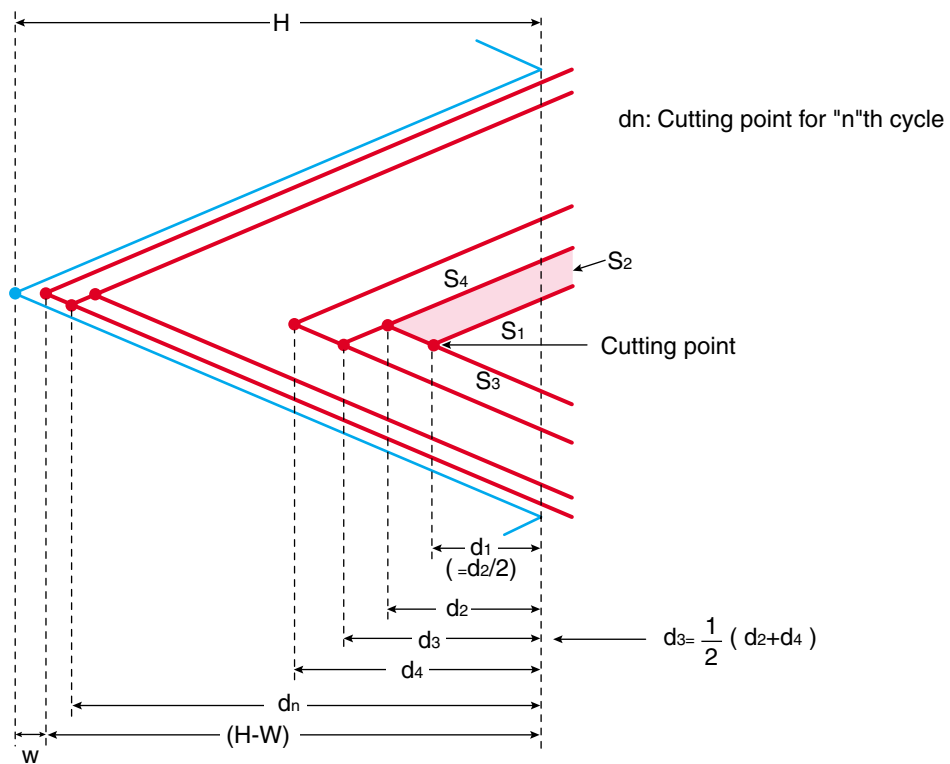
- M32 + M75 Mode (infeed pattern 3 $D^2 < \{H^2 - (H - U(W))^2\}$ or infeed pattern 4)



- M33 + M75 Mode (infeed pattern 3 $D^2 \leq \{H^2 - (H - U(W))^2\}$)



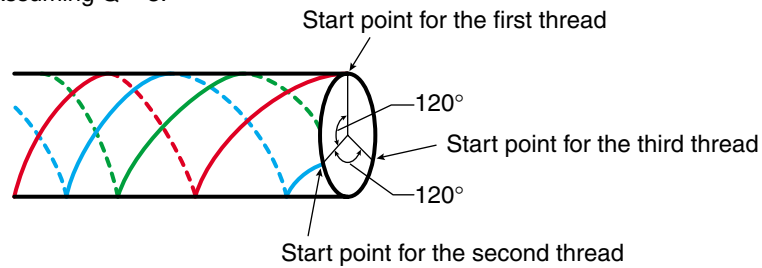
- M33 + M75 Mode (infeed pattern 3 $D2 < \{H2 - (H - U(W))2\}$ or infeed pattern 4)



5-5. Multi-thread Thread Cutting Function in Compound Fixed Thread Cutting Cycle

In the thread cutting cycle called by G32, G33, etc., a multi-thread thread cutting cycle is designated by designating the phase difference with a C command. In the compound fixed thread cutting cycle, multi-thread cutting can be designated by simply designating the number of threads with a Q command. The phase difference is automatically calculated.

Assuming $Q = 3$:



Example of Machining Loci

[Details]

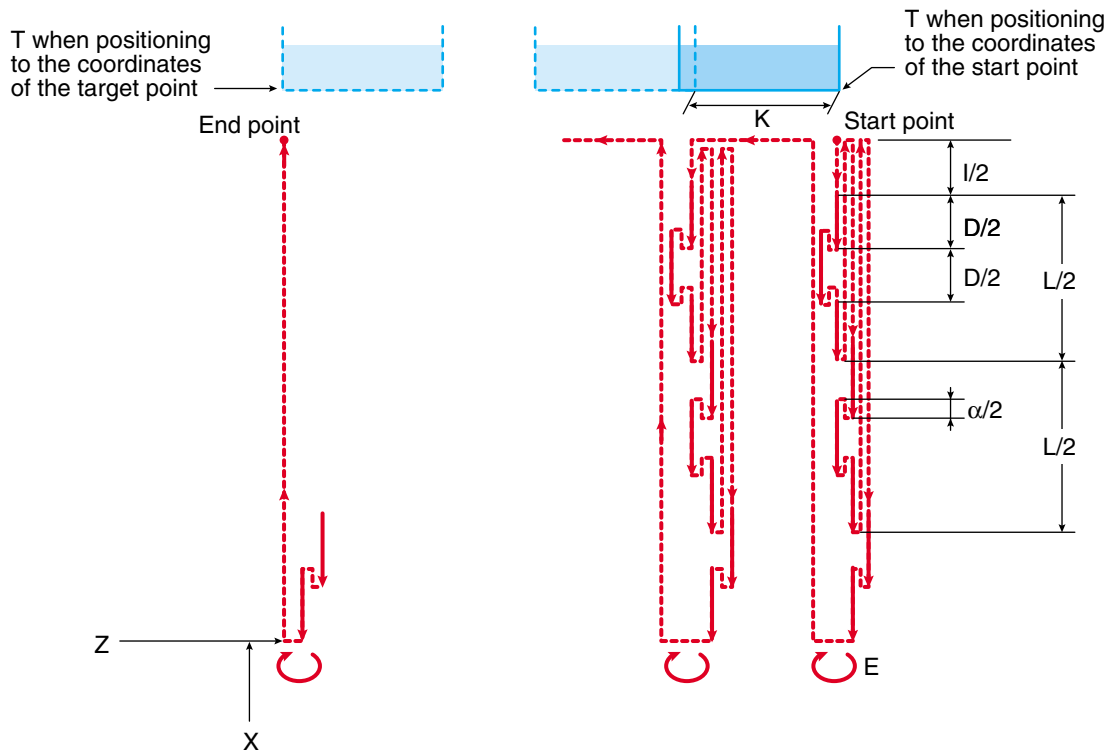
- Command range: 0 to 9999
- If the Q command is omitted, the control assumes $Q = 1$.
- In a multi-thread thread cutting cycle, cutting is carried out in the order of 1st, 2nd ... "n"th thread. Then, cutting is repeated in the order of 1st, 2nd ... "n"th thread with different infeed amounts.

6. Grooving/Drilling Compound Fixed Cycle

6-1. Longitudinal Grooving Fixed Cycle (G73)

[Function]

In the G73 mode, a grooving cycle is performed as shown below.



[Programming format]

G73 X__Z__I__K__D__L__F__E__T__

X : X coordinate of target point

Z : Z coordinate of target point

I : Shift amount in X-axis direction (as a diameter; if no I word is specified the control assumes I = 0)

K : Shift amount in Z-axis direction (if no K word is specified the control assumes K=0)

D : Depth of cut (infeed amount)

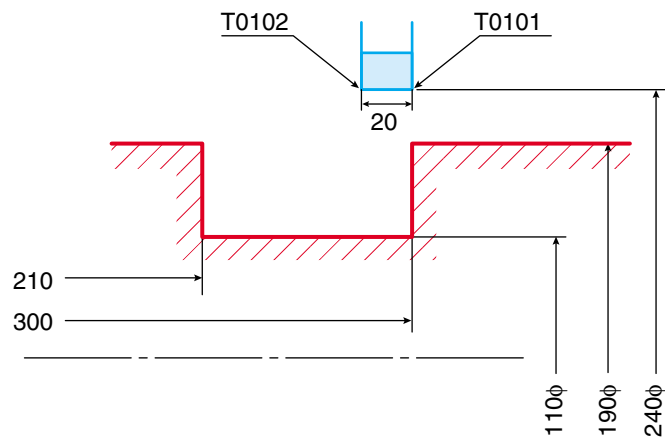
L : Total infeed amount for tool withdrawal motion (as a diameter; tool sequence is not performed when L word is not specified.)

DA : Retraction amount "a" is specified. When no DA word is specified, the amount set with the optional parameter (long word) No. 7 is used as the retraction amount. This applies both in the G94 and G95 modes.

E : Duration of dwell motion when target point on X-axis is reached (Command unit is the same as for an F word in the G04 mode.)
If no E word is specified, this sequence is not performed.

T : Tool offset number determining the tool offset amount when target point on the Z-axis is reached. (If no T word is specified, the tool offset number selected on positioning to the starting point of the grooving cycle is selected. The T command after this block is the one designated when positioning to the starting point is performed.)

6-2. Example Program for Longitudinal Grooving Compound Fixed Cycle (G73)



```

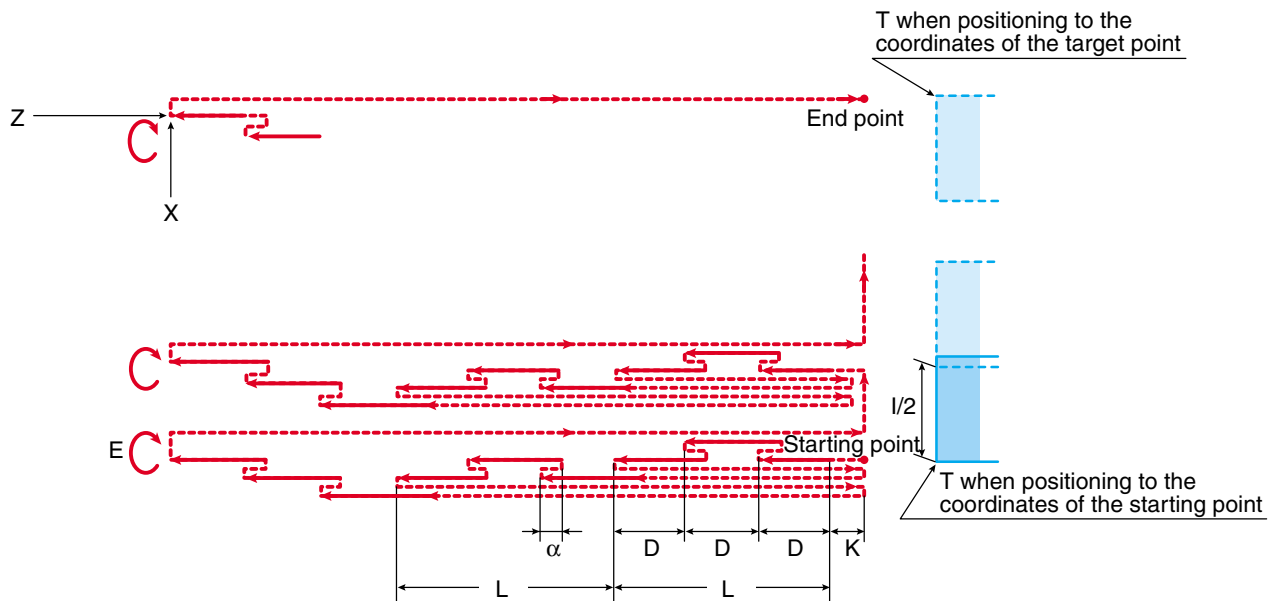
N0001 G00 X1000 Z1000 S300 T0101 M03 M42
N0002 X240 Z300
N0003 G73 X110 Z210 I45 K18 D20 E0.2 F0.3 T0102

```

* : (Z-axis tool offset amount of #2) - (Z-axis tool offset amount of #1) = 20

6-3. Transverse Grooving/Drilling Fixed Cycle (G74)

In the G74 mode, a grooving cycle is performed as shown below.



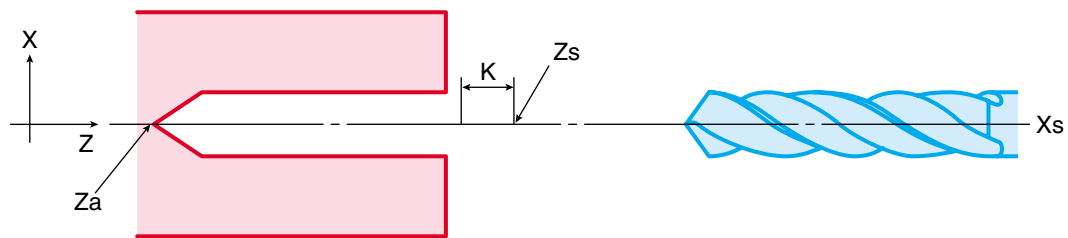
[Programming format]

G74 X_ Z_ I_ K_ D_ L_ F_ E_ T_

- X : X coordinate of target point
- Z : Z coordinate of target point
- I : Shift amount in X-axis direction
(as a diameter; if no I word is specified, the control assumes I = 0)
- K : Shift amount in Z-axis direction (if no K word is specified, the control assumes K = 0)
- D : Depth of cut (infeed amount)
- L : Total infeed amount for tool withdrawal motion
(The sequence is not performed when no L word is specified.)
- DA : Retraction amount "a" is specified. When no DA word is specified, the amount set at Pecking amount in grooving and drill cycle of optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 1) is used as the retraction amount. This applies both in the G94 and G95 modes.
- E : Duration of dwell when target point on Z-axis is reached
(Command unit is the same as an F word in G04 mode.)
If no E word is specified, this sequence is not performed.
- T : Tool offset number determining the tool offset amount when target point on X-axis is reached.
(If no T word is specified, the tool offset number selected on positioning to the starting point of the grooving cycle is selected. The T command after this block is the one designated when positioning to the starting point is performed.)

6-4. Example Program for Transverse Grooving/Drilling Fixed Cycle (G74)

Example: Drill cycle program



```

N0001 G00      S   T   M
N0002         Xs  Zs
N0003 G74     Xs  Za  K  D   L   E   F

```

NOTICE

A Z coordinate must always be specified in the G74 block.

6-5. Axis Movements in Grooving/Drilling Compound Fixed Cycle

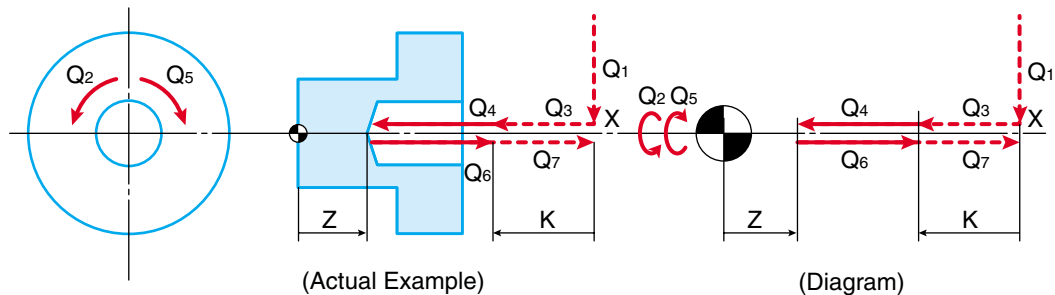
- 1) The axis moves the amount specified by "I (K)" at a rapid traverse rate along the X (or Z) axis from the cycle starting point.
- 2) After the axis has been infeed by the amount "D", it retracts by the amount "DA" at a rapid traverse rate. This peck-feeding cycle is repeated until the programmed target point in the infeed axis direction is reached.
- 3) When an L word is specified in the program, the infeed axis returns to the cycle start point each time total infeed amount in the repeated peck feeding cycles reaches "L".
- 4) When the target point in the infeed axis direction is reached, dwell motion is activated for the duration commanded in an E word. If no E word is specified, dwell motion is not performed. After that, the axis returns to the cycle starting point level, and then a shift is executed in another axis direction by the commanded amount "K" or "I" at a rapid traverse rate.
- 5) This completes one grooving cycle. The steps (1) through (4) are repeated to machine the desired groove.
- 6) When the offset tool position (offset number specified in the same block) reaches or goes beyond the target point in the X or Z axis direction during repetition of a grooving cycle with shift, the target point of the shift operation is taken as the final target point of the cycle; the final grooving cycle is performed at that position. When the axis reaches the target depth in the final grooving cycle, the axes return to the starting point of the compound fixed cycle.

7. Tapping Compound Fixed Cycle

7-1. Right-hand Tapping Cycle (G77)

[Function]

The compound cycle called out by G77 executes a tapping cycle like the one illustrated below.



[Programming format]

G77 X__ Z__ K__ F__

- G77 : G code to call out tapping compound fixed cycle.
Specify this G code immediately after a sequence number (name).
- X : X coordinate of tapping cycle start point (target point)
- Z : Z coordinate of tapping cycle end point (target point)
- K : Rapid axis feedrate for axis feed from the cycle start point to the cutting start point
- F : Feedrate

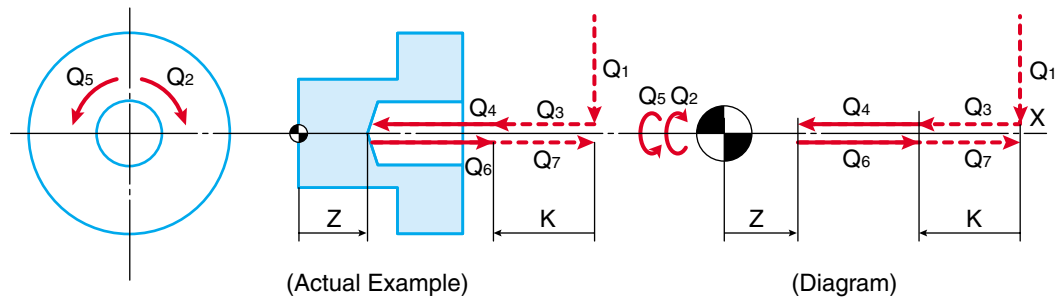
Axis movements:

- Q1 : The X-axis is positioned at the specified positioning target point (cycle start point) at a rapid feedrate. In this positioning cycle, no Z-axis movement occurs and thus the turret must be positioned at a point where it will not interfere with the workpiece during this positioning before calling out the G77 cycle.
- Q2 : The spindle rotates clockwise at the speed applying before the G77 cycle is called. Therefore, the required spindle speed must be specified before calling the G77 cycle.
If this compound fixed cycle is called without designating a spindle speed, axis infeed does not occur since the spindle does not rotate and thus the cycle is halted.
- Q3 : The Z-axis is positioned at a position designated by a K word at a rapid feedrate.
- Q4 : Tapping is performed from the point reached in Q3 to the depth specified by a Z word at a specified feedrate (F).
- Q5 : The spindle stops once and then starts in the reverse direction at the same speed as used in infedding.
- Q6 : The Z-axis retracts to a point reached in the Q4 cycle at a cutting feedrate.
- Q7 : The Z-axis retracts to a point reached in the Q3 cycle at a rapid feedrate.

7-2. Left-hand Tapping Cycle (G78)

[Function]

The compound cycle called out by G78 executes a tapping cycle like the one illustrated below.



[Programming format]

G78 X__ Z__ K__ F__

- G78 : G code to call out tapping compound fixed cycle.
Specify this G code immediately after a sequence number (name).
- X : X coordinate of tapping cycle start point (target point)
- Z : Z coordinate of tapping cycle end point (target point)
- K : Rapid axis feedrate for axis feed from the cycle start point to the cutting start point
- F : Feedrate

Axis movements:

- Q1 : The X-axis is positioned at the specified positioning target point (cycle start point) at a rapid feedrate. In this positioning cycle, no Z-axis movement occurs and thus the turret must be positioned at a point where it will not interfere with the workpiece during this positioning before calling out the G78 cycle.
- Q2 : The spindle rotates counterclockwise at the speed applying before the G77 cycle is called. Therefore, the required spindle speed must be specified before calling the G78 cycle. If this compound fixed cycle is called without designating a spindle speed, axis infeed does not occur since the spindle does not rotate and thus the cycle is halted.
- Q3 : The Z-axis is positioned at a position designated by a K word at a rapid feedrate.
- Q4 : Tapping is performed from the point reached in Q3 to the depth specified by a Z word at a specified feedrate (F).
- Q5 : The spindle stops once and then starts in the forward direction at the same speed as used in infeeding.
- Q6 : The Z-axis retracts to a point reached in the Q4 cycle at a cutting feedrate.
- Q7 : The Z-axis retracts to a point reached in the Q3 cycle at a rapid feedrate.

[Supplement]

- While the tapping compound cycle is being executed, the feedrate override is fixed at 100%.
- Even when the SLIDE HOLD button is pressed during the execution of the tapping compound fixed cycle, the slide hold function is ignored. The single block function is also ignored even when the SINGLE BLOCK switch has been turned on.
- After the execution of the tapping compound cycle (G77, G78), the spindle stops and the stop state remains in effect. When cutting is to be conducted continuously, specify the spindle start command before progressing to the subsequent operation.

8. Compound Fixed Cycles

8-1. List of Compound Fixed Cycle Commands

| Code | Cycle Name | Programming Format | Remarks |
|------|---|---|--|
| G181 | Drilling Cycle (With repeat function) | G181, X, Z, C, R, I(K), F, Q, E | Used for drilling operation. |
| G182 | Boring Cycle (With repeat function) | G182, X, Z, C, R, I(K), F, Q, E | Used for boring operation carried out with a boring bar or a similar tool. |
| G183 | Deep Hole Drilling Cycle (With repeat function) | G183, X, Z, C, R, I(K), F, Q, D, E, L | Permits cutting chips to be broken while drilling a deep hole. |
| G184 | Tapping Cycle (With repeat function) | G184, X, Z, C, R, I(K), F, Q, E | Used for tapping operation. |
| G185 | Thread Cutting Cycle (Longitudinal) (Without repeat function) | G185, X, Z, C, I, K, F, SA= | Used for longitudinal thread cutting operation. |
| G186 | Thread Cutting Cycle (Transverse) (Without repeat function) | G186, X, Z, C, I, K, F, SA= | Used for transverse thread cutting operation on end face. |
| G187 | Straight Thread Cutting Cycle (Longitudinal) (Without repeat function) | G187, X, Z, C, I, K, F, SA= | Used for continuous longitudinal thread cutting operation. |
| G188 | Straight Thread Cutting Cycle (Transverse) (Without repeat function) | G188, X, Z, C, I, K, F, SA= | Used for continuous transverse thread cutting operation on end face. |
| G189 | Reaming/Boring Cycle (With repeat function) | G189, X, Z, C, R, I(K), F, Q, E | Used for reaming operation. |
| G190 | Key Way Cutting Cycle (With repeat function) | G190, X, Z, C, I(K), D, U(W), E, F, Q, M211 (M212), M213 (M214) | Used for key way cutting. |
| G178 | Synchronized tapping-forward (With repeat function) | G178, X, Z, C, R, I(K), F, D, J, Q, M141, M136 | Used for tapping using the rigid taper |
| G179 | Synchronized tapping-reverse (With repeat function) | G179, X, Z, C, R, I(K), F, D, J, Q, M141, M136 | Used for tapping using the rigid taper |
| G180 | Cancel of Fixed Cycle | G180 | Used to cancel a fixed cycle mode presently selected. G180 must be programmed in a block without other commands. |

NOTICE

- 1) In the G185, G186, G187, and G188 fixed cycle modes, feedrates can be programmed only in the G95 (mm/rev) mode. In this case, an F command indicates the feed per C-axis revolution.
- 2) In the modes G181 through G184, G189, and G190, feedrates can be programmed only in the G94 (mm/min) mode. Feedrate commands in units of mm/rev are not accepted.
- 3) In G181 through G184, G189, and G190 modes, the control judges the cutting direction on the basis of the programmed I and K words: I for cutting in the X-axis direction and K for cutting in the Z-axis direction.
- 4) The "SA =" command is effective only in modes G185 through G188.

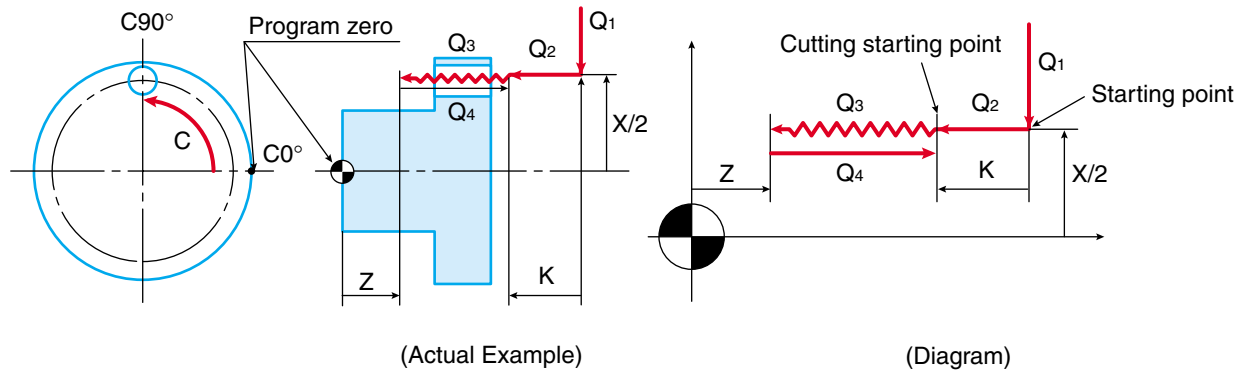
8-2. Basic Axis Motions

This section describes the basic axis motions in each cycle. For details on address characters and M codes, refer to sections 10-3 and 10-4 respectively.

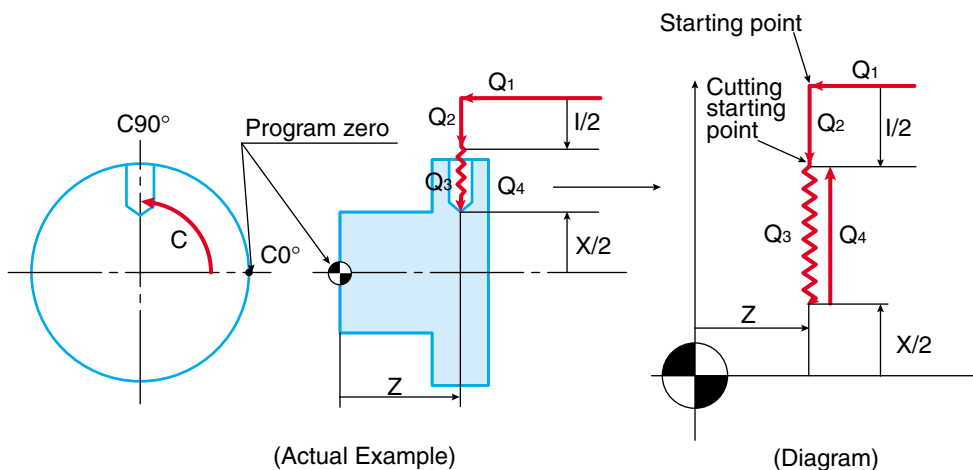
(1) G181, G182, G183, G184, G178, G179 and G189 modes

In these modes, the following cycle is carried out in a single block of commands.

1) Face Machining (With K command)



2) Side Machining (With I command)



| | Face Machining (With K command) | Side Machining (With I command) |
|----------------|--|--|
| Q ₁ | Positioning of X- and C-axis at the rapid feedrate | Positioning of Z- and C-axis at the rapid feedrate |
| Q ₂ | Positioning of Z-axis at the point "Q ₁ - K" at the rapid feedrate | Positioning of X-axis at the point "Q ₁ - I" at the rapid feedrate |
| Q ₃ | Cutting along Z-axis from point Q ₂ to the commanded point Z | Cutting along X-axis from point Q ₂ to the commanded point X |
| Q ₄ | Z-axis returns to the point where cutting started (Q ₃) at either a specified feedrate or the rapid feedrate depending on the called fixed cycle mode. | X-axis returns to the point where cutting started (Q ₃) at either a specified feedrate or the rapid feedrate depending on the called fixed cycle mode. |

Axis movement sub cycles Q₃ and Q₄ are repeated each time a C command is given or according to the commanded Q word.

NOTICE

- 1) For K or I commands, only positive values are allowed. If a negative value is specified, an alarm occurs.
- 2) The axis feed direction is determined automatically. The axis is then fed by amount K or I.
- 3) In the Q₃ cycle, the end point of cutting may be specified by an R command.

- Return point designation for the fixed cycle

In the Q₄ cycle, the axis is returned to the cutting start point after the completion of cutting. However, this return point may be changed to the cycle start point by changing the setting at Multi cycle return point of optional parameter (MULTIPLE MACHINING) or the M code specified in a part program.

M code M136 : Designation of shape in compound fixed cycle

By specifying this M code, it is possible to return the axis to the start point (rapid feed start point) after the completion of a Q₄ cycle, as in the case when "1" is set for the optional parameter.

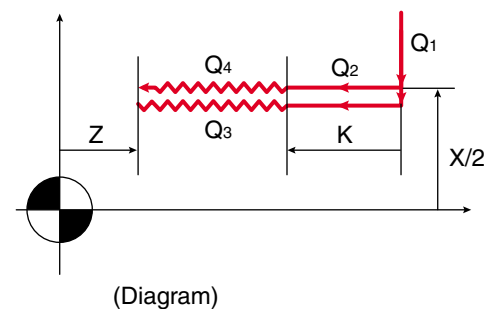
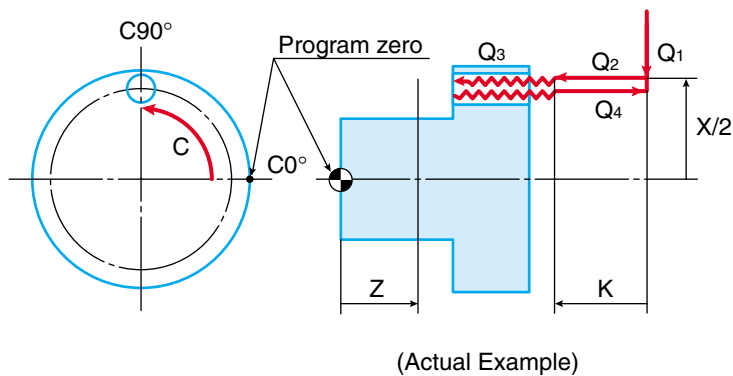
This M code is cleared by the reset operation and it is effective only in the specified block.

An M code is given priority over the optional parameter setting.

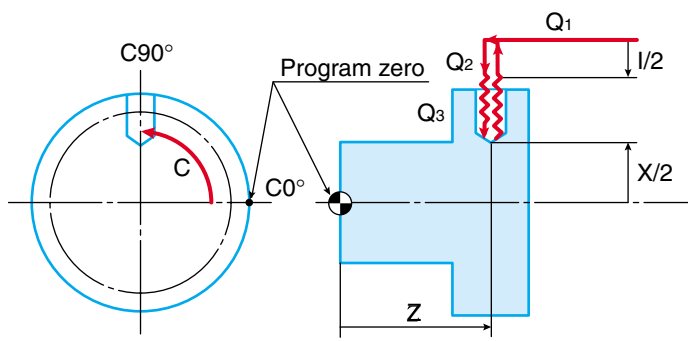
When no M code is designated, the optional parameter setting becomes effective.

- The basic axis motions of the tapping cycle (G184), synchronized tapping cycle (G178/G179), and milling/boring cycle (G189) are shown below when the setting for the optional parameter indicated above is "1" or if an M136 command exists in the program.

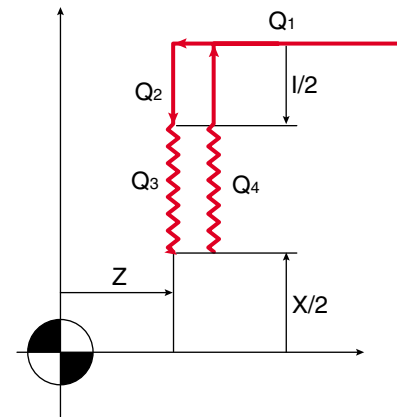
- (1) Face Machining (With K command)



(2) Side Machining (With I command)



(Actual Example)



(Diagram)

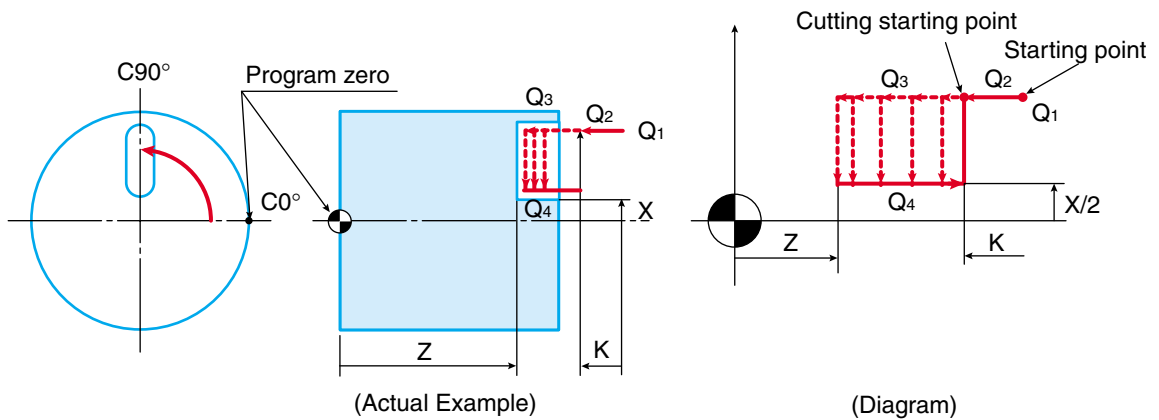
| | Face Machining (With K command) | Side Machining (With I command) |
|----------------|--|--|
| Q ₁ | Positioning of X- and C-axis at the rapid feedrate | Positioning of Z- and C-axis at the rapid feedrate |
| Q ₂ | Positioning of Z-axis at the point "Q ₁ - K" at the rapid feedrate | Positioning of X-axis at the point "Q ₁ - I" at the rapid feedrate |
| Q ₃ | Cutting along Z-axis from point Q ₂ to the commanded point Z | Cutting along X-axis from point Q ₂ to the commanded point X |
| Q ₄ | X-axis returns to Q ₃ where cutting started at a cutting feedrate and then to Q ₂ at the rapid feedrate. | X-axis returns to Q ₃ where cutting started at a cutting feedrate and then to Q ₂ at the rapid feedrate. |

- C-axis clamp effective/ineffective command
When the workpiece is cut using a small-diameter drill in the compound fixed cycle, or when the material to be cut is soft, the C-axis does not need to be clamped during cutting.
When M141 (C-axis clamp ineffective) is designated, C-axis clamp motion is eliminated, resulting in a reduced cycle time.
M169 is only effective within one block.
- Ignoring the M-tool constant speed rotation answer for M140 (tapping cycle)
In the tapping cycle, cutting feed starts after receiving the M-tool constant speed rotation answer. Because of this, a time lag occurs between the start of tool rotation and the start of cutting feed. Normally, the time lag is adjusted by a mechanism in the tapping unit. If the time lag cannot be adjusted, designate M140 (ignoring the M-tool constant speed rotation answer). The M-tool constant speed rotation answer is ignored.

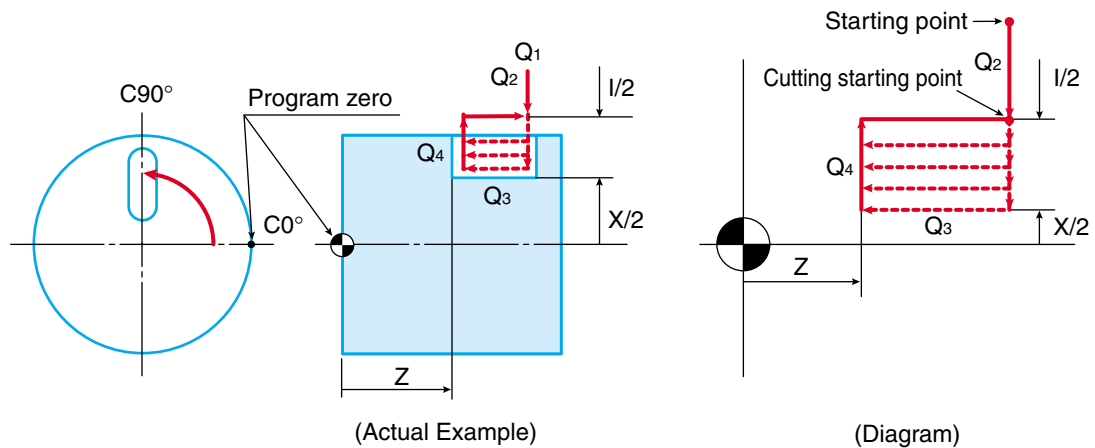
(2) G190 mode

In this mode, the following cycle is carried out in a single block of commands.

3) Face Machining (With K command)



4) Side Machining (With I command)



| | Face Machining (With K command) | Side Machining (With I command) |
|----------------|--|--|
| Q ₁ | Positioning of C-axis at the rapid feedrate | Positioning of C-axis at the rapid feedrate |
| Q ₂ | Positioning of Z-axis at the point "Q ₁ - K" at the rapid feedrate | Positioning of X-axis at the point "Q ₁ - I" at the rapid feedrate |
| Q ₃ | Cutting along Z-axis from point Q ₂ to the commanded point Z | Cutting along X-axis from point Q ₂ to the commanded point X |
| Q ₄ | Z-axis returns to the Q ₃ cycle start point at the rapid feedrate. The cycle is repeated until Z-axis reaches the programmed Z level. | X-axis returns to the Q ₃ cycle start point at the rapid feedrate. The cycle is repeated until X-axis reaches the programmed X level. |

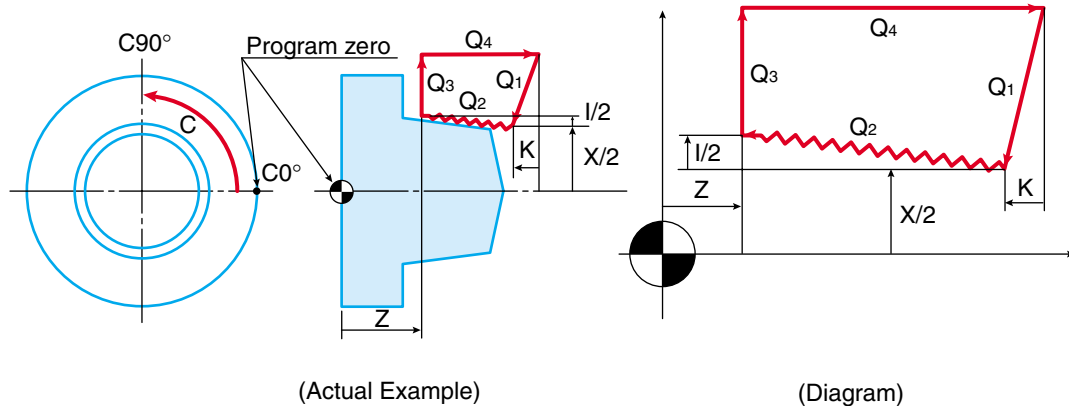
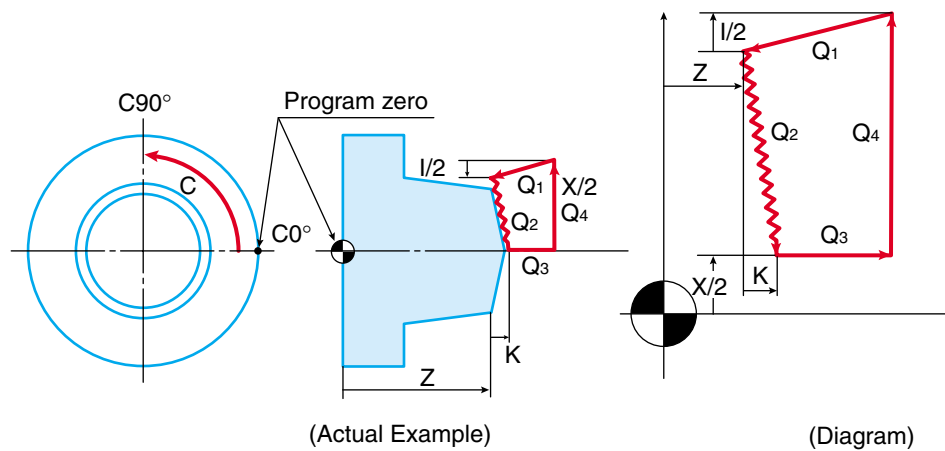
Axis movement sub cycles Q₃ and Q₄ are repeated each time a C command is given or according to the commanded Q word.

NOTICE

- 1) For K or I commands, only positive values are allowed. If a negative value is specified, an alarm occurs.
- 2) The axis feed direction is determined automatically. The axis is then fed by amount K or I.

(3) G185, G186, G187, and G188 modes

In these modes, the following cycle is carried out in a single block of commands.

5) Longitudinal Thread Cutting (G185 and G187)**6) Transverse Thread Cutting (G186 and G188)**

| | Longitudinal Thread Cutting (G185 and G187) | Transverse Thread Cutting (G186 and G188) |
|----------------|---|---|
| Q ₁ | Positioning of X-, Z- ($Z \pm K$) and C-axis at the rapid feedrate | Positioning of X- ($X \pm I$), Z- and C-axis at the rapid feedrate |
| Q ₂ | Cutting along X- ($X \pm I$), Z- and C-axis | Cutting along X-, Z- ($Z \pm K$) and C-axis |
| Q ₃ | Positioning of X-axis at the starting point of sub cycle Q ₁ at the rapid feedrate | Positioning of Z-axis to the starting point of sub cycle Q ₁ at the rapid feedrate |
| Q ₄ | Positioning of Z-axis at the starting point of sub cycle Q ₁ at the rapid feedrate | Positioning of X-axis to the starting point of sub cycle Q ₁ at the rapid feedrate |

In G187 or G188 mode operation, only sub cycles Q₁ and Q₂ are carried out.

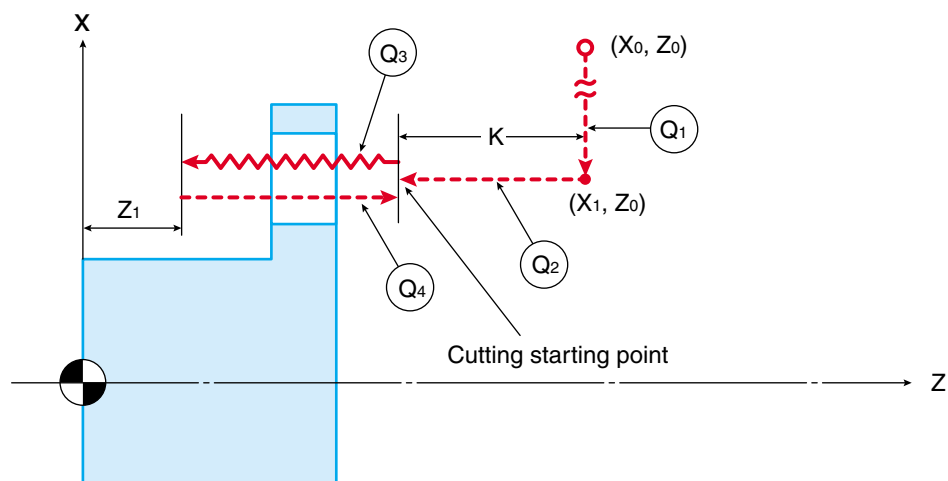
8-3. Address Characters

- X : For cutting on an end face and longitudinal thread cutting, "X" indicates the X-coordinate of the cycle starting point.
For cutting on an OD and transverse thread cutting as well as key way cutting, "X" indicates the X-coordinate of the end point of the cycle.
- Z : For cutting on an end face and longitudinal thread cutting as well as key way cutting, "Z" indicates the Z-coordinate of the end point of the cycle.
For cutting on an OD and transverse thread cutting, "Z" indicates the Z-coordinate of the starting point of the cycle.
- C : C-axis indexing angle
- I : Shift amount in the G00 mode for cutting on an OD, cutting starting point in transverse thread cutting cycle, end point of taper thread in longitudinal thread cutting cycle
- J : Number of threads
- K : Shift amount in the G00 mode for cutting on an end face, cutting starting point in longitudinal thread cutting cycle, end point of taper thread cutting in transverse thread cutting cycle
- F : Cutting feedrate
- D : Depth of cut per peck feed in deep-hole drilling and key way cutting
Start position of tapping with M-tool spindle in synchronized tapping.
- E : Duration of dwell motion at the end point in drilling, boring and tapping cycle (omissible)
Infeed amount in key way cutting
- L : Axis relieving amount in deep-hole drilling cycle
- U : Finish allowance in side key way cutting
- W : Finish allowance in face key way cutting
- SA = : Programmable only in multiple-fixed cycle of G185 through G188 (thread cutting cycles). C-axis rotation speed command.
This SA= command is programmed to obtain the axis movement amount of the C-axis in G185 through G188 thread cutting cycles.
- R : Infeed amount for drilling cycleSpecify the distance from the cutting starting point. The sign of the R command indicates the direction of cutting.
An R command in the X-axis direction should be given as a diametral value.
- Q : The number of holes (equally spaced) to be machined using the multiple-fixed cycle repeat function

8-4. M Codes

- For designating key way cutting direction
M211: One-directional cutting
M212: Zigzag cutting
- For designating key way cutting method
M213: Designated infeed
M214: Equal infeed

8-5. Drilling Cycle (G181)



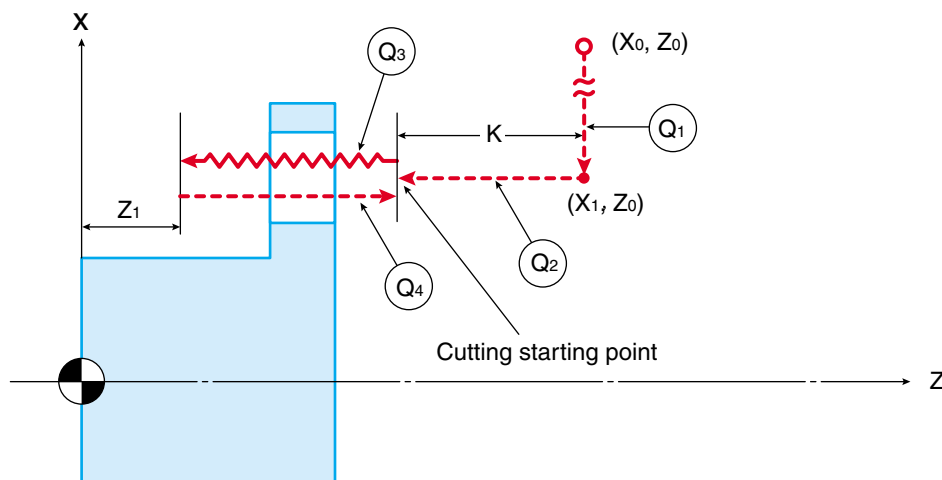
[Program format]

| | | | | | | | |
|------|------|----------------|----------------|---|-----|---|--|
| N100 | G0 | X ₀ | Z ₀ | | | | |
| N101 | G94 | | | | SB= | | |
| N102 | G181 | X ₁ | Z ₁ | C | K | F | |
| N103 | G180 | | | | | | |

Cycle operation

- Q₁ : The axes are positioned in the G00 mode at the point specified by (X₁, Z₀), and the C command value. After the completion of positioning, the M-tool spindle starts rotating in the forward direction.
- Q₂ : The Z-axis is positioned at a point "-K" from Z₀. After the completion of positioning, the C-axis is clamped.
- Q₃ : Cutting is performed up to Z₁ in the G01 mode.
- Q₄ : The axes are positioned at the cutting starting point in the G00 mode. After the completion of positioning, the C-axis is unclamped.

8-6. Boring Cycle (G182)



[Program format]

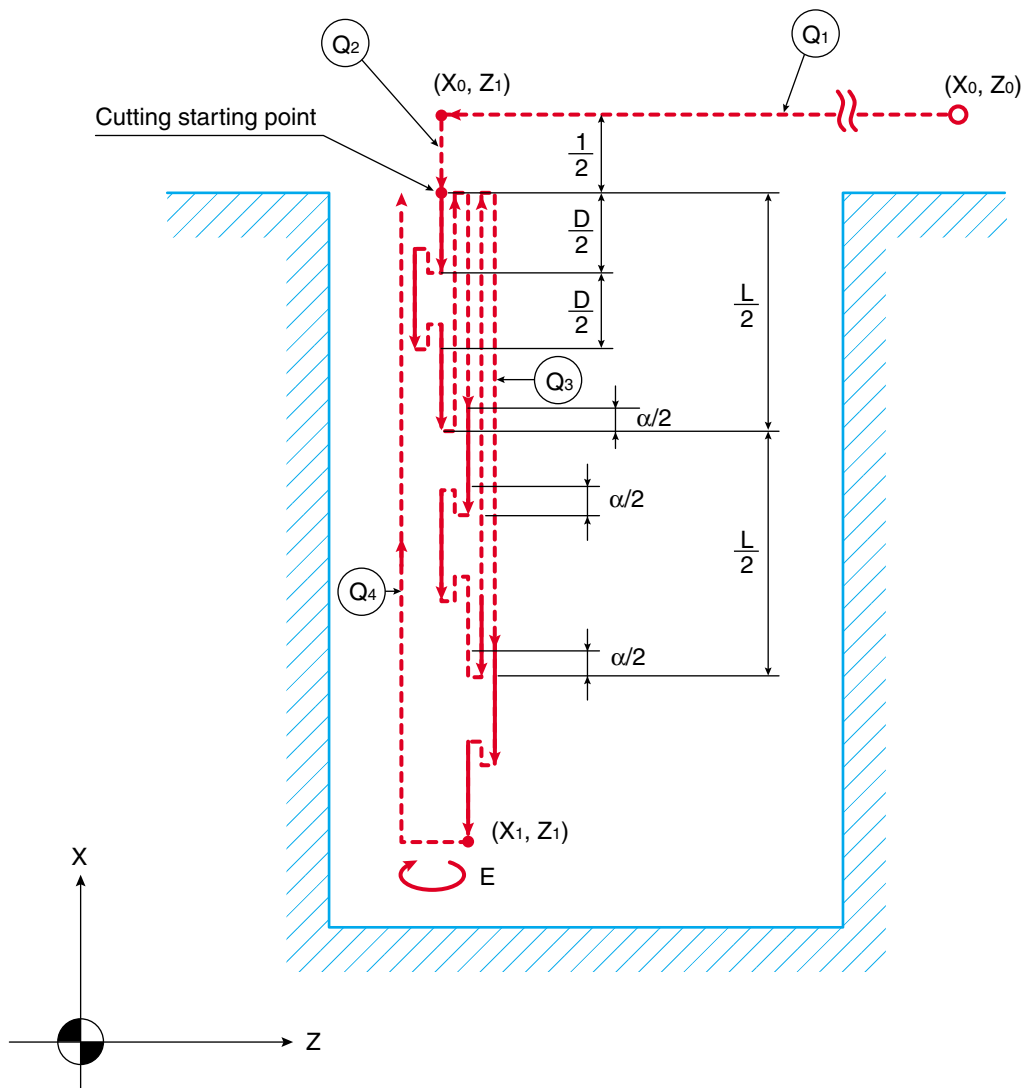
| | | | | | | | |
|------|------|----------------|----------------|-----|---|---|---|
| | | | : | | | | |
| N100 | G00 | X ₀ | Z ₀ | | | | |
| N101 | G94 | | | SB= | | | |
| N102 | G182 | X ₁ | Z ₁ | C | K | F | E |
| N103 | G180 | | | | | | |
| | | | : | | | | |

Cycle operation

- Q₁ : The axes are positioned in the G00 mode at the point specified by (X₁, Z₀) and the C command value. After the completion of positioning, the M-tool spindle starts rotating in the forward direction.
- Q₂ : The Z-axis is positioned at a point "-K" from Z₀. After the completion of positioning, the C-axis is clamped.
- Q₃ : Cutting is performed up to Z₁ in the G01 mode. After the completion of axis movement (cutting), the axis dwells for the time specified by "E" (omissible).
After the completion of the dwell command, the M-tool spindle stops rotating.
- Q₄ : The axes are positioned at the cutting starting point in the G00 mode after the M-tool spindle has been stopped. After the completion of positioning, the C-axis is unclamped and the M-tool spindle rotates in the forward direction.

An E command in the Q₃ cycle should be programmed in the same manner as an F command in the G04 mode.

8-7. Deep Hole Drilling Cycle (G183)



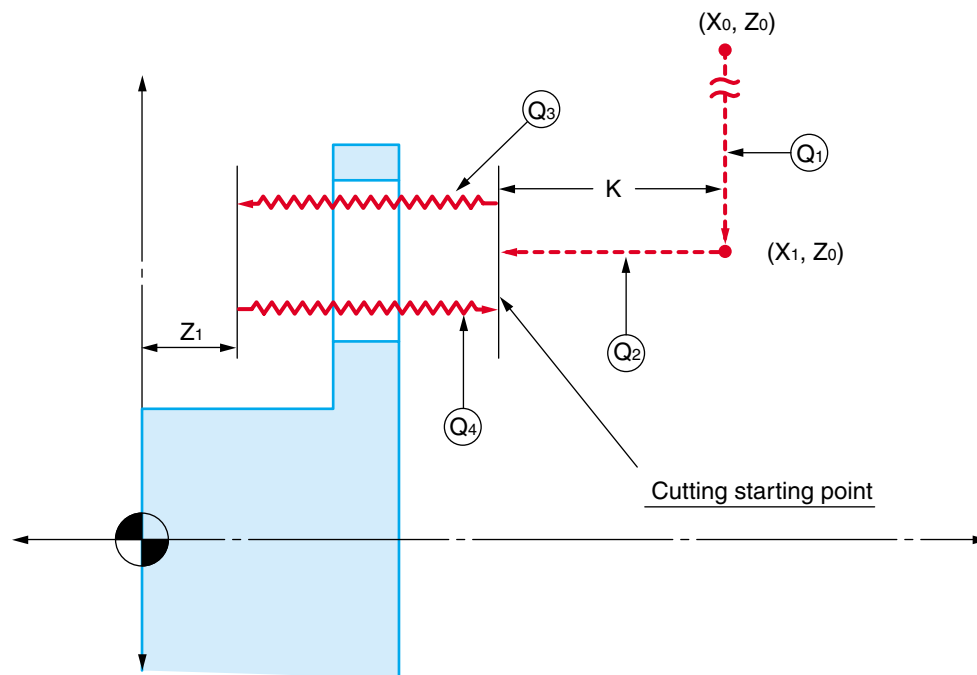
[Program format]

| | | | | | | | | | |
|------|------|-------|-------|-----|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | : | | | | | | |
| N100 | G00 | X_0 | Z_0 | | | | | | |
| N101 | G94 | | | SB= | | | | | |
| N102 | G183 | X_1 | Z_1 | C | I | F | E | D | L |
| N103 | G180 | | | | | | | | |
| | | | : | | | | | | |

Cycle operation

- Q₁ : The axes are positioned in the G00 mode to the point specified by (X₀, Z₁) and the C command value. After the completion of positioning, the M-tool spindle starts rotating in the forward direction.
- Q₂ : The X-axis is positioned at a point “-l” from X₀. After the completion of positioning, the C-axis is clamped.
- Q₃ : A drilling cycle in step feed mode is carried out up to X₁.
“Step feed” means the axis movement illustrated in the diagram. That is, the axis is fed by “D” and then it retracts by “α” at the rapid feedrate. This infeed and rapid retraction cycle is repeated until the total infeed amount reaches “L”, where the axis is returned up to the cutting starting point. The axis is then infeed to the previous drilled depth and then the cycle indicated above is repeated up to the target point X₁.
At the bottom of the hole, the dwell function is activated for time duration “E” (omissible).
- Q₄ : The axes are positioned at the cutting starting point in the G00 mode. After the completion of positioning, the C-axis is unclamped.
- For “α”, the value set at Pecking amount in drilling cycle of optional parameter (MULTIPLE MACHINING) is used.

8-8. Tapping Cycle (G184)



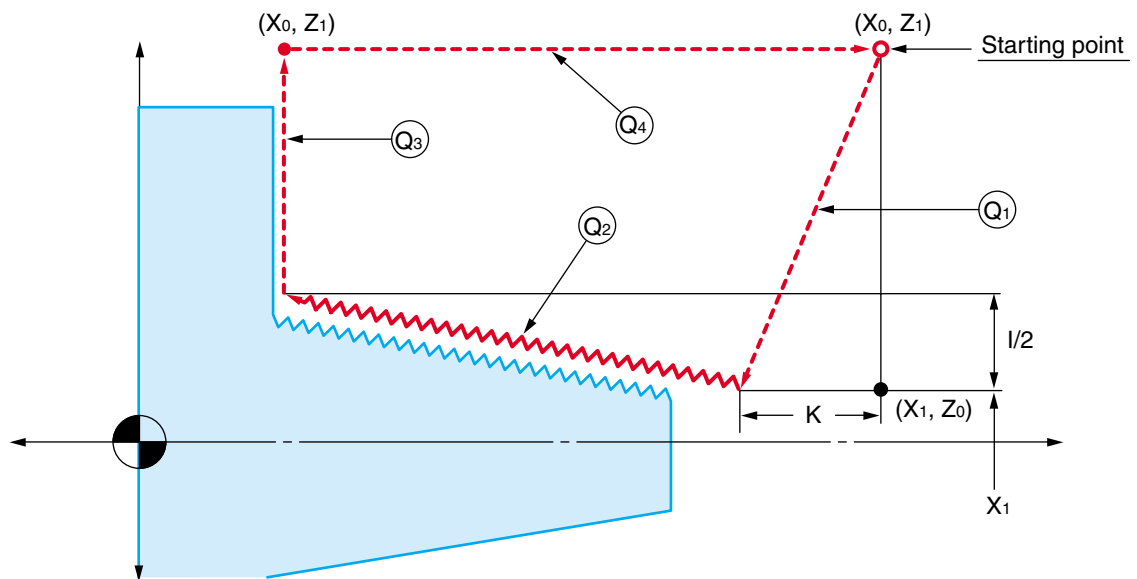
[Program format]

| | | | | | | | |
|------|------|----------------|----------------|-----|---|---|---|
| N100 | G00 | X ₀ | Z ₀ | : | | | |
| N101 | G94 | | | SB= | | | |
| N102 | G184 | X ₁ | Z ₁ | C | K | F | E |
| N103 | G180 | | | : | | | |

Cycle operation

- Q₁ : The axes are positioned in the G00 mode at the point specified by (X₁, Z₀) and the C command value. After the completion of positioning, the M-tool spindle starts rotating in the forward direction.
- Q₂ : The Z-axis is positioned at a point "-K" from Z₀. After the completion of positioning, the C-axis is clamped.
- Q₃ : Cutting is performed up to Z₁ in the G01 mode. After the completion of axis movement (cutting), the axis dwells for "E" (omissible).
After the completion of dwell command, the M-tool spindle stops and then reverses its rotating direction.
- Q₄ : After the M-tool spindle has started to rotate in the reverse direction, the axis is fed up to the cutting starting point in the G01 mode.
After the axis has returned to the cutting starting point, the C-axis is clamped, and the M-tool spindle stops and rotates in the forward rotation.

8-9. Longitudinal Thread Cutting Cycle (G185)



[Program format]

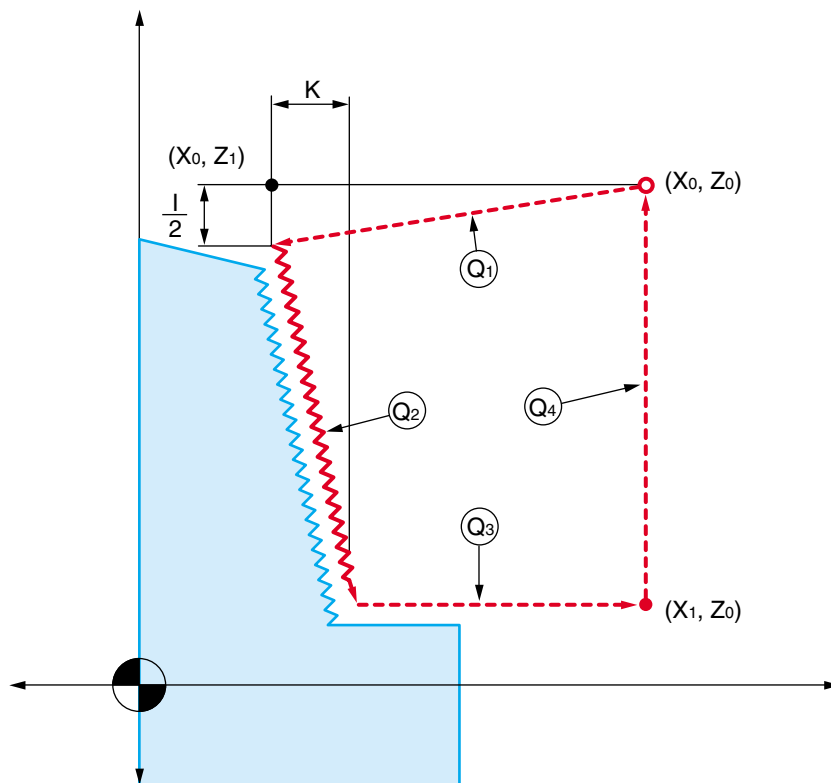
| | | | | | | | | | |
|------|------|----------------|----------------|-----|---|---|---|-----|--|
| | | | : | | | | | | |
| N100 | G00 | X ₀ | Z ₀ | | | | | | |
| N101 | G95 | | | SB= | | | | | |
| N102 | G185 | X ₁ | Z ₁ | C | I | K | F | SA= | |
| N103 | G180 | | | | | | | | |
| | | | : | | | | | | |

Cycle operation

- Q₁ : The axes are positioned in the G00 mode at the point specified by (X₁, Z₀ - K) and the C command value. After the completion of positioning, the M-tool spindle starts rotating in the forward direction.
- Q₂ : The C-axis starts rotation and the thread cutting cycle is carried out up to point (X₁ + I, Z₁) in the G01 mode. After the completion of thread cutting, the C-axis stops rotation.
- Q₃ : The axes are positioned in the G00 mode at X₀
- Q₄ : The axes are positioned in the G00 mode at the starting point.

In G185 thread cutting mode operation, cutting feed is synchronized with the rotation of the C-axis. Therefore, the F command must be equivalent to one pitch of the thread.

8-10. Transverse Thread Cutting Cycle (G186)



[Program format]

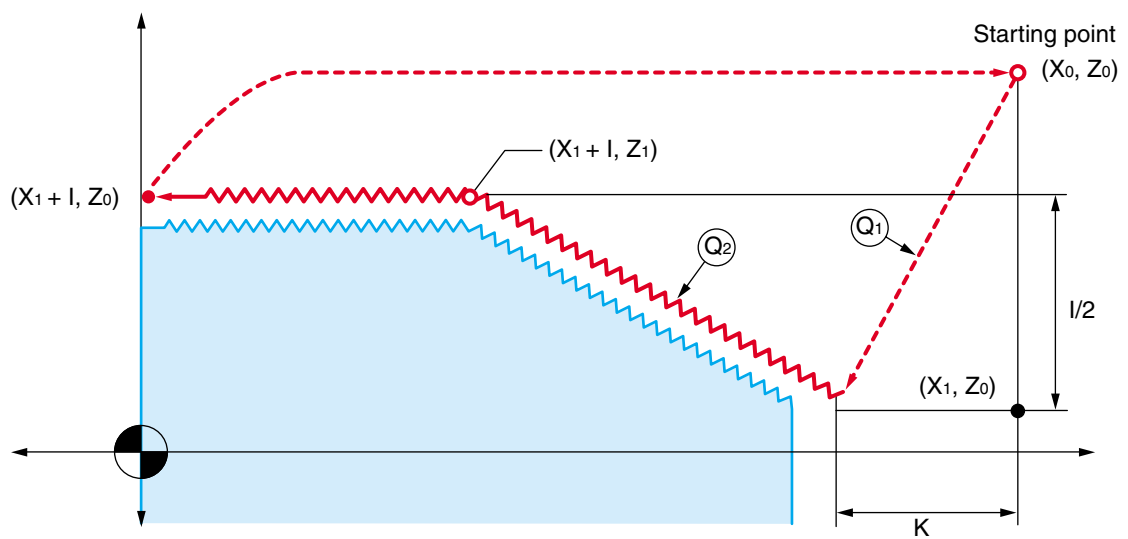
| | | | | | | | |
|------|------|-------|-------|-----|---|---|-----|
| | | | : | | | | |
| N100 | G00 | X_0 | Z_0 | | | | |
| N101 | G95 | | | SB= | | | |
| N102 | G186 | X_1 | Z_1 | C | I | K | SA= |
| N103 | G180 | | | | | | |
| | | | : | | | | |

Cycle operation

- Q₁ : The axes are positioned in the G00 mode to the point specified by $(X_0 - I, Z_1)$ and the C command value. After the completion of positioning, the M-tool spindle starts rotation in the forward direction.
- Q₂ : The C-axis starts rotation and the thread cutting cycle is carried out up to point $(X_1, Z_1 + K)$ in the G01 mode. After the completion of thread cutting, the C-axis stops rotation.
- Q₃ : The axes are positioned in the G00 mode at Z_0
- Q₄ : The axes are positioning in G00 at the starting point

In G186 thread cutting mode operation, cutting feed is synchronized with the rotation of the C-axis. Therefore, the F command must be equivalent to one pitch of the thread.

8-11. Longitudinal Straight Thread Cutting (G187)



[Program format]

| | | | | | | | |
|------|------|----------------|----------------|-----|---|---|-----|
| N100 | G00 | X ₀ | Z ₀ | : | | | |
| N101 | G95 | | | SB= | | | |
| N102 | G187 | X ₁ | Z ₁ | C | I | K | SA= |
| N103 | | | Z ₂ | | | | SA= |
| N104 | G180 | | | : | | | |

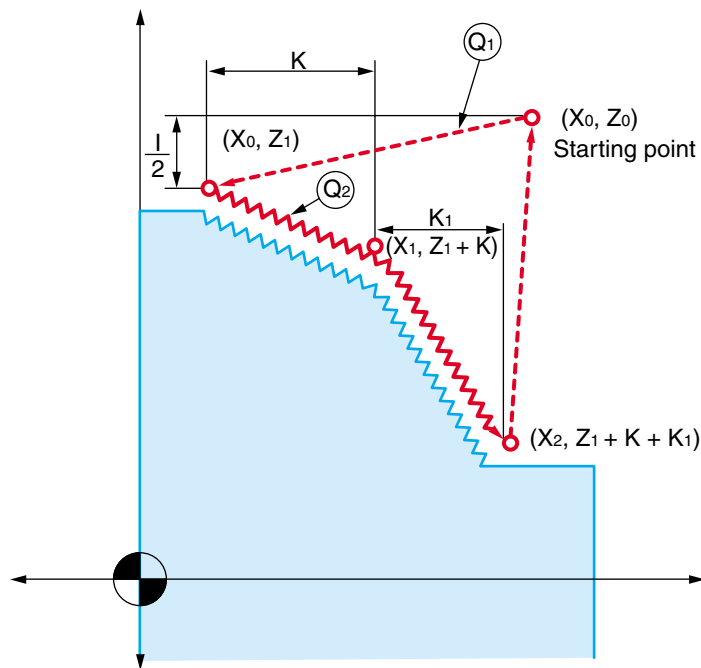
Since the G187 cycle contains only Q₁ and Q₂ cycles, repeated designation of G187 in succession as in the program above can cut threads continuously.

Cycle operation

- Q₁ : The axes are positioned in the G00 mode to the point specified by X₁ and Z₀ - K. After the completion of positioning, the M-tool spindle starts rotation in the forward direction.
- Q₂ : The C-axis starts rotation. The thread cutting cycle is carried out up to point (X₁ + I, Z₁) in the G01 mode.

The thread cutting cycle is carried out in accordance with the commands in sequence N103 up to the commanded target point (X₁ + I, Z₂). Then, the axes are returned to the starting point at the rapid feedrate by the command G180 (cancel) specified in the N104 sequence.

8-12. Transverse Straight Thread Cutting (G188)



[Program format]

| | | | | | | | | | |
|------|------|----------------|----------------|-----|----|---|---|-----|--|
| N100 | G00 | X ₀ | Z ₀ | | | | | | |
| N101 | G95 | | | SB= | | | | | |
| N102 | G188 | X ₁ | Z ₁ | I | K | F | C | SA= | |
| N103 | | X ₂ | Z ₂ | | K1 | | C | SA= | |
| N104 | G180 | | | | | | | | |

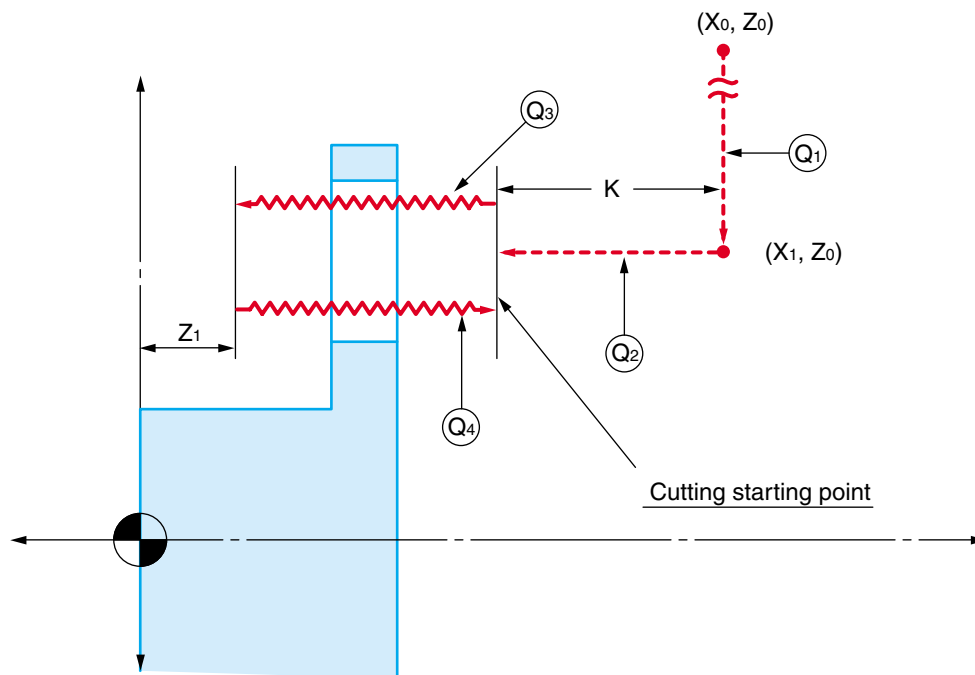
Since the G188 cycle contains only Q₁ and Q₂ cycles, repeated designation of G188 in succession as in the program above can cut threads continuously.

Cycle operation

- Q₁ : The axes are positioned in the G00 mode to the point specified by X₀ - I and Z₁. After the completion of positioning, the M-tool spindle starts rotation in the forward direction.
- Q₂ : The C-axis starts rotation and the thread cutting cycle is carried out up to point (X₁, Z₁ + K) in the G01 mode.

The thread cutting cycle is carried out in accordance with the commands in sequence N103 up to the commanded target point (X₁ + I, Z₂). Then, the axes are returned to the starting point at the rapid feedrate by the command G180 (cancel) specified in the N104 sequence.

8-13. Reaming/Boring Cycle (G189)



[Program format]

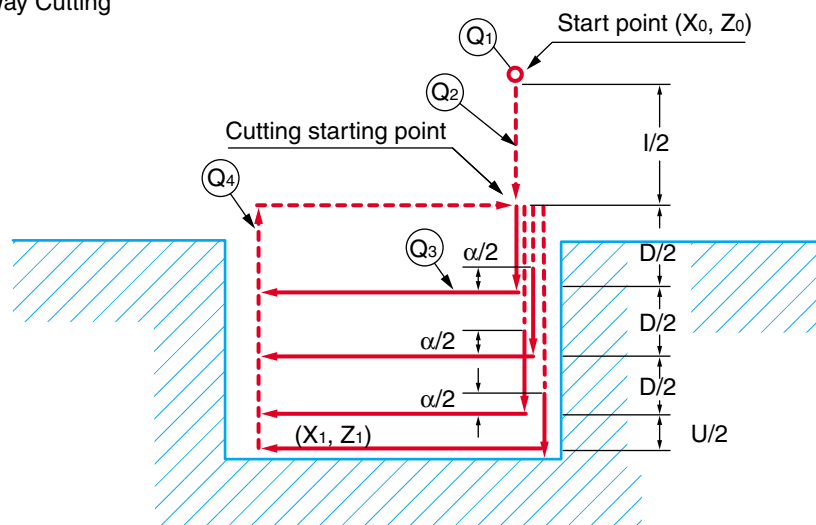
| | | | | | | | | | |
|------|------|----|----|-----|---|---|---|---|--|
| N100 | G00 | X0 | Z0 | : | | | | | |
| N101 | G94 | | | SB= | | | | | |
| N102 | G189 | X1 | Z1 | C | K | F | Q | E | |
| N103 | G180 | | | : | | | | | |

Cycle operation

- Q₁ : The axes are positioned in the G00 mode to the point specified by (X_1, Z_0) and the C command value. After the completion of positioning, the M-tool spindle starts rotating in the forward direction.
- Q₂ : The Z-axis is positioned at a point "-K" from Z_0 . After the completion of positioning, the C-axis is clamped (omissible).
- Q₃ : Cutting is performed up to Z_1 in the G01 mode. After the completion of cutting, dwell for "E" is carried out (omissible).
- Q₄ : Cutting is performed up to the cutting starting point in the G01 mode. After the completion of axis movement, the C-axis is unclamped.

8-14. Key Way Cutting (G190)

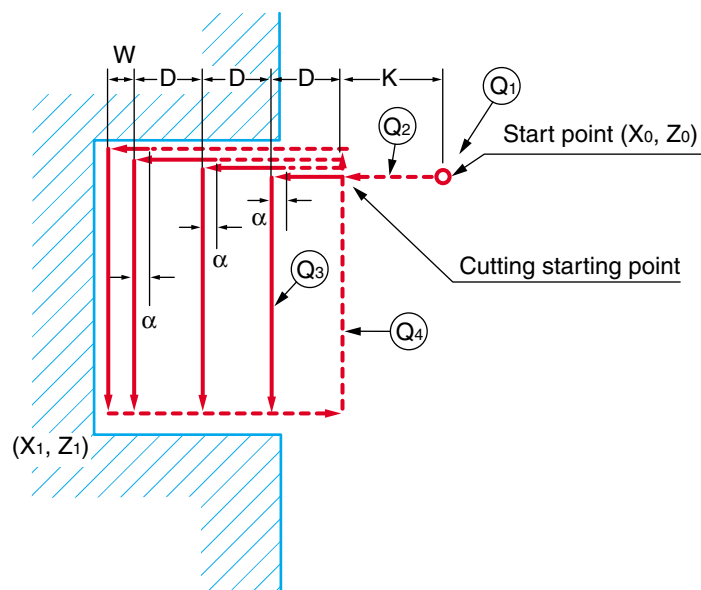
Side Key Way Cutting



[Program format]

| | | | | | | | | | |
|------|------|----------------|----------------|-----|---|---|---|------|------|
| N100 | G00 | X ₀ | Z ₀ | : | | | | | |
| N101 | G94 | | | SB= | | | | | |
| N102 | G190 | X ₁ | Z ₁ | C | I | D | U | E | F |
| N103 | G180 | | | | | | | M211 | M213 |
| | | | | : | | | | | |

Face Key Way Cutting



[Program format]

| | | | | | | | | | |
|------|------|----------------|----------------|-----|---|---|---|------|------|
| | | | : | | | | | | |
| N100 | G00 | X ₀ | Z ₀ | | | | | | |
| N101 | G94 | | | SB= | | | | | |
| N102 | G190 | X ₁ | Z ₁ | C | K | D | W | E | F |
| N103 | G180 | | | | | | | M211 | M213 |
| | | | : | | | | | | |

Cycle operation

- Q₁ : The X and Z axes are positioned at the designated position on the C-axis in the G00 mode. After the completion of positioning, the M-tool spindle starts rotating in the forward direction.
- Q₂ : The X-axis (Z-axis for face key way cutting) is positioned at a point -I (-K for face key way cutting) from X₀ (Z₀ for face key way cutting) in the G00 mode. After the completion of positioning, the C-axis is clamped.
- Q₃ : Key way cutting is carried out in the “one directional, designated infeed” mode. For the “one directional, designated infeed” mode, refer to “Key Way Cutting Modes” below.
- Q₄ : The axes are positioned at the starting point in the G00 mode. After the completion of positioning, the C-axis is unclamped.

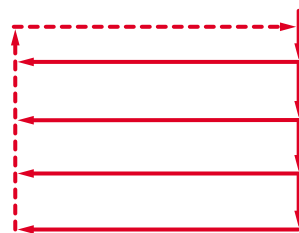
For “α”, the value set at Pecking amount in drilling cycle of optional parameter (MULTIPLE MACHINING) is used.

Key Way Cutting Modes

In key way cutting cycles, it is possible to select the cutting direction and cutting method with M codes.

- 1) Selection of cutting direction (M211, M212)

One-directional Cutting Mode (M211)



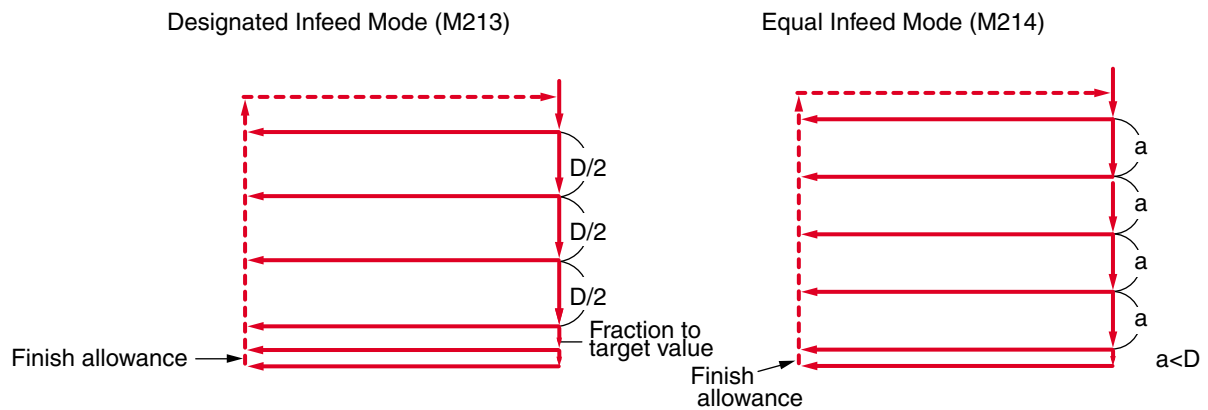
Cutting in one direction

Zigzag Cutting Mode (M212)



Cutting direction changes along the cutting path

2) Selection of infeed mode (M213, M214)



The tool is infeed by the designated amount "D"; in the final cutting path, the depth equivalent to the fraction is cut.

Infeed amount "a", obtained by dividing the total depth of cut to the target point into equal parts is determined so that "a" is not greater than "D".

[Details]

In either cutting mode, the finish allowance U or W is left on the workpiece in the rough cutting cycle; this finish allowance is finally removed in the finish cutting cycle.

- Before starting fixed cycle mode operation, the C-axis must be placed in the unclamped (M146) state.
- In the G181 through G184, G189, G190, G178 and G179 modes, the first cycle is executed in the order Q_1 , Q_2 , Q_3 , then Q_4 . However, Q_3 and Q_4 are repeated after that, when a C or Q command is specified. The C-axis clamp and unclamp commands (M147 and M146) necessary for repeating sub cycles Q_3 and Q_4 are automatically generated.
- When the called fixed cycle mode is canceled, the control is in the M146 and M13 mode. Specify M147 and M12, if necessary.
- The block right after the one canceling the fixed cycle mode must contain both X- and Z-axis commands.

8-15. Synchronized Tapping Cycle

[Programming format]

G178 X__Z__C__R__K(l)__F__D__J__Q__M141 M136
(G179)

G178 : Forward tapping cycle command

The forward tapping cycle can also be called by designating G184 instead of G178, but in this case "1" must be set in advance at G184 tapping mode of optional parameter (MULTIPLE MACHINING) (if the setting for this parameter is "0", G184 calls a conventional floating tap cycle).

G179 : Reverse tapping cycle command

X, C : Tapping on the front surface (if not designated, tapping is performed at the position where the previous tapping cycle was carried out.)

Z, C : Tapping on the side surface

Z : Hole bottom level for tapping on the front surface

X : Hole bottom level for tapping on the side surface

R : Depth of cut The total tap length, from the cutting start point, is designated as R. Cutting direction is indicated by a positive (+) or negative (-) sign preceding the R.

When tapping is carried out on the side surface along the X-axis, a diametrical value is designated for R.

However, note that the R command and the hole bottom level command, Z (X), cannot be designated simultaneously.

K : Shift amount to the cutting start point for tapping in the front surface

l : Shift amount to the cutting start point for tapping in the side surface

F : Cutting feedrate

Sets the feedrates for cutting feed during the cycle.

Determine a value so that the M-tool spindle feed per revolution is equal to the thread pitch.

Cutting feedrate F in the G94 and G95 modes is as follows, where P is the thread pitch (mm) and

SB stands for the M-tool spindle speed ($\text{min}^{-1}\{\text{rpm}\}$).

G94 mode: $F = P \times SB$ (mm/min)

G95 mode: $F = P$ (mm/rev)

NOTICE

In the synchronized tapping cycle, G95 (feed per revolution for the M-tool spindle) can be used.

D : Tapping start point of the M-tool spindle

The position where the M-tool spindle starts tapping is designated as "D". The M-tool spindle is governed by "constant start point control". This is used when no new D command is assigned, therefore the M-tool spindle starts tapping at the position defined by the previously designated D command.

NOTICE

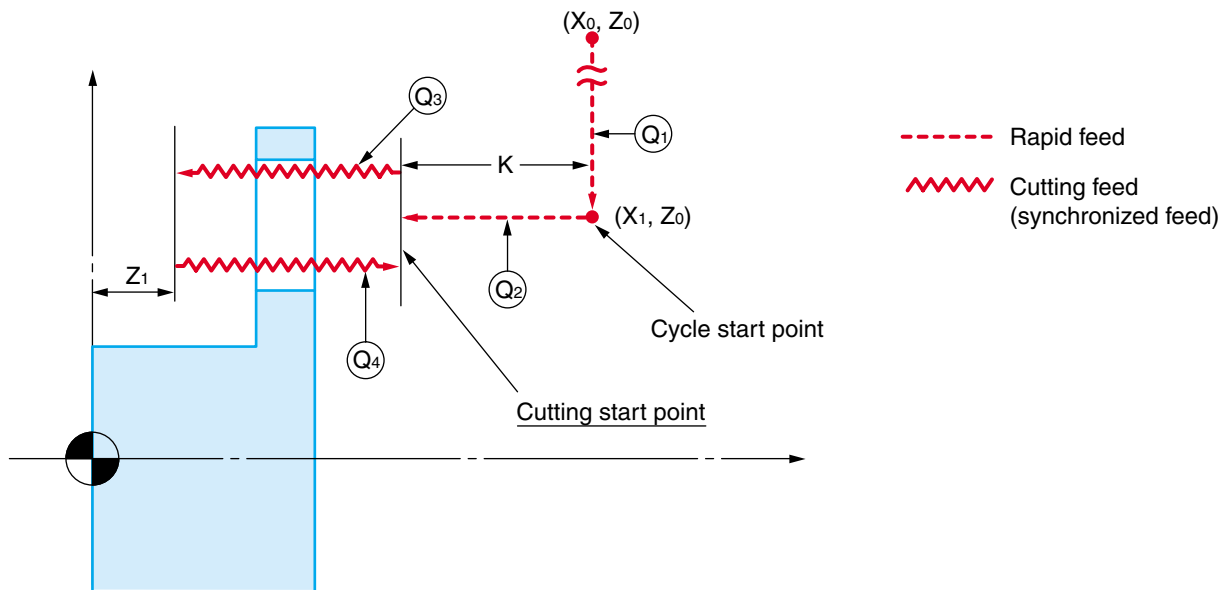
When the one-point clutch specification is not selected for the M-tool spindle clutch, its start point is not guaranteed even when a D command is designated.

J : Number of threads

Whenever the number of threads per inch is specified with inch taps, it is convenient to use J as an indicator, to avoid confusion with metric measurements.

Q : Number of holes (for details, see the next section, 8-16)

(1) Forward Tapping Cycle (G178)



[Programming format]

| | | | | | | | |
|------|------|----|----|---|-----|---|---|
| N100 | G00 | X0 | Z0 | : | | | |
| N101 | G94 | | | | SB= | | |
| N102 | G178 | X1 | Z1 | C | K | F | D |
| N103 | G180 | | | : | | | |

Cycle operation

- Q_1 : The axes are positioned at the coordinates (X_1, C) at the rapid feedrate, and M-tool spindle rotation is stopped.
- Q_2 : The axes are positioned at the cutting start point $(Z_0, -K)$ at the rapid feedrate. With M-tool spindle one-point clutch models, the M-tool spindle oscillates after the completion of positioning at $(Z_0, -K)$ to engage the clutch. When a D command had been designated, the M-tool spindle is positioned at point D along the tapping rotation direction.
- Q_3 : After the C-axis had been clamped, the M-tool spindle is synchronized with the Z-axis to point Z_1 while being rotated in the forward direction. Axis motion is suspended at point Z_1 until the M-tool spindle and the Z-axis come within the droop.
- Q_4 : The M-tool spindle is synchronized with the Z-axis at coordinates $(Z_0, -K)$ while being rotated in the reverse direction. Then, the C-axis is clamped. When the return point of cutting is set at the cycle start point, the axes are positioned at point Z_0 at the rapid feedrate.

NOTICE

- 1) During the execution of steps Q₃ and Q₄, the M-tool spindle override and feed axis override are set at 100%.
- 2) When slide hold is designated during the execution of the steps Q₃ and Q₄, the axes are moved as follows.
 Step Q₃
 The M-tool spindle and the feed axes are stopped at that position.
 The M-tool spindle is then returned to the cutting start point in synchronized cutting feed while it rotates in the direction opposite to that it had been rotating in, then enters the slide hold state.
 Step Q₄
 The axes are returned to the cutting start point in synchronized feed, and the slide hold state is established.
- 3) The dry run function is not effective during the execution of steps Q₃ and Q₄.
- 4) The M-tool spindle is stopped when the synchronized tapping cycle is complete.

(2) Reverse tapping cycle (G179)

Axis motion is the same as in the forward tapping cycle but the M-tool spindle rotates in the reverse direction in steps Q₂, Q₃, and Q₄.

8-16. Repeat Function

When cutting equally spaced holes, the use of the repeat function simplifies programming

```
G183 X40 Z80 C0 I46 D10 E1 F40 Q6
G180
```

↑
Specify the number of holes
to be drilled.

The repeat function allows repeated designation in two blocks.

Note that the repeat function is effective for G178, G179 and G181 through G184 and G189, G190 cycles.

- When no Q word is specified or Q₀ is specified, the control regards the designation as "Q₁".
- The fixed cycle command associated with the Q word is effective only in one block. Be sure to specify G180 in the block following such a block.

```
G181 X100 Z150 C30 I46 E1 Q4
* [ X80 C90 ]
G180
```

* :The commands in this block cannot be given.

- When a Q command is specified, positioning in intervals of $360^\circ/Q$ is executed automatically from the commanded C position.

8-17. Tool Relieving Command in Deep-hole Drilling Cycle for Chip Discharge.

As explained before, in deep-hole drilling cycle (G183), the use of D and E codes executes step feed and breaks the chips in which the drill will otherwise tend to get entangled. In addition to this, it is possible to program drilling with discharge of chips outside the hole being drilled.

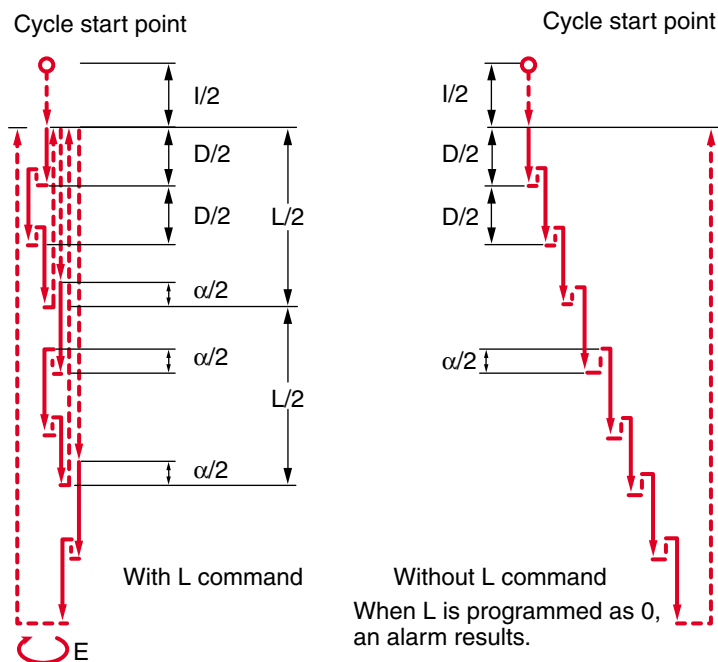
L: Infeed amount (as a diameter) for tool relieving motion

When an L** command is programmed in a deep-hole drilling cycle, peck feeding is repeated until the total infeed amount reaches "L" and then the drill returns to the cycle start point at the rapid traverse. The drill is then positioned to a point $-\alpha$ mm (*) away from (above) the depth of the previous cut at the rapid traverse rate; the programmed drilling cycles is repeated until the commanded X (Z) value is reached.

* The value set at Pecking amount in drilling cycle of optional parameter (MULTIPLE MACHINING) is used for " α ".

To execute a drilling with chip discharge command in a fixed cycle program, program a block of commands like that shown below.

```
G183 X40 Z80 C0 146 D10 E1 F40 L50
```



8-18. Drilling Depth Setting (Only for drilling cycles)

For the drilling cycles called by G178, G179, G181, G182, G183, G184, and G189, the drill hole depth may be specified by an R command (see below) from the position shifted to by I or K, instead of specifying the end point of the drilling cycles.

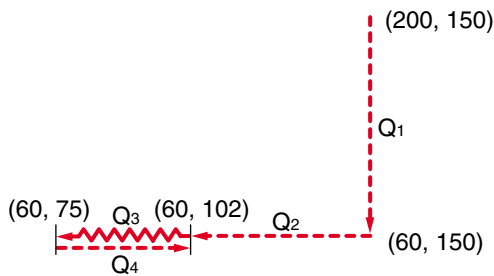
$\pm R$: Drilling hole depth in drilling cycle
 In a drilling cycle, the drill hole depth (distance) is specified by an R command.

The R command in the X-axis direction must be specified as a diameter.

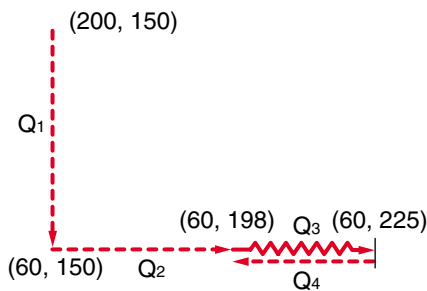
The use of an R command allows the drilling cycle to be programmed by reference to the hole depth instead of the end point of the cycle.

When using an R command in a fixed cycle program, program a block of commands like that shown below.

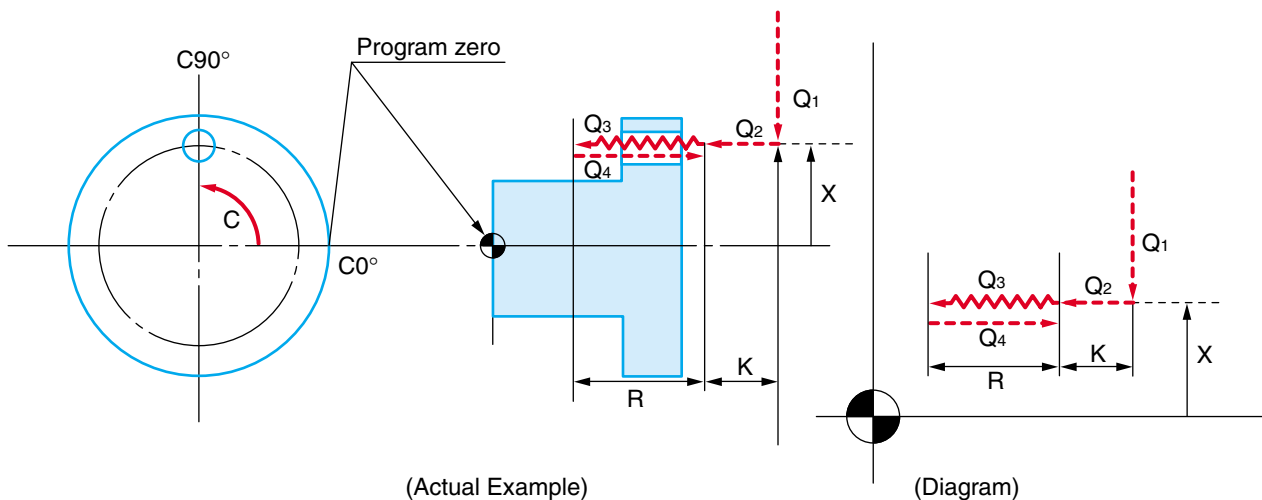
```
N102 G 94 X200 Z150 T0101 SB=400
N103 G181 X 60 R - 27 C0 K48 F40
```



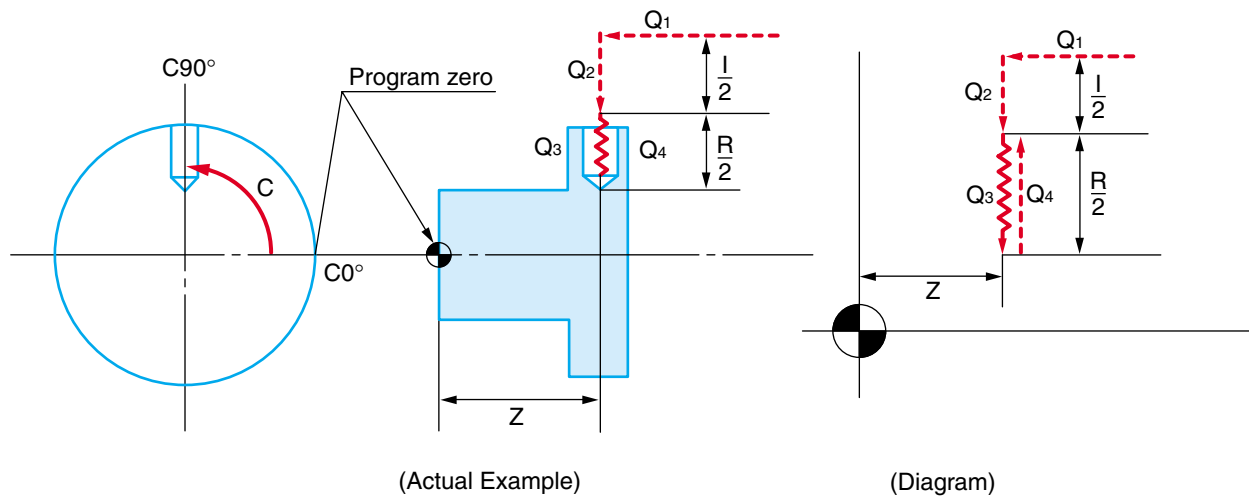
The direction of drilling is determined by the plus or minus sign of the R command. If R27 were specified instead of R-27 in the program above, the direction of the drilling cycle would be as indicated below.



(1) Face Machining (With K command)



(2) Side Machining (With I command)



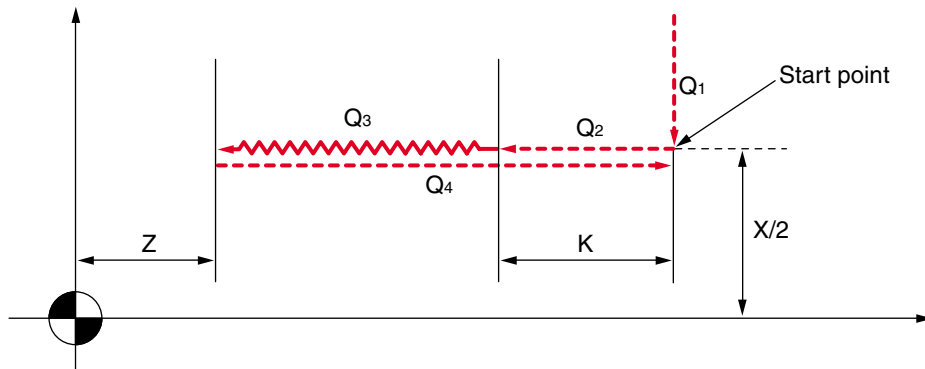
| | Face Machining (With K command) | Side Machining (With I command) |
|----------------|--|--|
| Q ₁ | Positioning of X- and C-axis at the rapid feedrate | Positioning of Z- and C-axis at the rapid feedrate |
| Q ₂ | Positioning of Z-axis to the point defined by incremental amount "±K" from the present position at the rapid feedrate | Positioning of X-axis to the point defined by incremental amount "±I" from the present position at the rapid feedrate |
| Q ₃ | Cutting along Z-axis up to the commanded point Z | Cutting along X-axis up to the commanded point X |
| Q ₄ | Z-axis returns to the point where cutting started (Q ₃) either at a specified feedrate or the rapid feedrate depending on the called fixed cycle mode. | X-axis returns to the point where cutting started (Q ₃) either at a specified feedrate or the rapid feedrate depending on the called fixed cycle mode. |

- For I and K commands, only a positive value is allowed. If a negative value is specified, an alarm occurs.
- The direction of axis feed is automatically determined. The axis is fed in the determined direction by the amount specified by the I or K command.
- With an R command, the direction of drilling is determined by the plus or minus sign. In the example above, the R value is negative.

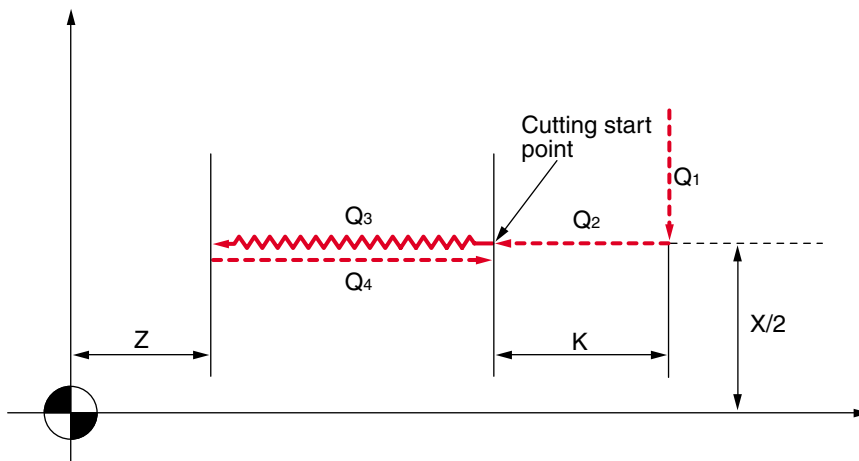
8-19. Selection of Return Point

In the G178, G179, G181 through G184, G189 and G190 cycles, the return point after the completion of cutting can be selected by setting at Multi cycle return point of optional parameter (MULTIPLE MACHINING).

- When the setting at Multi cycle return point is “rapid feedrate start point”:



- When the setting at Multi cycle return point is “cutting start point”:



8-20. M-tool spindle Interlock Release Function (optional)

Usually, an attempt to rotate the M-tool spindle while the C-axis is not in the joined state causes an alarm. However, using the M-tool spindle interlock release M code in the optional operation time reduction function allows rotation of the M-tool even if the C-axis is not in the joined state.

M-tool spindle interlock M codes:

M152 : M-tool spindle interlock release cancel (interlock ON)

M153 : M-tool spindle interlock release (interlock OFF)

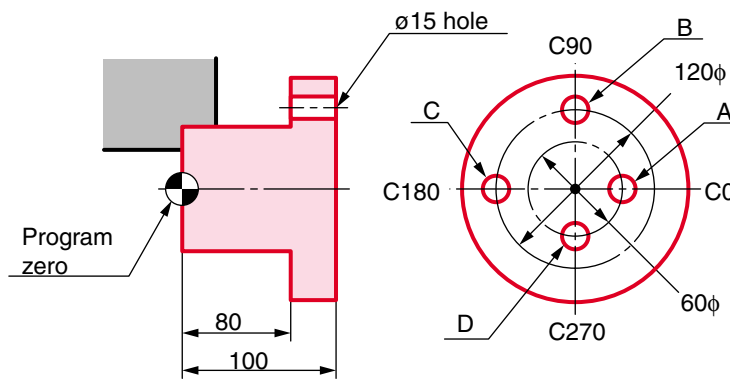
- When M153 is designated, M13 and M14 commands are effective regardless of the C-axis joining state.
- When the control is reset, M152 (interlock ON) is effective.
- When the power is turned on, M152 (interlock ON) is effective.

8-21. Other Remarks

- No incremental data can be specified during fixed cycle mode operation.
- After the programmed fixed cycle is completed, the C-axis is in the unclamped state and the M-tool is rotating (M146 and M13 modes). Specify M147 and M12, if necessary.
- If the pattern is repeated by the Q command in a fixed cycle, the Q₂ sequence is executed after the C-axis has rotated if the cycle start point is selected as the return point.

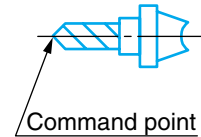
8-22. Program Examples

Example 1:



Tool No. : T0101

Tool : $\phi 15$ drill



SB = 400 min⁻¹{rpm}

When drilling the four 15 mm dia. holes shown above, program as below using G181 for the drilling cycle.

| | | | | | | | |
|--|------|--------------------------------------|---------------|------|-----|-----|-----------------|
| Continued from turning operation program | | | | | | | |
| N099 | G00 | X1000 | X1000 | | | | M05 |
| N100 | | | | | | | M110 |
| N101 | | | | | | | M15 |
| N102 | G094 | X200 | Z150 | | | | T0101 SB=400 |
| N103 | G181 | X60 | Z75 (R-27) | C0 | K48 | F40 | |
| N104 | | X120 | | C90 | | | |
| N105 | | | | C180 | | | |
| N106 | | X60 | | C270 | | | |
| N107 | G180 | | | | | | |
| N108 | G00 | X1000 | Z1000 | | | | M146 M12 |
| N109 | G95 | Both X and Z axes are programmed. | | | | | M109 |
| N110 | | | | | | | M02 |

The spindle (C-axis) indexes to the 0° position. After the drill is positioned at X60 at the rapid feedrate, it starts rotating in the leftward direction at 400 min⁻¹ {rpm}.

The drill is positioned at Z102 at the rapid feedrate.

The drill is fed to Z75 at 40 mm/min, thereby drilling hole A.

The drill is returned to Z102 at the rapid feedrate.

The spindle indexes to the 90° position. After the drill is positioned at X120 at the rapid feedrate, it drills hole B in the same manner as N103.

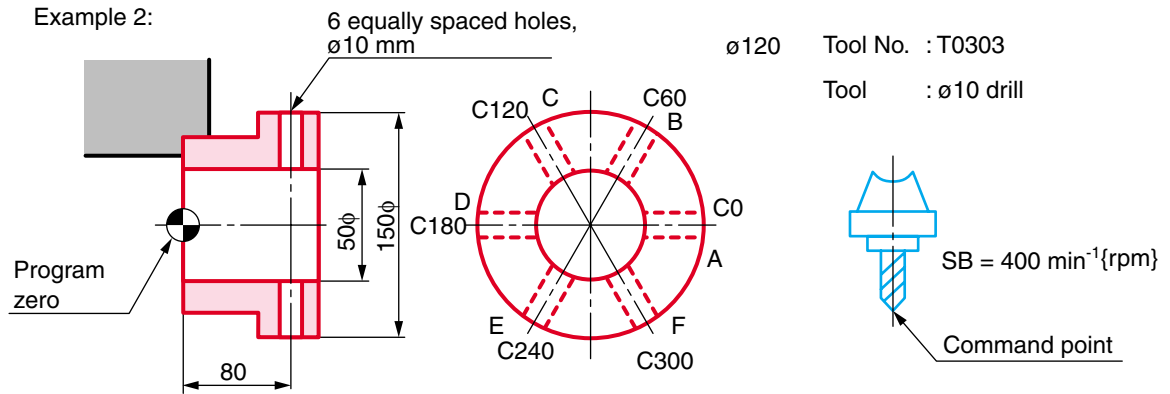
After the spindle indexes to the 180° position, the same drilling cycle is executed for hole C.

After the spindle indexes to the 270° position, the drill is positioned at X60 and then the same drilling cycle is executed for hole D.

G180 cancels the fixed cycle mode.

[Supplement]

- Tool rotation, and C-axis clamp and unclamp commands need not be designated in blocks N103 through N106 as they are generated automatically.
- In block N104, which calls out the drilling cycle at the second hole, program only the commands differing from those specified in the previous block N103. In blocks N105 and N106, the same programming concept applies.
- S, M and T codes must not be programmed during fixed cycle mode operation.



When drilling the six equally spaced 10 mm dia. holes shown above, program as below using G183 for the deep hole drilling cycle.

| Continued from turning operation program | | | | | | | | | |
|--|------|-------|-------|------|-----|-----|----|-----|-----------------|
| N099 | G00 | X1000 | Z1000 | | | | | | M05 |
| N100 | | | | | | | | | M110 |
| N101 | | | | | | | | | M15 |
| N102 | G94 | X200 | Z100 | | | | | | T0303 SB=400 |
| N103 | G183 | X40 | Z80 | C0 | I46 | D10 | E1 | F40 | |
| N104 | | | | C60 | | | | | |
| N105 | | | | C120 | | | | | |
| N106 | | | | C180 | | | | | |
| N107 | | | | C240 | | | | | |
| N108 | | | | C300 | | | | | |
| N109 | G180 | | | | | | | | |
| N110 | G00 | X1000 | Z1000 | | | | | | M12 |
| N111 | G95 | | | | | | | | M109 |
| N112 | | | | | | | | | M02 |

1. The spindle indexes to the 0 position. After the drill is positioned at X80 mm at the rapid feedrate, it starts rotating at $400 \text{ min}^{-1} \{ \text{rpm} \}$.
2. The drill is positioned at X154 at the rapid feedrate.
3. The drill is fed to X40 at the commanded feedrate 40 mm/min.
4. The drill is returned to X154 at the rapid feedrate. This completes drilling of hole A.

→ Drilling cycle at point B

→ Drilling cycle at point C

→ Drilling cycle at point D

→ Drilling cycle at point E

→ Drilling cycle at point F

The deep-hole drilling cycle is executed in the peck feed mode.

D word : peck feed stroke (mm)

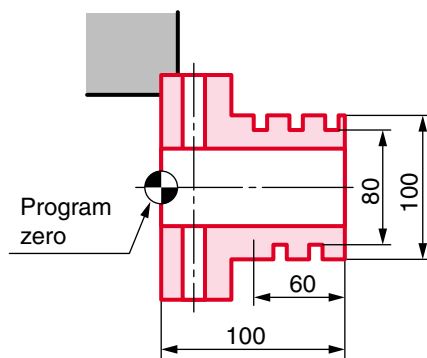
E word : duration of dwell motion (seconds)

In the program shown above, peck feed in 10 mm increments (diameter value) is repeated until the programmed depth is reached, where dwell motion is executed for one second.

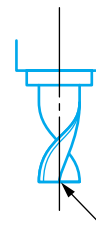
[Supplement]

- Tool rotation, and C-axis clamp and unclamp commands in block N103 through N108 need not be designated as they are generated automatically.
- In block N102, which calls out drilling cycle on the second hole, program only the commands differing from those specified in the previous block N103. In blocks N105 and N106, the same programming concept applies.
- S, M, and T codes must not be programmed during fixed cycle mode operation.
- The value D of the peck feed stroke is specified in absolute value and is always preceded by a plus sign.
- The peck feed stroke D command is effective for deep-hole drilling cycle. The duration, E, of dwell motion is effective for deep-hole drilling, boring, and reaming cycles.

Example 3:



Tool No. : T0505

Tool : $\varnothing 5$ drillSB = $400 \text{ min}^{-1} \{ \text{rpm} \}$

Command point

When cutting a thread having a width of 5 mm and 60 mm long as shown above, program as below using G185 to call out the thread cutting fixed cycle.

| Continued from turning operation program | | | | | | |
|--|------|-------|-------|----|-----|-----------------|
| N099 | G00 | X1000 | Z1000 | | | M05 |
| N100 | | | | | | M110 |
| N101 | | | | | | M15 |
| N102 | G095 | X110 | Z120 | | | T0505 SB=400 |
| N103 | G185 | X95 | Z60 | C0 | F10 | SA12 |
| N104 | | X90 | | | | |
| N105 | | X85 | | | | |
| N106 | | X80 | | | | |
| N107 | G180 | | | | | |
| N108 | G00 | X1000 | Z1000 | | | M12 |
| N109 | G95 | | | | | M109 |
| N110 | | | | | | M02 |

The spindle indexes to the 0° position. After the end mill is positioned to X95 at the rapid feedrate, it starts rotating in the leftward direction at $400 \text{ min}^{-1} \{ \text{rpm} \}$.

The end mill is fed to Z60 at the commanded feedrate, 10 mm/rev.

The end mill is returned to X110 at the rapid feedrate.

The end mill is returned to Z120 at the rapid feedrate.

The spindle indexes to the 0° position. After the end mill is positioned at X90 at the rapid feedrate, the thread cutting cycle is executed.

In the same way, the spindle indexes and thread cutting cycle is executed up to X85

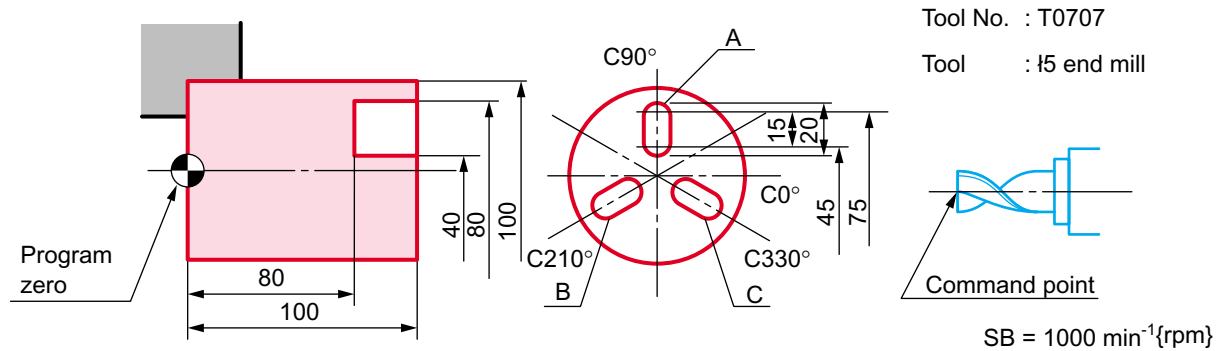
In the same way, the thread cutting cycle is executed at X80

G180 cancels the fixed cycle mode.

[Supplement]

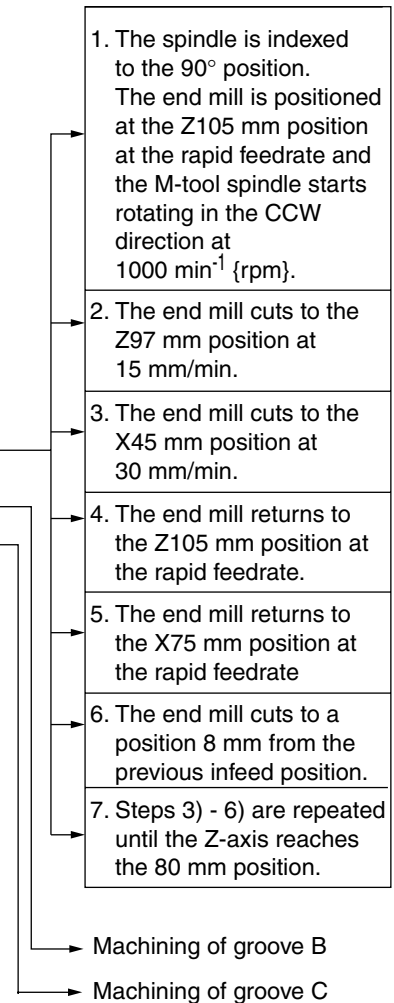
- Command SA = 12 in the N103 block specifies the feedrate along the C-axis as $12 \text{ min}^{-1}\{\text{rpm}\}$.
- The repeat function is not available for the thread cutting fixed cycles called by G185 through G188.
- In the thread cutting fixed cycle called for by G185 through G188, only the G95 feedrate mode is selectable. Programming G94 in these modes results in alarm. In this mode, the "rpm" of the C-axis is referred to.
- In the thread cutting cycles called by G185 through G188, only constant pitch thread can be cut.
- In the G183 mode, an F code specifies thread pitch.

Example 4:



When cutting a key way having a width of 5 mm and 20 mm long as shown above, program as below using G190 to call out the key way cutting fixed cycle.

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|------|-------|-------|------|-----|----|------|-----|-----|----------------------|
| Continued from turning operation program | | | | | | | | | | |
| N099 | G00 | X1000 | Z1000 | | | | | | | M05 |
| N100 | | | | | | | | | | M110 |
| N101 | | | | | | | | | | M15 |
| N102 | G94 | X200 | Z100 | | | | | | | T0707 SB= 1000 |
| N103 | | X75 | Z120 | | | | | | | |
| N104 | G190 | x45 | Z80 | C90 | K15 | D8 | W0.2 | E15 | F30 | M211 M213 |
| N105 | | | | C210 | | | | | | |
| N106 | | | | C330 | | | | | | |
| N107 | G180 | | | | | | | | | |
| N108 | G00 | X1000 | Z1000 | | | | | | | M12 |
| N109 | G95 | | | | | | | | | M109 |
| N110 | | | | | | | | | | M02 |



[Supplement]

- Tool rotation, and C-axis clamp and unclamp command in blocks N104 through N106 are unnecessary as they are generated automatically.
- In block N105, which calls out drilling cycle on the second hole, program only the commands differing from those provided in the previous block N104. In blocks N106 and N107, the same programming manner applies.
- S, M, and T codes must not be programmed during fixed cycle mode operation.

SECTION 8 LATHE AUTO-PROGRAMMING FUNCTION (LAP)

1. Overview

LAP (Lathe Auto-Programming) is a function to make full use of high-speed processing capability which characterizes the NC. With this function, the control automatically generates a tool path to produce the required part contour.

When this function is used, a program comprising the dimension data of the final contour to be finished, including rough cut conditions, is prepared as the Contour Definition Program; when it is called out with the cutting conditions specified, the control automatically generates the tool path for the rough cut cycles, and then finishes the workpiece to the programmed dimensions.

This feature permits the programmer to complete part programs by simply picking up the dimensions specified in an engineering drawing. It not only simplifies programming but also reduces programming time; it also makes the preparatory steps for programming easier, as well as the program check procedure.

Various cutting modes available with the LAP can cope with any intended type of cutting.

In addition to the features above, LAP4 (see note) is also available; with LAP4, a workpiece can be cut using the most efficient tool paths by simply entering the blank workpiece shape.

(1) Features of LAP:

- No special programming language is needed. The same methods as used in conventional programming also apply for the LAP function.
- Programming time can be greatly reduced.
- Programming for rough cut cycles can be eliminated, and this simplifies manual calculation in programming.
- Change of cutting conditions, such as depth of cut and feedrate, is possible during a rough cut cycle.
- By entering the blank workpiece shape, unnecessary air-cutting tool paths can be eliminated to improve cutting efficiency (LAP4).

Note: LAP4 has been developed by extending the functions of LAP3.

2. G Codes Used to Designate Cutting Mode (G80, G81, G82, G83)

There are five cutting modes available for the lathe automatic program (LAP) function:

- AP Mode I : for bar turning
- AP Mode II : for copy turning
- AP Mode III : for thread cutting
- AP Mode IV : for high-speed bar turning (LAP4 only)
- AP Mode V : for bar copy turning (LAP4 only)

Note: "AP" is the abbreviation of "Auto Program".

For details on AP modes I through V and programs, refer to sections 10-1 to 10-6.

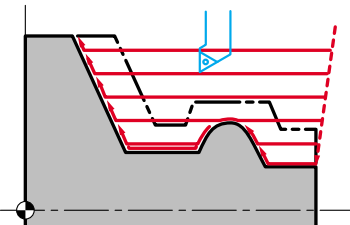
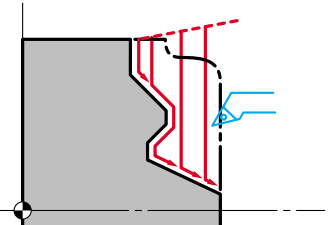
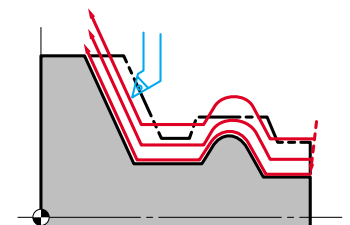
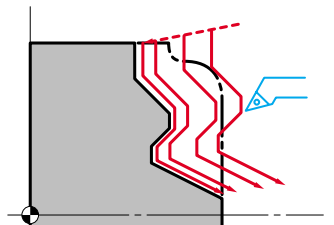
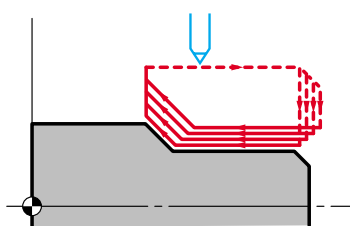
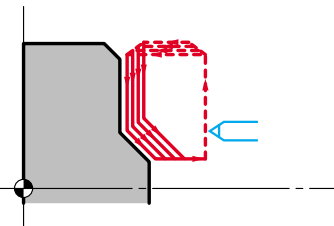
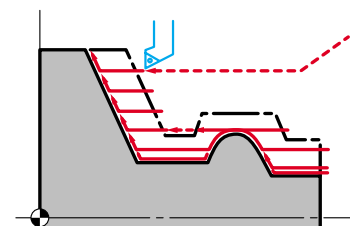
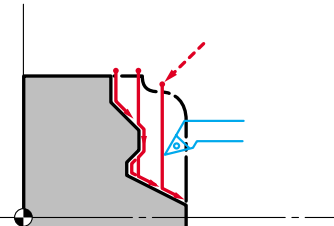
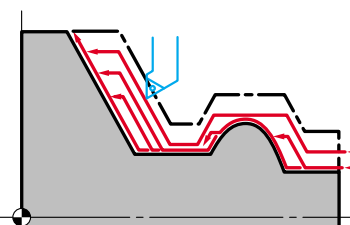
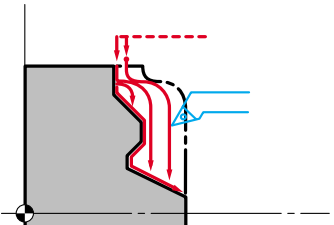
The correspondence between the cutting modes listed above and the G codes that can be used with LAP is as follows.

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| <p>G85 : Used to call out bar rough turning cycle. AP Mode I/AP Mode IV</p> | | <p>G83 : Start of blank shape definition (LAP4 only)</p> |
| <p>G84 : Change of conditions for bar rough turning</p> | | <p>G81 : Start of longitudinal contour definition</p> |
| <p>G86 : Used to call out copy turning cycle. AP Mode II/AP Mode V</p> | | <p>G82 : Start of transverse (on end face) contour definition</p> |
| <p>G87 : Used to call out finish turning cycle.</p> | | <p>G80 : End of contour definition</p> |
| <p>G88 : Used to call out continuous thread cutting cycle. AP Mode III</p> | | |

Details of G85, G84, G86, G87 and G88 are given in sections 5. through 9. below.

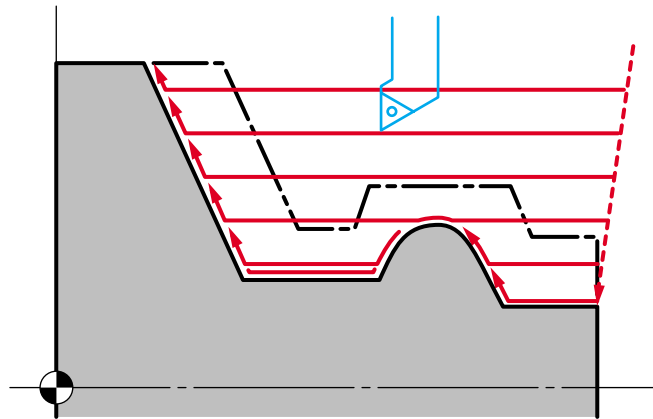
3. List of Cutting Modes

In LAP, longitudinal or transverse mode can be designated for each of the AP modes I through V. The modes that can be used with LAP are summarized in the table below.

| | | Longitudinal Mode | Transverse Mode |
|------|-------------|---|--|
| LAP4 | LAP3 | (1)  | (6)  |
| | AP mode II | (2)  | (7)  |
| | AP mode III | (3)  | (8)  |
| | AP mode IV | (4)  | (9)  |
| | AP mode V | (5)  | (10)  |

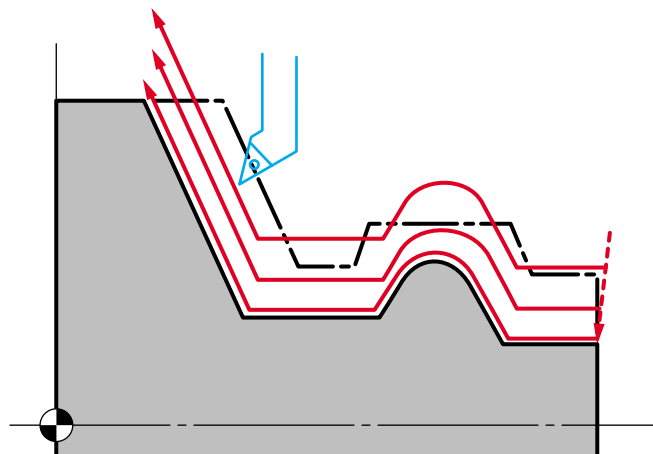
* The numbers assigned to each mode here, (1) to (10), correspond to their descriptions on the following pages.

1) AP Mode I, Longitudinal Cutting Mode (G85 + G81 + G80)



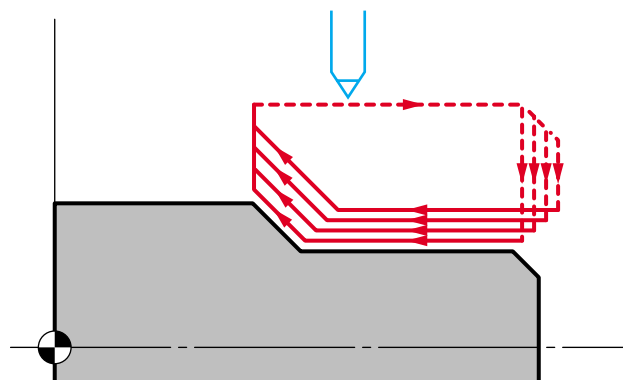
Cutting is executed while shifting the cutting level by the depth of cut. A part program can be created by simply designating the finish contour data.

2) AP Mode II, Longitudinal Cutting Mode (G86 + G81 + G80)

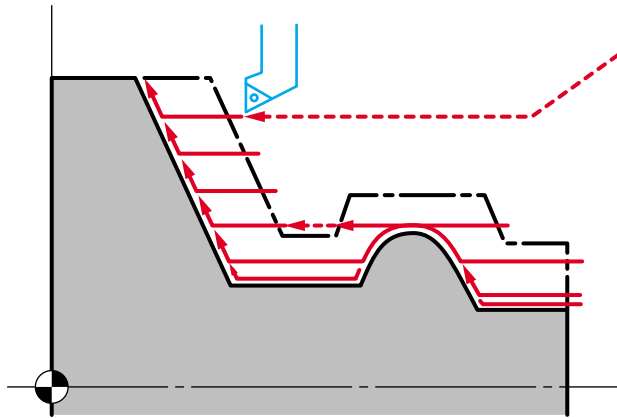


Cutting is executed along the finish contour. Cast-iron and forged workpieces can be cut at a higher speed than in AP Mode I since unnecessary tool motion is reduced.

3) AP Mode III, Longitudinal Cutting Mode (G88 + G81 + G80)

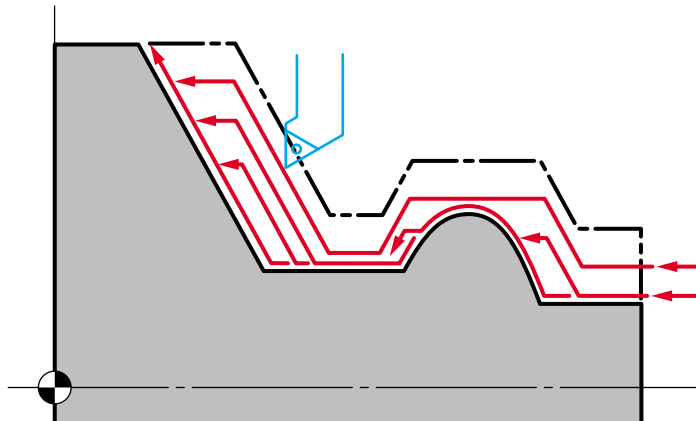


- 4) AP Mode IV, Longitudinal Cutting Mode (G85 + G83 + G81 + G80) (LAP4 only)



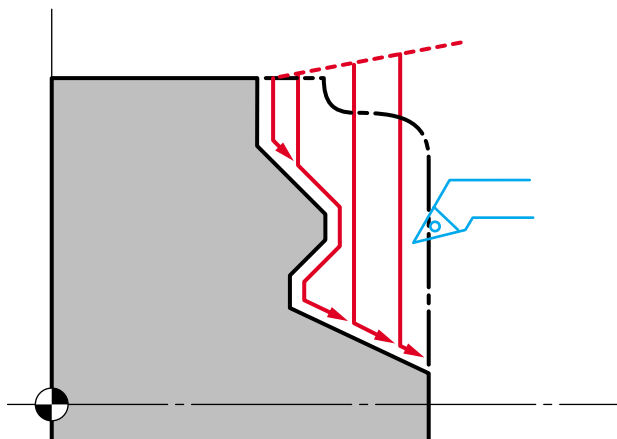
The area between the blank material shape and the finish contour is cut. The cutting tool moves at the rapid feedrate in other areas. The time required for cutting is the shortest possible.

- 5) AP Mode V, Longitudinal Cutting Mode (G86 + G83 + G81 + G80) (LAP4 only)

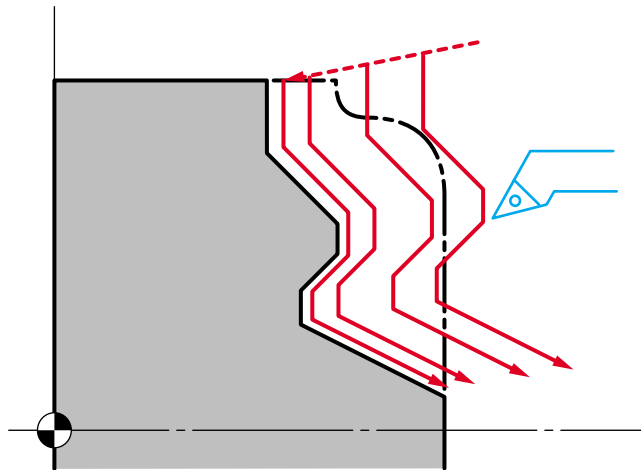


Cutting is carried out along the blank material shape. Since the number of tool impacts against the forged workpiece surface is small in this mode it is effective for untended night time operation where tool life is an important consideration.

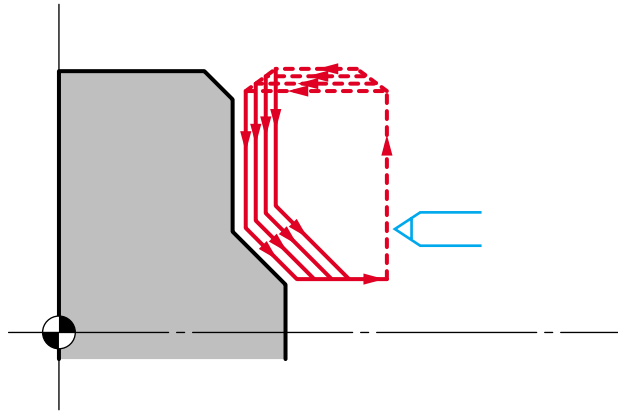
- 6) AP Mode I, Transverse Cutting Mode (G85 + G82 + G80)



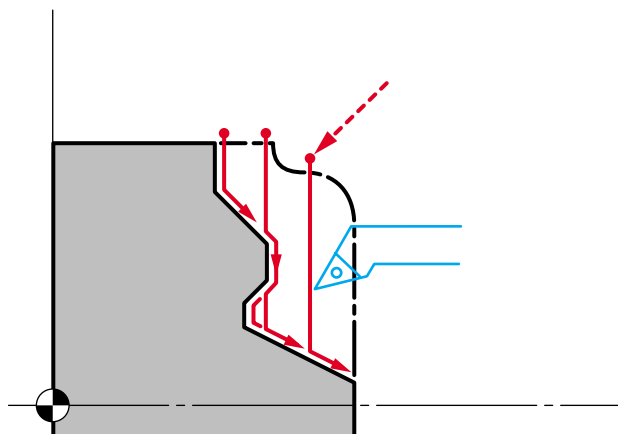
7) AP Mode II, Transverse Cutting Mode (G86 + G82 + G80)



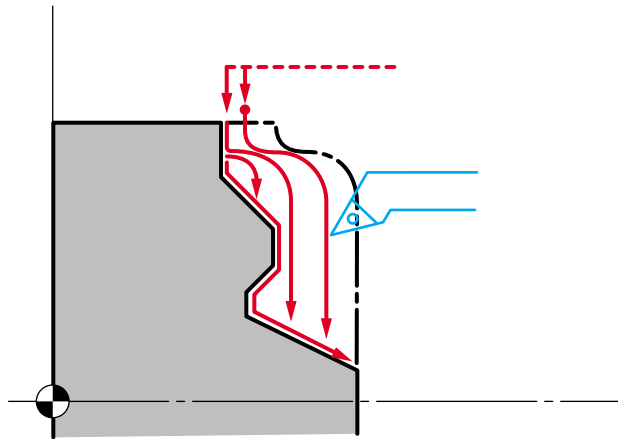
8) AP Mode III, Transverse Cutting Mode (G88 + G82 + G80)



9) AP Mode IV, Transverse Cutting Mode (G85 + G83 + G82 + G80) (LAP4 only)



10) AP Mode V, Transverse Cutting Mode (G86 + G83 + G82 + G80) (LAP4 only)



4. Code and Parameter Lists

The G codes, M codes, and parameters used with LAP are summarized below.

- G Codes

| G Code | Description |
|--------|---|
| G80 | End of contour definition |
| G81 | Start of contour definition, longitudinal |
| G82 | Start of contour definition, transverse |
| G83 | Start of blank shape definition (LAP4 only) |
| G84 | Change of rough turning conditions, bar turning |
| G85 | Bar turning rough turning cycle |
| G86 | Copy turning cycle |
| G87 | Finish turning cycle |
| G88 | Continuous thread cutting cycle |

- M Codes

| M Code | Description |
|--------|---|
| M32 | Straight infeed along thread face (on left face) in G88 |
| M33 | Zigzag infeed in G88 |
| M34 | Straight infeed along thread face (on right face) in G88 |
| M73 | Infeed pattern 1 in G88 |
| M74 | Infeed pattern 2 in G88 |
| M75 | Infeed pattern 3 in G88 |
| M85 | No return to the cutting starting point after the completion of rough turning cycle (LAP4 only) |

SECTION 8 LATHE AUTO-PROGRAMMING FUNCTION (LAP)

- LAP-Related Parameters (1/2)

| Parameter | Description | Default | Data Setting Range |
|-----------|---|--|--------------------|
| D | Depth of cut in rough turning cycle | Alarm | D > 0 |
| DA | Depth of cut after rough turning condition change point A | DA = D | DA > 0 |
| DB | Depth of cut after rough turning condition change point B | DB = DA | DB > 0 |
| FA | Feedrate after rough turning condition change point A | FA = F | FA > 0 |
| FB | Feedrate after rough turning condition change point B | FB = FA | FB > 0 |
| E | Feedrate in rough turning cycle along finish contour | F active at entry of LAP mode | E > 0 |
| XA | X coordinate of rough turning condition change point A | No change of cutting conditions | \|XA\| ≤ 99999.999 |
| XB | X coordinate of rough turning condition change point B | No change of cutting conditions at point B | \|XB\| ≤ 99999.999 |
| ZA | Z coordinate of rough turning condition change point A | No change of cutting conditions | \|ZA\| ≤ 99999.999 |
| ZB | Z coordinate of rough turning condition change point B | No change of cutting conditions at point B | \|ZB\| ≤ 99999.999 |

- LAP-Related Parameters (2/2)

| Parameter | Description | Default | Data Setting Range |
|-----------|--|---------|--------------------|
| U | Stock removal in X-axis direction for finish turning cycle | U = 0 | U ≥ 0 |
| W | Stock removal in Z-axis direction for finish turning cycle | W = 0 | W ≥ 0 |
| H | Thread height in G88 thread cutting cycle | Alarm | H > 0 |
| B | Tip point angle of thread cutting tool in G88 | B = 0 | 0 ≤ B < 180° |

- NC Parameters

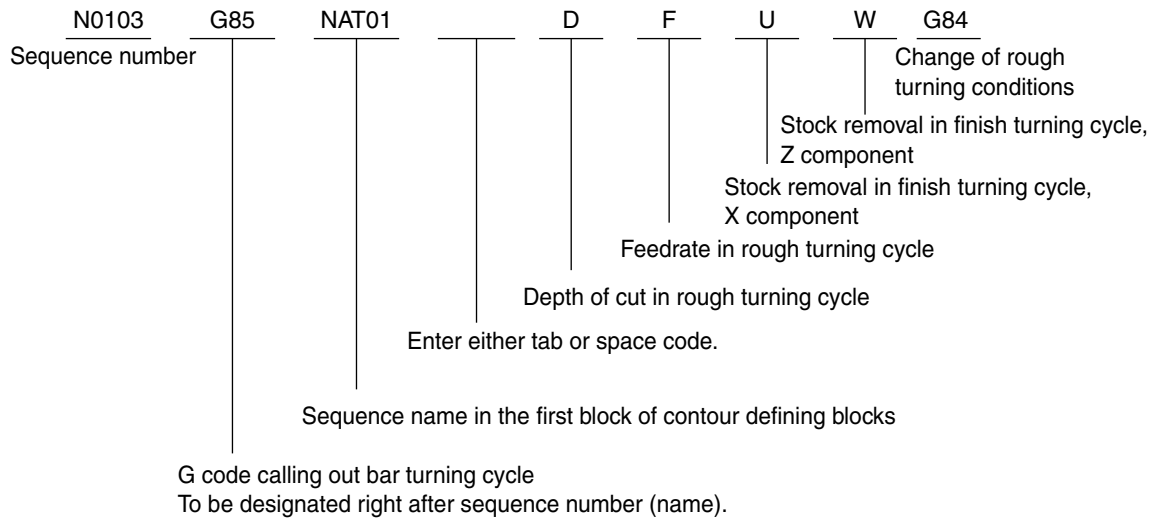
| Parameter | Contents | Initial Value |
|--|--|------------------|
| Optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 1) | Relieving amount in LAP-bar turning (0.001 mm) | 100 |
| | LAP clearance (0.001 mm) (LAP4 only) | 2000 |
| | Infeed pattern in thread cutting cycle | Infeed pattern 3 |

[Supplement]

- The following words must be specified as incremental values.
D, DA, DB, U, W and H
- D, DA, DB, XA, XB, U and H words must be commanded as diameter values.
- In thread cutting cycles using the M73 pattern, "H - U" must be greater than or equal to D:
H - U ≥ D
In the M74 and M75 patterns, it must be positive:
H - U ≥ 0
- When more than one alphabetic character is used in succession, the control interprets the expression as a variable. Therefore, it is necessary to use a delimiter for extended address characters:
DA =, DB =, FA =, FB =, XA =, XB =, ZA = and ZB =

5. Bar Turning Cycle (G85)

[Program format]



[Function]

With the commands above, the control starts searching for the contour definition program beginning with the sequence name NAT01. After assigning the parameter data of D, F, U, W and G84 to NAT01, the control starts the bar turning cycle.

[Supplement]

- Do not designate an S, T, or M code in the G85 block.
- The D word is used to specify depth of cut in the rough turning cycle. When a G84 command indicating change of cutting conditions is designated, the D word is effective up to the point where the change is made, XA and ZA.
A D word must always be designated in the G85 block, with a value greater than "0". Illegal designation will cause an alarm.
- The F word is used to specify the feedrate in a rough turning cycle. When a G84 command indicating change of cutting conditions is designated, the F word is effective up to the point where the change is made, XA and ZA.
If no F word is designated in the G85 block, the feedrate which was effective before the execution of the G85 block is effective.
The F word must be positive. If not, an alarm occurs.
- When a U and/or W word is not designated, U and/or W is assumed to be "0".
U and W words must be positive or zero. If not, an alarm occurs.

6. Change of Cutting Conditions in Bar Turning Cycle (G84)

[Program format]

| | | | | |
|-------|-----|--|--|--|
| N ... | G85 | N ... | DA = | FA = |
| \$ | G84 | XA = (ZA =) | DB = | FB = |
| \$ | | <u>XB = (ZB =)</u> | | |
| \| |  | Specifies the point where cutting conditions are changed. | \| | Feedrate after cutting condition change point |
| | | | | |
| | | | Depth of cut after cutting condition change | |

Indicates that the commands are continuous.
(Must be specified at the beginning of the block.)

[Function]

These commands allow the cutting conditions to be changed from the desired point(s) during a rough turning cycle. If no change in cutting conditions is necessary, do not use them.

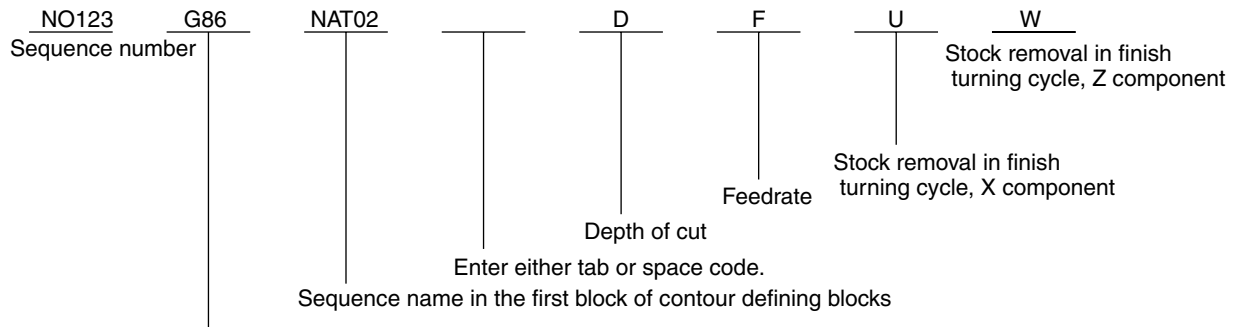
[Details]

These commands must be programmed in the block containing G85, which calls out the bar turning cycle. Since the number of characters in one line will be very large if these commands are specified in the same line, they are written in different lines preceded by "\$", which indicates that the commands in these lines belong to the same block.

- G84 and commands following it must be designated after "N.....G85 N.....".
- For OD turning, the coordinate values of "LAP starting point", "rough turning condition change point A" and "rough turning condition change point B" must be designated so that they become smaller in this order. For ID turning, they must be designated so that they become larger in this order.
- If both cutting condition change points A and B exist when infeed D is executed, the depth of cut and the feedrate designated for XB = (ZB =) are effective.
- If the present position is before XA but the tool path will go beyond XA when a cutting cycle is performed with the depth of cut D from the present position, the cycle is performed with D designated; DA is designated when the present position is on XA.
- In longitudinal cutting, ZA = and ZB = commands must not be designated. In transverse cutting, XA = and XB = commands must not be designated, either.

7. Copy Turning Cycle (G86)

[Program format]



G code calling out copy turning cycle

To be designated right after sequence number (name).

[Function]

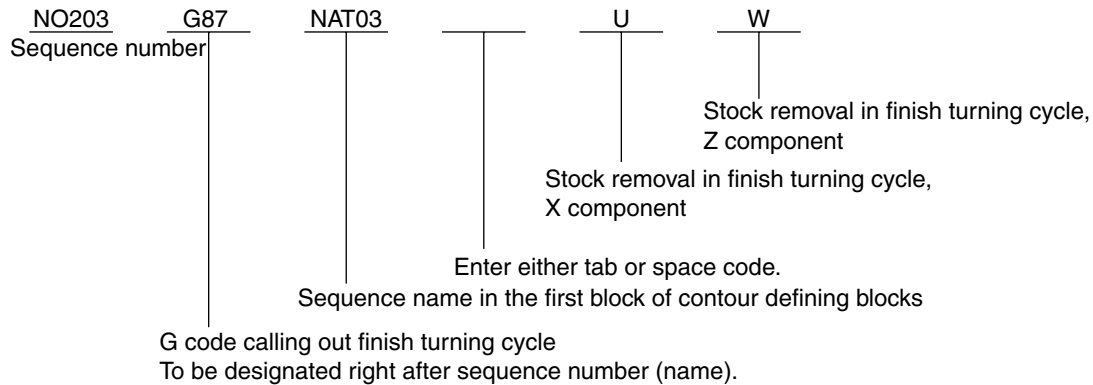
With the commands above, the control starts searching for the contour definition program beginning with the sequence name NAT02. After assigning parameter data of D, F, U and W to NAT02, the control starts the copy turning cycle.

[Details]

- Do not designate an S, T, or M code in the G86 block.
- The D word is used to specify depth of cut in each cycle and must be designated in the G86 block without fail. The D word value must be positive. If not, an alarm results.
- The F word specifies the feedrate for the blocks until an E word is designated in the contour definition program.
If no F word is designated in the G86 block, the feedrate which was effective before the execution of the G86 block is effective.
The F word must be positive. If not, an alarm occurs.
- When no U and/or W word is designated, U and/or W is assumed to be "0".
- U and W words must be positive or zero. If not, an alarm occurs.

8. Finish Turning Cycle (G87)

[Program format]



[Function]

With the commands above, the control starts searching for the contour definition program beginning with the sequence name NAT03. After assigning the parameter data of U and W to NAT03, the control starts the finish turning cycle.

[Details]

- Do not designate an S, T, or M code in the G87 block.
- The feedrate designated in the contour definition program is the effective one. If no F word is designated in the contour definition program, the feedrate which was effective before this block becomes effective.
- When no U and/or W word is designated, U and/or W are/is assumed to be "0". U and W words must be positive or zero. If not, an alarm occurs.

9. Continuous Thread Cutting Cycle (G88)

[Program format]

| N0143 | G88 | NAT04 | | D | H | B | U | W | M32 (M33, M34) | M73 (M74, M75) |
|-----------------|-----|-------|--|---|---|---|---|---|----------------|---|
| Sequence number | | | | | | | | | Cutting mode | Cutting mode |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | Stock removal in finishing cycle, Z component |
| | | | | | | | | | | Stock removal in finishing cycle, X component |
| | | | | | | | | | | Tip point angle of thread cutting tool |
| | | | | | | | | | | Height of thread to be cut |
| | | | | | | | | | | Depth of cut |
| | | | | | | | | | | Enter either tab or space code. |
| | | | | | | | | | | Sequence name in the first block of contour defining blocks |
| | | | | | | | | | | G code calling for continuous thread cutting cycle |
| | | | | | | | | | | To be designated right after sequence number (name). |

[Function]

With the commands above, the control starts searching for the contour definition program beginning with sequence name NAT04. After assigning the parameter data of D, H, B, U, W, M32 (M33, M34) and M73 (M74, M75) to NAT04, the control starts the thread cycle.

[Details]

- Do not designate an S, T, or M code in the G88 block.
- The D word is used to specify the depth of cut in the first thread cutting cycle. The depth of cut in each thread cutting cycle after that varies according to the selected infeed pattern (M73, M74, M75). A D word must be designated in the G85 block without fail with a value greater than 0. Illegal designation will cause an alarm.
- The H word must have a positive value and must be specified in the G88 block without fail. If the numerical data of the D word is not positive, or if it is omitted, an alarm occurs. The H value must be greater than the U and/or W value. If not, an alarm occurs.
- The B word specifying the tip point angle of thread cutting tool must have a value within the following range:
 $0^\circ \leq B \leq 180^\circ$
 When no B word is designated, it is assumed to be "0".
- M32, M33, and M34 are used to select the cutting mode.
 M32 : Straight infeed along thread face (on left face)
 M33 : Zigzag in feed in G88
 M34 : Straight infeed along thread (on right side)
 When none of M32, M33 and M34 is designated, the control selects M32.
- M73, M74 and M75 are used to select infeed pattern. When no such M code is present, the M73 pattern is automatically selected. In the M73 pattern, "H - U" must be greater than or equal to "D".
 $H - U \geq D$
 If not, an alarm occurs.

10. AP Modes

AP modes I through V are explained here. You are advised to refer also to the "precautions" in section 10-6.

10-1. AP Mode I (Bar Turning)

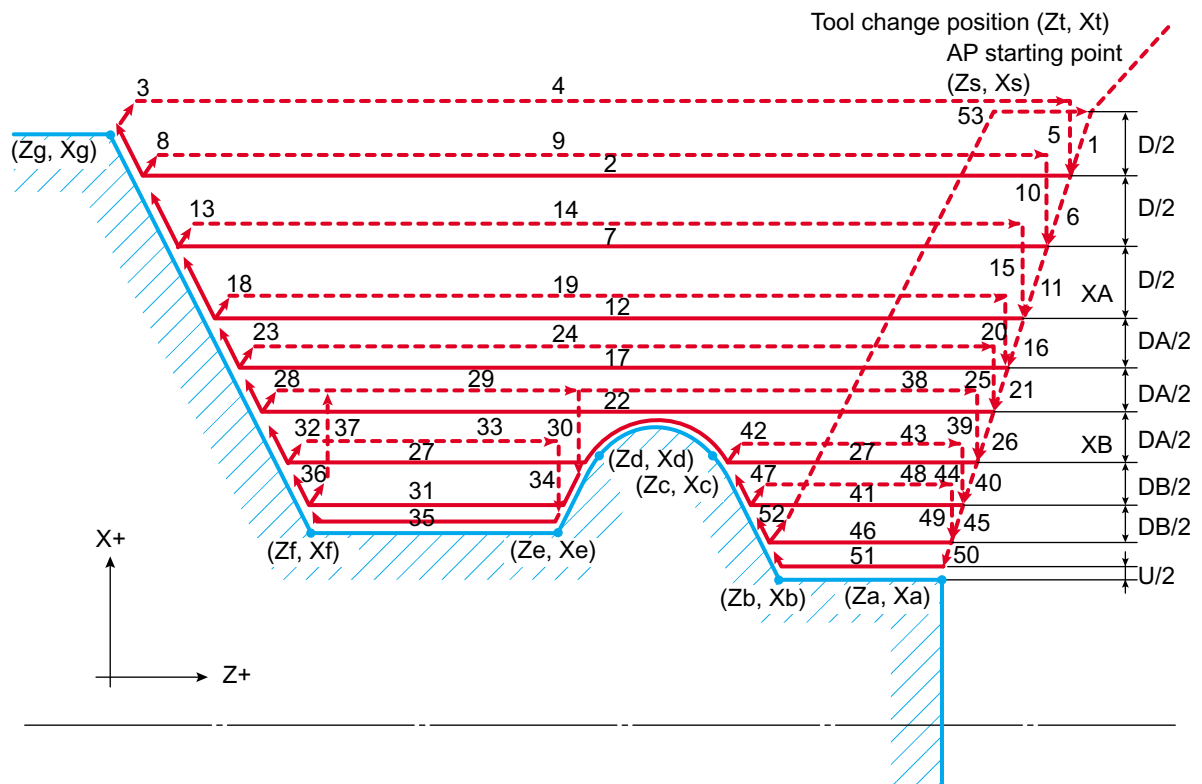
[Function]

In AP mode I, the area surrounded by the AP starting points and the contour defined by the contour definition program starting with G81 (or G82) is cut while shifting the cutting level by the depth of cut designated by D.

This mode is effective for normal turning, for example bar turning.

Since both rough turning and finish turning can be executed using the same contour definition program when stock removal is designated using the U (X-axis direction) or W (Z-axis direction) command, the program length can be reduced.

10-1-1. Tool Path and Program - Longitudinal Cutting



SECTION 8 LATHE AUTO-PROGRAMMING FUNCTION (LAP)

Contour definition

| | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|----|----|----|----|----|----|--|
| NAT01 | G81 | | | | | | | | Start of longitudinal contour definition G code |
| N0001 | G00 | Xa | Za | | | | | |] Finish contour definition blocks |
| N0002 | G01 | Xb | Zb | | Fb | Sb | Eb | | |
| N0003 | | Xc | Zc | | : | : | : | | |
| N0004 | G03 | Xd | Zd | ld | Kd | Fd | Sd | Ed | |
| N0005 | G01 | Xe | Ze | | Fe | Se | Ee | | |
| N0006 | | Xf | Zf | | : | : | : | | |
| N0007 | | Xg | Zg | | Fg | Sg | Eg | | |
| N0008 | G80 | | | | | | | | |

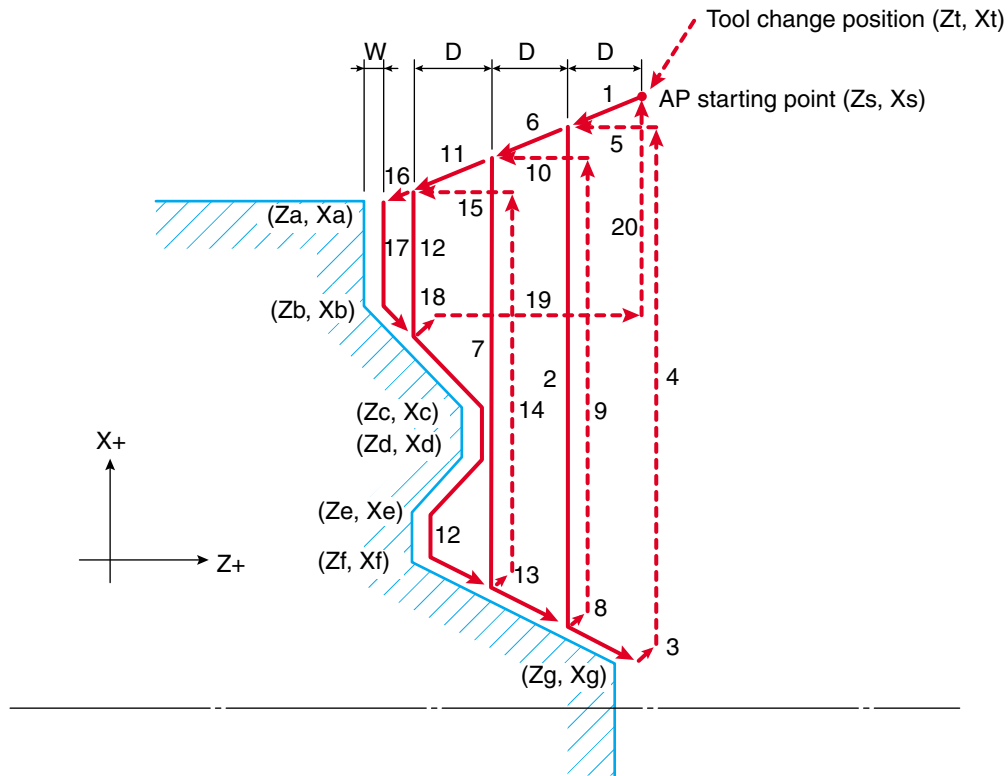
Rough Turning Cycle..... End of contour definition G code

| | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|------|------|-----|---|-----|-------|---|
| N0101 | G00 | Xt | Zt | | | | | | Tool change position |
| N0102 | | Xs | Zs | | STM | | | | Starting point of AP, S, T, and M for rough turning cycle |
| N0103 | G85 | NAT01 | | D | U | W | M85 | ..... | Calls for rough turning cycle |
| \$ | G84 | XA = | DA = | FA = | F | | | | Continued line: Cutting condition change point XA |
| \$ | | XB = | DB = | FB = | | | | | Continued line: Cutting condition change point XB |

Finish Turning Cycle

| | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|----|--|-----|--|--|--|--------------------------------------|
| N0201 | G00 | Xt | Zt | | | | | | Tool change position |
| N0202 | | | | | STM | | | | S, T, and M for finish turning cycle |
| N0203 | G87 | NAT01 | | | | | | | Calls for finish turning cycle |

10-1-2. Tool Path and Program - Transverse Cutting



Contour definition

| | | | |
|-------|-----|----------------|--|
| N001 | G82 | ..... | Start of transverse contour definition G code |
| N0011 | G01 | Xa Za | |
| N0012 | | Xb Zb Fb Sb Eb |] Finish contour definition blocks |
| N0013 | | Xc Zc : : : | |
| N0014 | | Xd Zd Fd Sd Ed | |
| N0015 | | Xe Ze Fe Se Ee | |
| N0016 | | Xf Zf : : : | |
| N0017 | | Xg Zg Fg Sg Eg | |
| N0018 | G80 | ..... | End of contour definition G code |

Rough Turning Cycle

| | | | |
|-------|-----|--------------------------|---|
| | | Xt Zt | Tool change position |
| N0111 | G00 | Xs Zs STM | Starting point of AP, S, T, and M for rough turning cycle |
| N0112 | G85 | NAT10 D F U W | Calls for rough turning cycle |
| N0113 | G84 | ZA = DA = FA = M85 | Continued line: Cutting condition change point ZA |
| \$ | | ZB = DB = FB = | Continued line: Cutting condition change point ZB |
| \$ | | | |

Finish Turning Cycle

| | | | |
|-------|-----|-------------|--|
| N0211 | G00 | Xt Zt | Tool change position |
| N0212 | | | STM S, T, and M for finish turning cycle |
| N0213 | G87 | NAT10 | Calls for finish turning cycle |

10-1-3. Outline of Bar Turning Cycle

(1) Rough turning cycle in the longitudinal direction (example A)

- 1) The commands in block N0101 position the tool at the tool change point.
- 2) With the commands in block N0102, the S, T, and M commands for the rough turning cycle are selected, then the axes are positioned at the LAP starting point.
When no S, T, or M command is designated in this block, those selected in the previous block(s) are effective.
- 3) The NAT01 command in block N0103 causes the control to search for the program assigned the program name NAT01. A rough turning cycle in the bar turning mode is performed with this program.
The cutting conditions for the rough turning cycle are also specified in the same block.

D : Depth of cut
 F : Feedrate
 U : X component of stock removal in finish turning cycle
 W : Z component of stock removal in finish turning cycle

To change the cutting conditions during the rough turning cycle, designate the following commands with G84.

XA : X coordinate of cutting condition change point A
 DA : Depth of cut after point A
 FA : Feedrate after point A

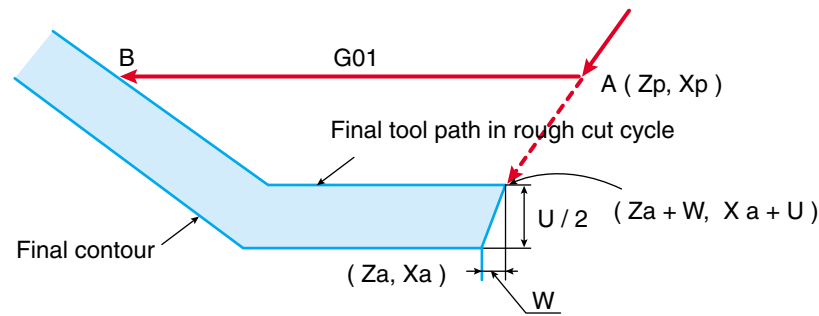
To change the cutting conditions again, designate the following commands.

XB : X coordinate of cutting condition change point B
 DB : Depth of cut after point B
 FB : Feedrate after point B

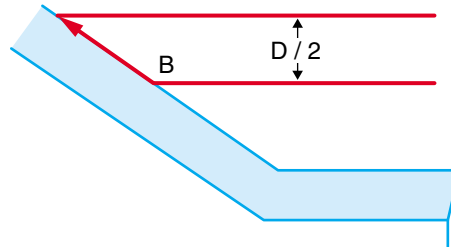
- Cutting condition change points must be programmed in the block containing G85. For clear programming, commands relating to such points are programmed in different lines, each line preceded by the \$ character which indicates that the line is a continuation of the previous one.
 - When no F word is designated in this block, the feedrate commanded last is effective.
 - The point data of the cutting condition change points must become smaller in the following order: AP starting point, XA, then XB, when performing OD turning. For ID turning, they must become larger in this same order.
- 4) Upon reaching the commands in block N0001, the control calculates the intersection point of two straight lines: the line parallel to the Z-axis running at "Xs-D/2" and the one passing through the two points (Xs, Zs) and (Xa + U, Za + W). Then, the axes are positioned at the calculated point A (Xp, Zp).
Positioning is performed at the rapid feedrate when G00 is designated in the first block of the contour definition blocks, and it is performed at a cutting feedrate when G01 is designated in the first block of the contour definition blocks.
Select the AP starting point (Xs, Zs) with respect to the coordinated point (Xa, Za) to meet the following requirements:
 - Xs < Xa for ID cutting
 - Xs > Xa for OD cutting
 If the finish allowance U is made so large that "Xa + U" falls outside "Xs" with respect to the workpiece, an alarm results.

SECTION 8 LATHE AUTO-PROGRAMMING FUNCTION (LAP)

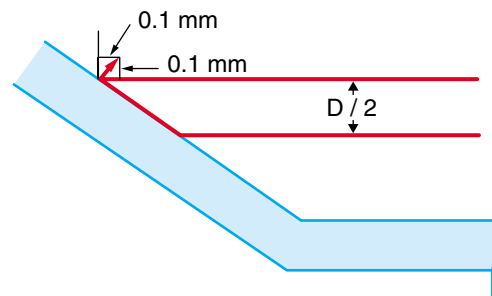
- 5) Cutting is performed in the G01 mode up to point B where the straight line parallel to the Z-axis and passing through point A intersects the final contour of the rough turning cycle. The feedrate in this cutting cycle is the one selected by the F word when the rough turning cycle was called out.



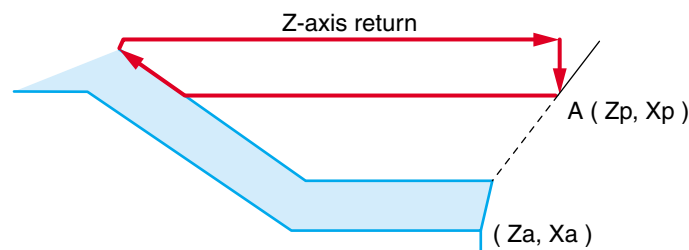
- 6) After point B has been reached, the final contour of the rough turning cycle is cut up to the point whose X coordinate is $X_b + D$. If G80, indicating the end of contour definition, is encountered before this point is reached, the final rough turning contour is cut up to the point specified in the block preceding the G80 block. The feedrate in this cut is as specified by E, which is designated in a contour definition program. If no E word is designated in the corresponding contour definition program, the one designated last becomes effective. When an E word has not been specified, the feedrate specified when calling out the rough turning cycle becomes active.



- 7) After the completion of the cutting explained in 6., the cutting tool is relieved from the workpiece in the direction opposite the infeed direction along the X-axis, and toward Z_s along the Z-axis, by 0.1 mm on each axis (diameter value in the case of the X-axis). The relief amount is set at Relieving amount in LAP-BAR turning of optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 1) in units of μm .

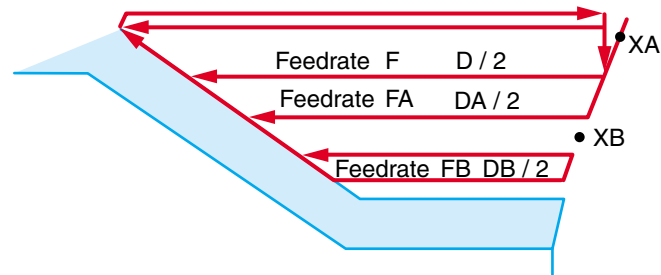


- 8) This completes the final rough turning cycle. The Z-axis returns to Z_p as determined in step 4. at the rapid feedrate and then the X axis returns to X_p .

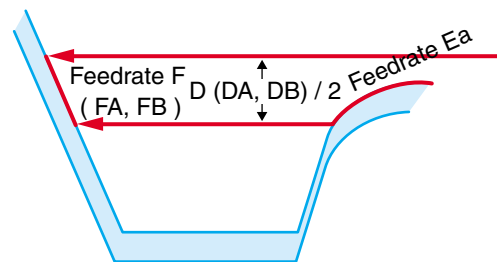


SECTION 8 LATHE AUTO-PROGRAMMING FUNCTION (LAP)

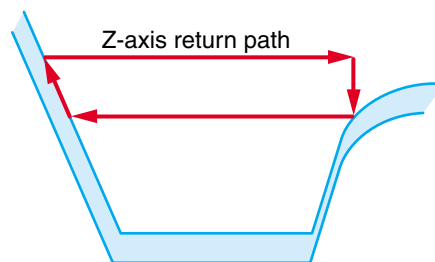
- 9) Steps 4. through 8. are repeated up to the cutting condition change point. After that point, cutting is continued with the depth of cut (D) and feedrate (F) changed.



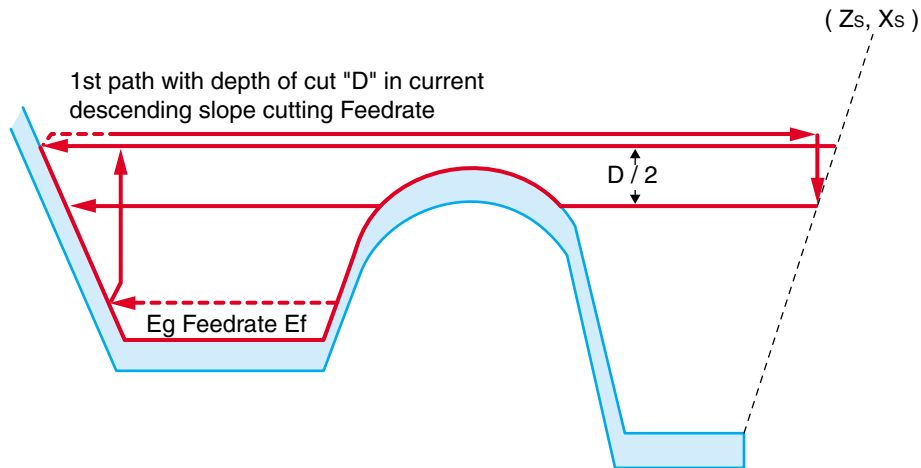
- 10) If the cutting in step 6. is along a descending slope, and the contour to be cut is below the cutting point (X_p), first the contour is cut until the programmed depth of cut is reached and then cutting is performed parallel to the Z-axis in the G01 mode up to the point where this path parallel to the Z-axis intersects the final rough turning contour. Cutting along the parallel line is performed at the feedrate specified by an F word (FA/FB).



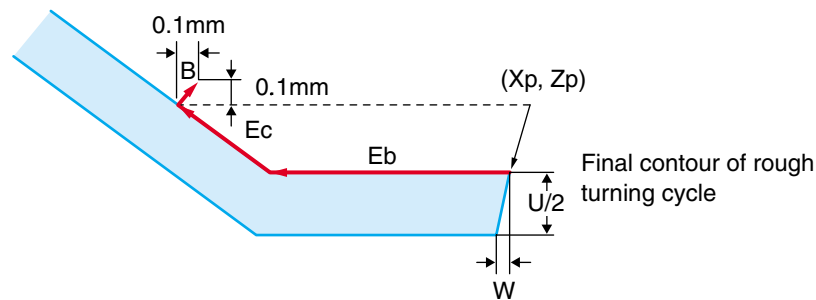
- 11) Subsequently, steps 6. and 7. are repeated. The Z-axis then returns to the point where cutting along the X-axis was started in the G01 mode in step 10. After the completion of Z-axis positioning, the X-axis is positioned at the point where the previous cutting cycle was started.



- 12) Steps 10. and 11. are repeated until the most recessed section along the X-axis has been cut. After that, both the X- and Z-axes retract by 0.1 mm (radius value for the X-axis), and the X-axis is positioned at the coordinate value for "first cutting level D along the descending slope + 0.2 mm". The Z-axis returns to the point which has the same coordinate value as the starting point D of the cutting cycle of the descending slope + 0.2 mm". The Z-axis returns to the point which has the same coordinate value as the starting point of the cutting cycle of the descending slope with depth of cut D. The X-axis is then positioned at that point.



- 13) The steps described above are repeated until the X-axis reaches the level where a tool path is generated below the "Xa + U" level. When this level is reached, the final rough turning is carried out along the contour up to point B. The feedrate for cutting along the final rough cutting contour is the one specified by the E word.

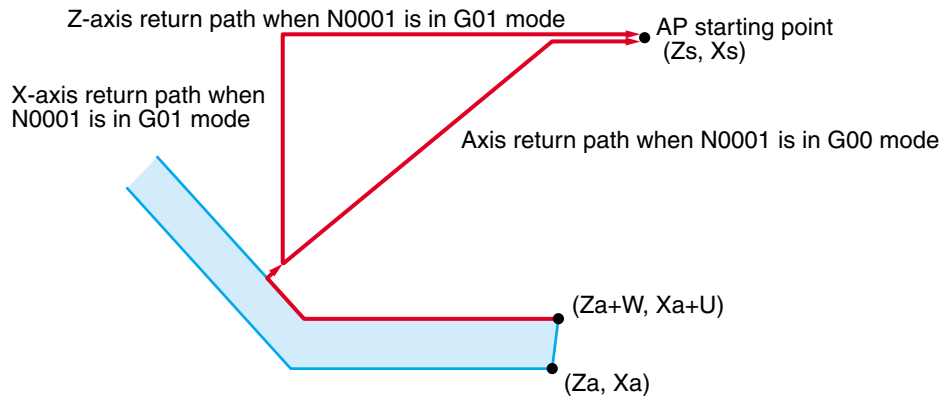


After the completion of the final rough turning step, the X- and Z-axes are relieved by 0.1 mm (diameter value for the X-axis). The relief amount is set at Relieving amount in LAP-BAR turning of optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 1).

14) On completion of step 13., the axes return to the AP starting point (X_s, Z_s).

There are two patterns of axis return motion:

- The two axes return to the AP starting point simultaneously when G00 is designated in the first block of the contour definition program (the block following the one containing either G81 or G82).
- When G01 is designated in the block indicated above, positioning on the X-axis is done first, then the Z-axis returns to the AP starting point.



This completes the rough turning cycle.

(2) Finish bar turning cycle - longitudinal cutting (example A)

- 15) The commands in block N0201 position the axes at the tool change position.
- 16) With the commands in block N0202, the S, T, and M commands for the finish turning cycle are selected.
- 17) The NAT01 command in block N0203 causes the control to search for the program assigned the program name NAT01. The finish bar turning cycle is performed with this program.
- 18) The finish turning cycle is performed on the basis of the data designated in the contour definition program under the cutting conditions specified for the finish turning cycle.
- 19) After the finish turning cycle is completed, the commands in the block following N0203 are executed.

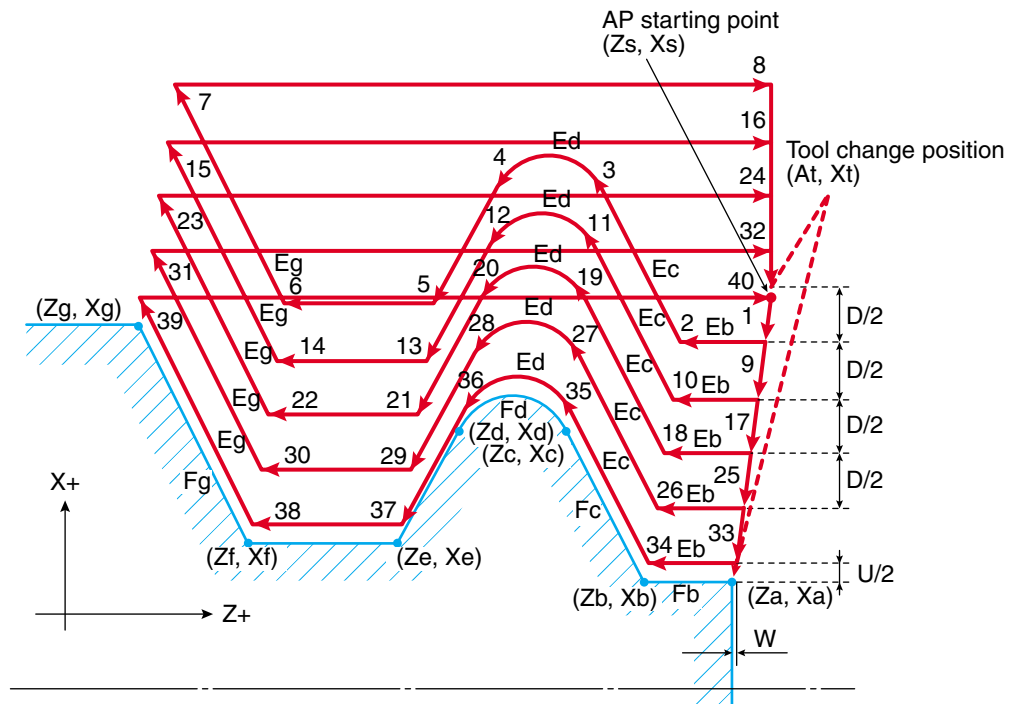
10-2. AP Mode II (Copy Turning)

[Function]

In AP Mode II, the finish contour designated by the contour definition program is shifted in a parallel manner up to the AP starting point. Cutting is executed along the shifted finish contour while shifting the cutting level in increments of depth of cut D .

When this mode is used for cutting a workpiece with a constant cutting depth, for example cast iron or forged workpieces, the cutting speed can be higher than in AP Mode I.

10-2-1. Tool Path and Program - Longitudinal Cutting



SECTION 8 LATHE AUTO-PROGRAMMING FUNCTION (LAP)

Contour Definition

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|----|----|----|----|----|----|--|---|
| NAT20 | G81 | ..... |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Start of longitudinal contour definition G code |
| N0021 | G01 | Xa | Za | | | | | | | |
| N0022 | | Xb | Zb | | | Fb | Sb | Eb | | |
| N0023 | | Xc | Zc | | | : | : | : | | |
| N0024 | G03 | Xd | Zd | Id | Kd | Fd | Sd | Ed | | Finish contour definition blocks |
| N0025 | G01 | Xe | Ze | | | Fe | Se | Ee | | |
| N0026 | | Xf | Zf | | | : | : | : | | |
| N0027 | | Xg | Zg | | | Fg | Sg | Eg | | |
| N0028 | G80 | ..... |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | End of contour definition G code |

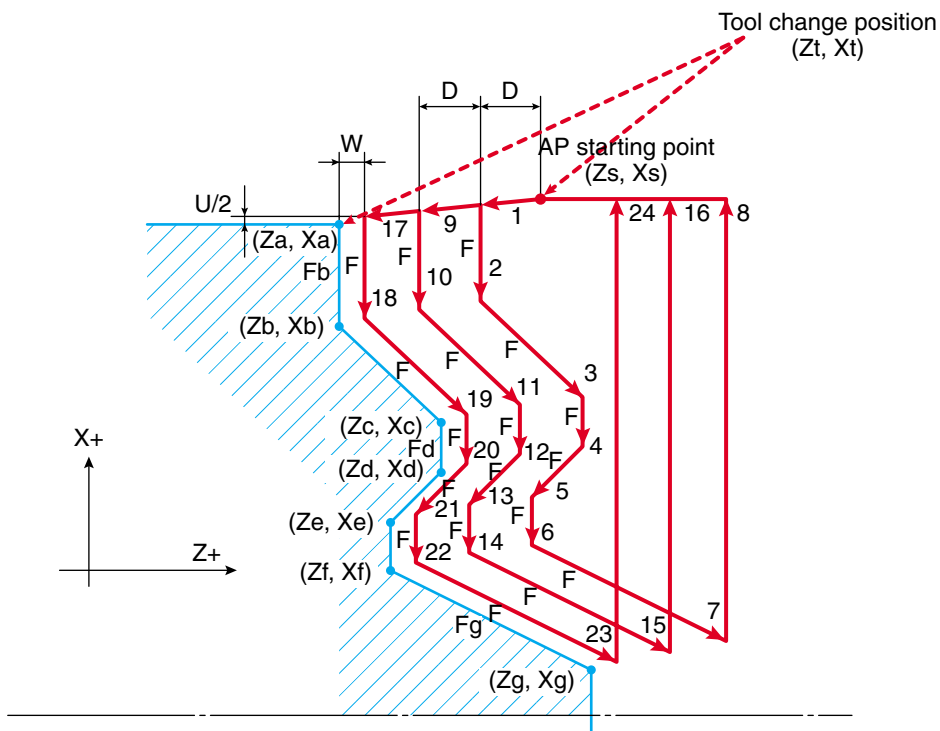
Rough Turning Cycle

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|----|---|---|---|---|--------|-----|---|
| N0121 | G00 | Xt | Zt | | | | | | | Tool change position |
| N0122 | | Xs | Zs | | | | | | STM | Starting point of AP, S, T, and M for rough turning cycle |
| N0123 | G86 | NAT20 | | D | F | U | W | M85... | | Calls for rough turning cycle |

Finish Turning Cycle

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|-------|--|--|-----|--|--|--------------------------------------|
| N0221 | G00 | Xt | Zt | ..... |  |  |  |  |  | Tool change position |
| N0222 | | | | | | | STM | | | S, T, and M for finish turning cycle |
| N0223 | G87 | NAT20 | ..... |  |  |  |  |  |  | Calls for finish turning cycle |

10-2-2. Tool Path and Program - Transverse Cutting



Contour Definition

| | | | |
|-------|-----|----------------|---|
| NAT30 | G82 | ..... | Start of transverse contour definition G code |
| N0031 | G01 | Xa Za | |
| N0032 | | Xb Zb Fb Sb Eb |] Finish contour definition blocks |
| N0033 | | Xc Zc : : : | |
| N0034 | | Xd Zd Fd Sd Ed | |
| N0035 | | Xe Ze Fe Se Ee | |
| N0036 | | Xf Zf : : : | |
| N0037 | | Xg Zg Fg Sg Eg | |
| N0038 | G80 | ..... | End of contour definition G code |

Rough Turning Cycle

| | | | |
|-------|-----|----------------------|---|
| N0131 | G00 | Xt Zt | Tool change position |
| N0132 | | Xs Zs STM | Starting point of AP, S, T, and M for rough turning cycle |
| N0133 | G86 | NAT30 D F U W M85... | Calls for rough turning cycle |

Finish Turning Cycle

| | | | |
|-------|-----|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| N0231 | G00 | Xt Zt | Tool change position |
| N0232 | | STM | S, T, and M for finish turning cycle |
| N0233 | G87 | NAT30 | Calls for finish turning cycle |

10-2-3. Outline of Copy Turning Cycle

(1) Rough turning cycle in the longitudinal direction (example A)

- 1) The commands in block N0121 position the axes at the tool change position.
- 2) With the commands in block N0122, S, T, and M commands for the rough turning cycle are selected, then the axes are positioned at the AP starting point.
When no S, T, or M command is specified in this block, those selected in the preceding block(s) are effective.
- 3) The NAT20 command in block N0103 causes the control to search for the program assigned the program name NAT20. A rough turning cycle in the copy turning mode is performed with this program.
The cutting conditions for the rough turning cycle are also specified in the same block.

D : Depth of cut

U : X component of stock removal in finish turning cycle

W : Z component of stock removal in finish turning cycle

Also program an F word if required. When no F word is designated in the contour definition program, the feedrate commanded last becomes effective.

- 4) Upon reaching the commands in block N0201 in the contour definition program, the control calculates the intersection point of two straight lines: the line parallel to the Z-axis running at " $X_s - D/2$ " and the one passing through the two points (X_s, Z_s) and $(X_a + U, Z_a + W)$. Then the axes are positioned at the calculated point A (X_p, Z_p) .

Along with the positioning, the control calculates the distance (XOFF, ZOFF) between these two points (X_p, Z_p) and $(X_a + U, Z_a + W)$.

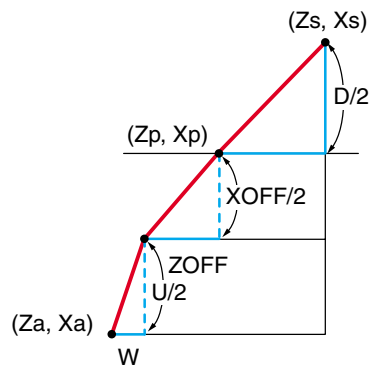
$$X_p = X_s - D$$

$$Z_p = Z_a + W + (Z_s - Z_a - W) (1 - D / (X_s - X_a - U))$$

$$XOFF = X_p - (X_a + U)$$

$$ZOFF = Z_p - (Z_a + W)$$

- If the value of U or W is too large and the infeed direction is reversed, an alarm occurs.

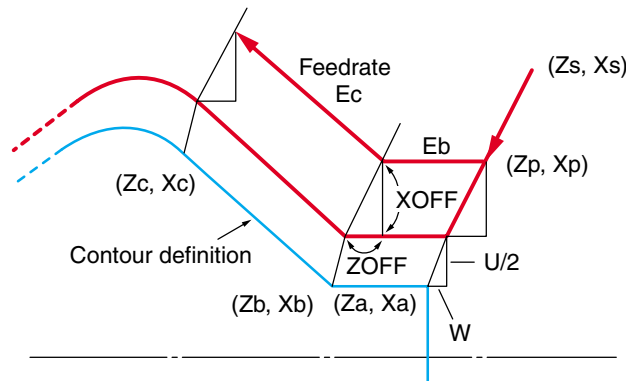


SECTION 8 LATHE AUTO-PROGRAMMING FUNCTION (LAP)

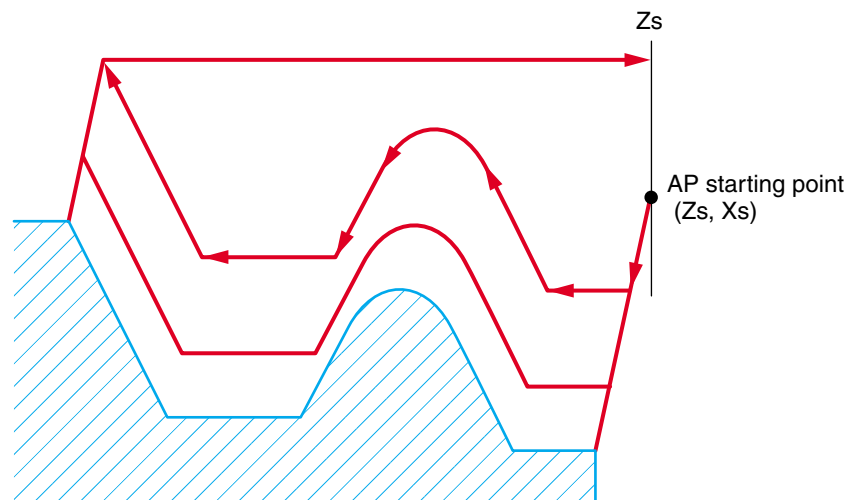
- 5) Cutting is started from (X_p, Z_p) to the target point (*1) calculated by the OSP.

*1: The target point is the point obtained by offsetting the points commanded in the contour definition by $XOFF + U + ZOFF + W$, parallel to the respective axis directions.

Cutting is performed at the feedrate specified by an E word in each of the contour defining blocks.



- 6) Step 5. is repeated until contour definition ends (G80 active).
The Z-axis then returns to the AP starting point coordinate, Z_s .



- 7) This completes the first rough cutting cycle. The new XOFF and ZOFF are calculated and steps 4. through 6. are repeated.

The positions for the Nth cycle are calculated as follows.

$$\left. \begin{aligned} X_p &= X_s - N \times D \\ Z_p &= Z_a + W + (Z_s - Z_a - W) \\ &\quad (1 - N \times D / (X_s - X_a - U)) \end{aligned} \right\} \text{Longitudinal direction}$$

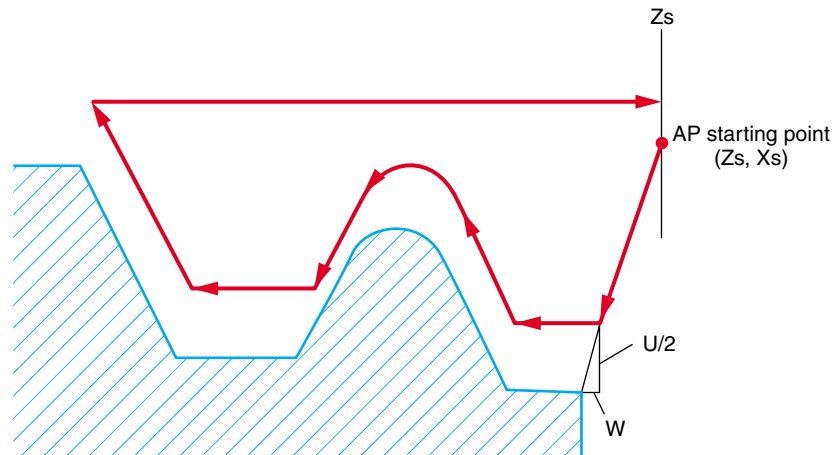
$$\left. \begin{aligned} X_p &= X_a + U + (X_s - X_a - U) \\ &\quad (1 - N \times D / (Z_s - Z_a - W)) \end{aligned} \right\} \text{Transverse direction}$$

$$Z_p = Z_s - N \times D$$

$$XOFF = X_p - (X_a + U)$$

$$ZOFF = Z_p - (Z_a + W)$$

- 8) The steps indicated above are repeated until the infeed point reaches or exceeds " $X_a + U$ ". At the point where this happens, the control takes (XOFF, ZOFF) to be (0, 0) and cuts along a path offset from the specified contour by the amount (U, W).
At the end of contour definition, the Z-axis moves to the same Z coordinate position as the AP starting point, then the X-axis moves to the AP starting point.



- 9) This completes the rough turning cycle and the commands in the block following N0123 are executed.

(2) Finish cut cycle - longitudinal cutting (example A)

- 10) The commands in block N0221 position the axes at the tool change position.
- 11) With the commands in block N0222, the S, T, and M commands for the finish turning cycle are selected.
- 12) The NAT20 command in block N0223 causes the control to search for the program assigned the program name NAT20. The finish bar turning cycle is performed with this program.
- 13) The finish turning cycle is performed on the basis of the data designated in the contour definition program under the cutting conditions specified for the finish cut cycle.
- 14) After the finish turning cycle is completed, the commands in the block following N0223 are executed.

10-3. AP Mode III (Continuous Thread Cutting Cycle)

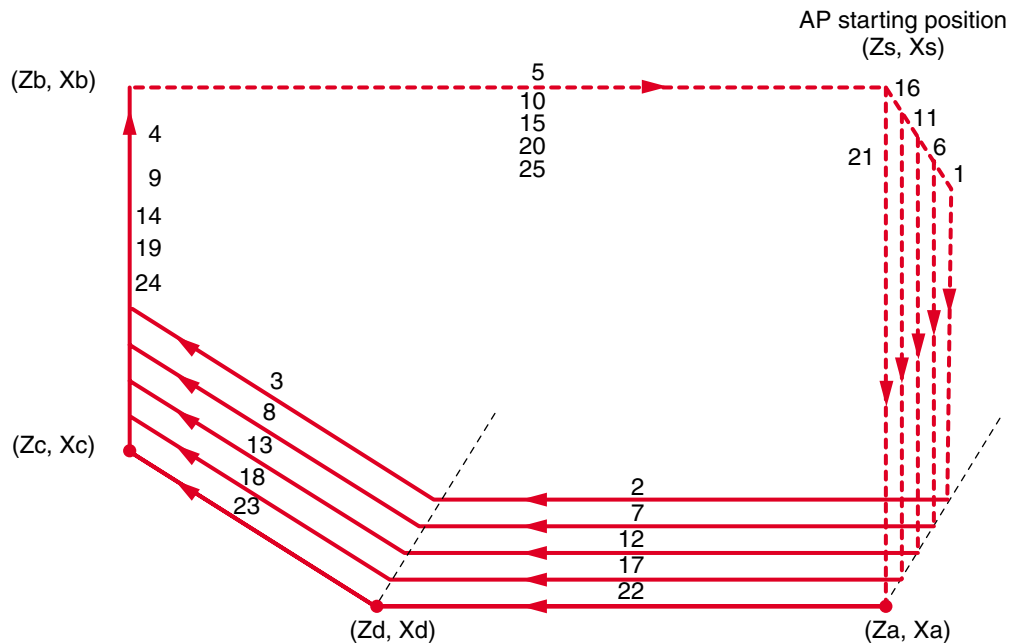
[Function]

In AP Mode III, thread cutting is executed along the contour designated by the contour definition program that starts with G61 (or G82).

The thread cutting mode (M32, M33, or M34) and the infeed pattern (M73, M74, or M75) can be selected by designating the corresponding M code.

(1) Tool Path and Program - Longitudinal Cutting

Designate the tool path for continuous thread cutting with G34, G35, G112 and G113 (G112 and G113 cannot be designated unless the optional circular thread cutting function is selected.)



Contour definition

```

NAT40 G81 ..... Longitudinal contour definition
N0401 G00 Xa Za
N0402 G34 Xb Zb E F J
N0403 Xc Zc
N0404 G01 Xd Zd
N0405 G80 ..... End of contour definition

```

Programming Calling for Thread Cutting Cycle

```

N0141 G00 S T M
N0142 Xs Zs
N0143 G88 NAT40 M32(M33, M34) M73(M74, M75) B H D U

```


(2) Outline of Continuous Thread Cutting Cycle in the Longitudinal Direction

- 1) The commands in block N0141 select the S, T, and M commands for thread cutting.
- 2) The commands in block N0142 position the axes at the AP starting point (Xs, Zs).
- 3) The B, H, D, and U words in block N0143 specify the data necessary for the thread cutting cycle.

B : Tip point angle of thread cutting tool

H : Height of thread to be cut

D : Depth of cut

U : Stock removal for finish cut

Two types of M codes are used to select the thread cutting mode and the tool infeed pattern.

G88 NAT40 calls out the contour definition program and executes the required thread cutting cycle (AP Mode III).

For details of the thread cutting cycle, refer to SECTION 7, 5-4 "M Codes Specifying Thread Cutting Mode and Infeed Pattern".

(3) End Face Thread Cutting Cycle

For thread cutting on an end face, use G80 to G82 to define the thread contour, as in AP Modes I and II. Program M27, which selects the X-axis as the thread lead reference axis in the G34/G35/G112/G113 block. Stock removal is specified by a W word instead of a U word.

10-4. AP Mode IV (High-speed Bar Turning Cycle)

[Function]

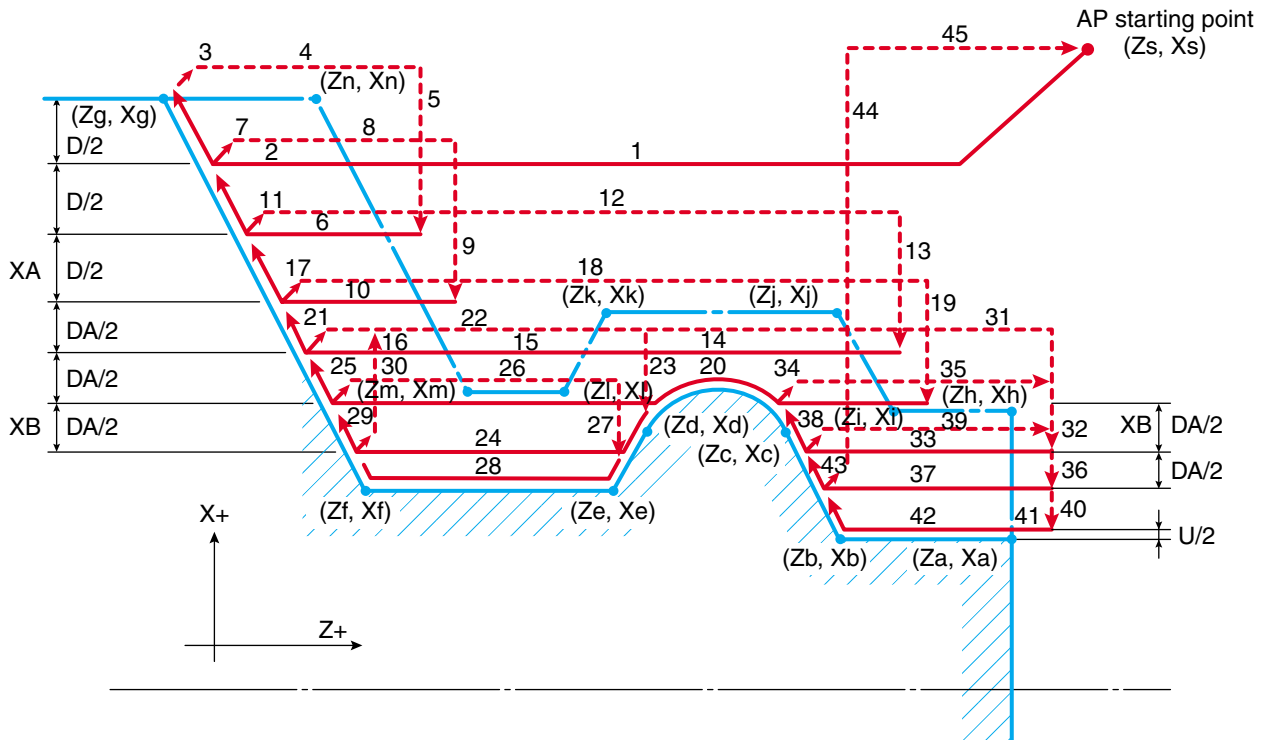
In the AP Mode IV the blank material shape data is input in addition to the finish contour shape data.

The blank material shape is programmed in the blocks starting with G83.

The area between the blank material shape and the finish contour is cut by shifting the cutting level by depth of cut D.

The OSP recognizes where blank material will be encountered, and the cutting tool is fed at the rapid feedrate in areas where there is no blank material and cutting is not required. This eliminates the cutting feed in areas that do not need to be cut, which occurs with AP Mode I, and allows high-speed cutting.

10-4-1. Tool Path and Program - Longitudinal Cutting



SECTION 8 LATHE AUTO-PROGRAMMING FUNCTION (LAP)

Contour Definition

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|----|--|--|--|--|--|--|---|
| NAT60 | G83 | | | | | | | | | 1) Blank material shape definition start G code |
| N0601 | G01 | Xh | Zh | | | | | | |] 2) Blank material shape definition blocks |
| N0602 | | Xi | Zi | | | | | | | |
| N0603 | | Xj | Zj | | | | | | | |
| N0604 | | Xk | Zk | | | | | | | |
| N0605 | | Xl | Zl | | | | | | | |
| N0606 | | Xm | Zm | | | | | | | |
| N0607 | | Xn | Zn | | | | | | | |
| N0608 | G81 | | | | | | | | | 3) Finish contour definition start G code |

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|----|----|----|----|----|---|--|---------------------------------------|
| N0609 | G01 | Xa | Za | | | | | | |] 4) Finish contour definition blocks |
| N0610 | | Xb | Zb | | Fb | Sb | Eb | | | |
| N0611 | | Xc | Zc | | : | : | : | | | |
| N0612 | G03 | Xd | Zd | ld | Kd | : | : | : | | |
| N0613 | G01 | Xe | Ze | | | : | : | : | | |
| N0614 | | Xf | Zf | | Ff | Sf | Ef | | | |
| N0615 | | Xg | Zg | | Fg | Sg | Eg | | | |
| N0616 | G80 | | | | | | | | | 5) Contour definition end G code |

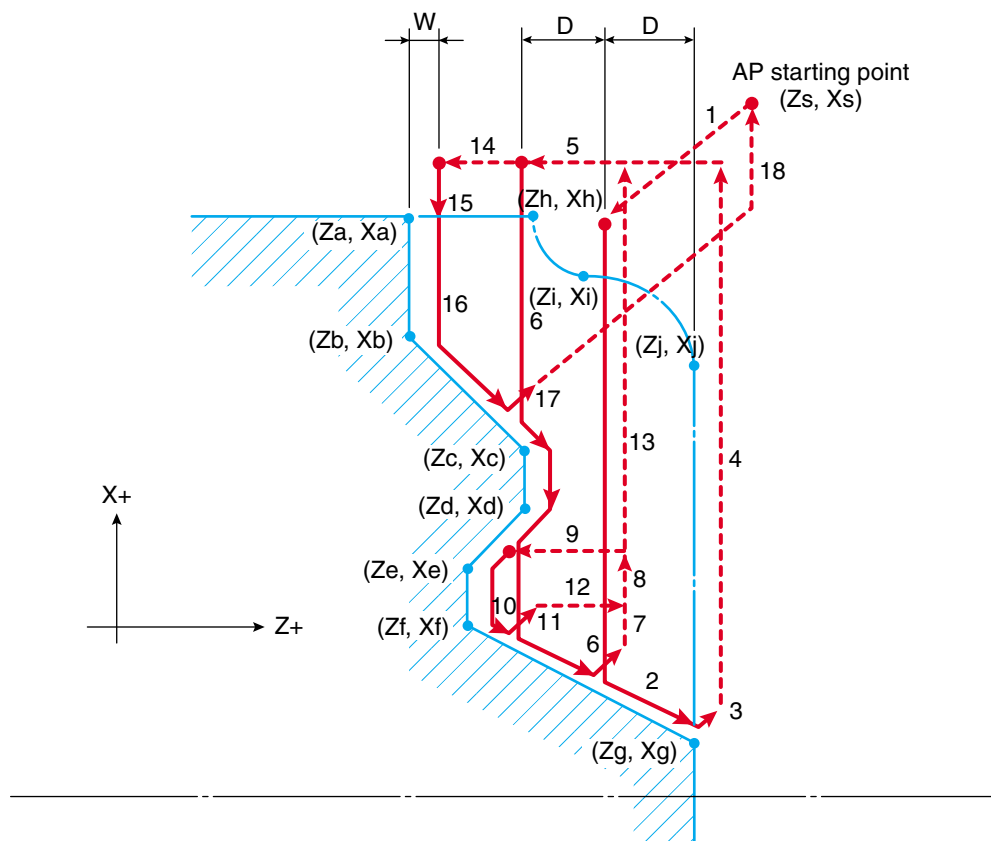
Rough Turning Cycle

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|----|-----|---|-----|---|-----|--|---|
| N0161 | G00 | Xt | Zt | | | | | | | Tool change position |
| N0162 | | Xs | Zs | | | STM | | | | Starting point of AP, S, T, and M for rough turning cycle |
| N0163 | G85 | NAT60 | | D | F | U | W | M85 | |] 6) Calls for rough turning cycle |
| \$ | G84 | XA= | | DA= | | FA= | | | | |
| \$ | | XB= | | DB= | | FB= | | | | |

Finish Turning Cycle

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|--|--|-----|--|--|--|--------------------------------------|
| N0261 | G00 | Xt | Zt | | | | | | | Tool change position |
| N0262 | | | | | | STM | | | | S, T, and M for finish turning cycle |
| N0263 | G87 | N0608 | ..... |  |  |  |  |  |  | 7) Calls for finish turning cycle |

10-4-2. Tool Path and Program - Transverse Cutting



SECTION 8 LATHE AUTO-PROGRAMMING FUNCTION (LAP)

Contour Definition

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|----|----|----|----|--|--|--|---|
| NAT70 | G83 | | | | | | | | | 1) Blank material shape definition start G code |
| N0701 | G01 | Xh | Zh | | | | | | | 2) Blank material shape definition blocks |
| N0702 | G03 | Xi | Zi | li | Ki | | | | | |
| N0703 | G02 | Xj | Zj | lj | Kj | | | | | |
| N0704 | G82 | | | | | | | | | 3) Finish contour definition start G code |
| N0705 | G00 | Xa | Za | | | | | | | 4) Finish contour definition blocks |
| N0706 | G01 | Xb | Zb | Fb | Sb | Eb | | | | |
| N0707 | | Xc | Zc | : | : | : | | | | |
| N0708 | | Xd | Zd | : | : | : | | | | |
| N0709 | | Xe | Ze | : | : | : | | | | |
| N0710 | | Xf | Zf | Ff | Sf | Ef | | | | |
| N0711 | | Xg | Zg | Fg | Sg | Eg | | | | |
| N0712 | G80 | | | | | | | | | 5) Contour definition end G code |

Rough Turning Cycle

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|----|-----|---|-----|---|-----|--|---|
| N0171 | G00 | Xt | Zt | | | | | | | Tool change position |
| N0172 | | Xs | Zs | | | STM | | | | Starting point of AP, S, T, and M for rough turning cycle |
| N0173 | G85 | NAT70 | | D | F | U | W | M85 | | 6) Calls for rough turning cycle |
| \$ | G84 | ZA= | | DA= | | FA= | | | | |
| \$ | | ZB= | | DB= | | FB= | | | | |

Finish Turning Cycle

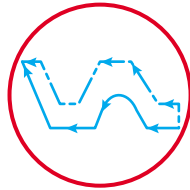
| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|--|--|-----|--|--|--|--------------------------------------|
| N0271 | G00 | Xt | Zt | | | | | | | Tool change position |
| N0272 | | | | | | STM | | | | S, T, and M for finish turning cycle |
| N0273 | G87 | N0704 | ..... |  |  |  |  |  |  | 7) Calls for finish turning cycle |

The entries in programs A and B are described in 1) through 7) below.

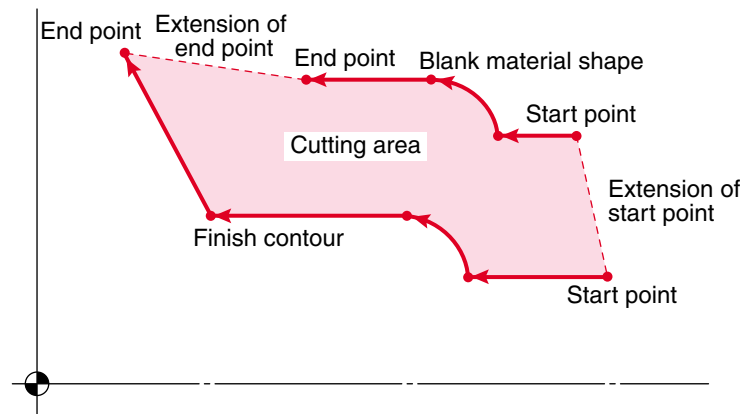
- 1) Blank material shape definition start G code (G83)
 - This code declares the start of blank workpiece shape definition.
 - The blocks following the G83 block and followed by the G81 or G82 block define the blank workpiece.
- 2) Blank material shape definition block
 - Define the blank workpiece shape using the G01, G02, and G03 codes.
 - Note that the G00 code cannot be used.
 - An alarm occurs if the G02 or G03 code is specified in the first block that follows the G83 block.
- 3) Finish contour definition start G code
 - This code declares the start of the finish contour definition.
 - The blocks following the G81 or G82 block and followed by the G80 block define the finish contour.
 - G81 code: Longitudinal contour
G82 code: Transverse contour
- 4) Finish contour definition blocks
 - Define the finish contour using the G00, G01, G02, and G03 codes.
 - The tool retraction path after the completion of machining varies depending on whether the first block contains the G00 or G01 code.
 - F: Feedrate in finishing
S: Spindle speed in finishing
 - E: Feedrate along contour in the high-speed bar turning cycle
 - F, E, and S commands are all modal.
 - The G00 code can be used only in the first block.
- 5) Contour definition end G code
 - This code declares the end of contour definition.
- 6) Calls for rough turning cycle
 - The rough turning cycle is started by calling the contour definition blocks starting with G85.
 - When the contour definition blocks start with G83, the AP Mode IV (high-speed bar turning cycle) is selected. (LAP4 only)
 - When the finish contour definition blocks start with G81 or G82, the AP Mode I (bar turning cycle) is selected.
- 7) Calls for finish turning cycle
 - Finish turning cycle is carried out by designating G87 and calling for the finish contour definition blocks starting with G81 or G82.

NOTICE

- 1) The blank material shape definition must always come before the blocks defining the finish contour.
- 2) The blank material shape must be defined in the same direction as the finish contour is defined.



- 3) The start point of the blank material shape is identical to the start point of the machining shape.
- 4) The end point of the blank material shape is identical to the end point of the machining shape.



10-4-3. Outline of High-speed Bar Turning Cycle

(1) Rough turning cycle in the longitudinal direction (example A)

- 1) The commands in block N0161 position the axes at the tool change point.
- 2) With the commands in block N0162, S, T and M commands for the rough turning cycle are selected, then the axes are positioned at the LAP starting point.
When no S, T, or M command is designated in this block, those selected in the preceding block(s) are effective.
- 3) The NAT60 command in block N0163 causes the control to search for the program assigned the program name NAT60. The rough turning cycle in the bar turning mode is performed with this program.
When NAT60 is designated in the block starting with G83, a high-speed bar turning cycle (LAP4) is carried out.

The cutting conditions for the rough turning cycle are also specified in this block.

D : Depth of cut

F : Feedrate

U : X component of stock removal in finish turning cycle

W : Z component of stock removal in finish turning cycle

If M85 is designated in this block, tool retraction to the AP starting point at the completion of rough turning can be canceled. This eliminates unnecessary tool motion which is generated when the same tool is used in the next machining process.

To change the cutting conditions during the rough turning cycle, designate the following commands with G84.

XA : X coordinate of cutting condition change point A

DA : Depth of cut after point A

FA : Feedrate after point A

To change the cutting conditions again, designate the following commands.

XB : X coordinate of cutting condition change point B

DB : Depth of cut after point B

FB : Feedrate after point B

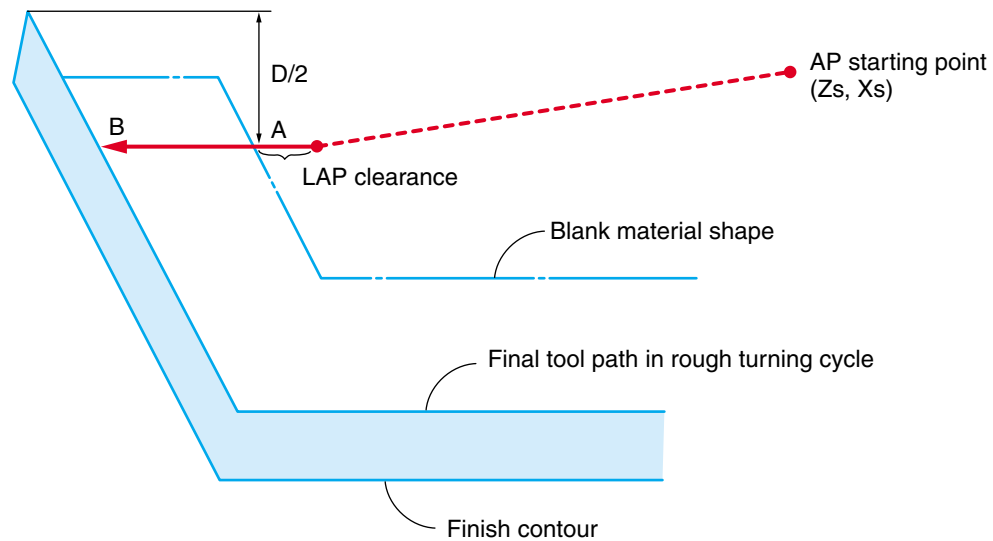
Cutting condition change point(s) must be programmed in the block containing G85. For clear programming, commands related with such point(s) are programmed in different lines, each line preceded by the \$ character which indicates that it is a continuation of the preceding line.

When an F word is not designated in this block, the feedrate commanded last is effective.

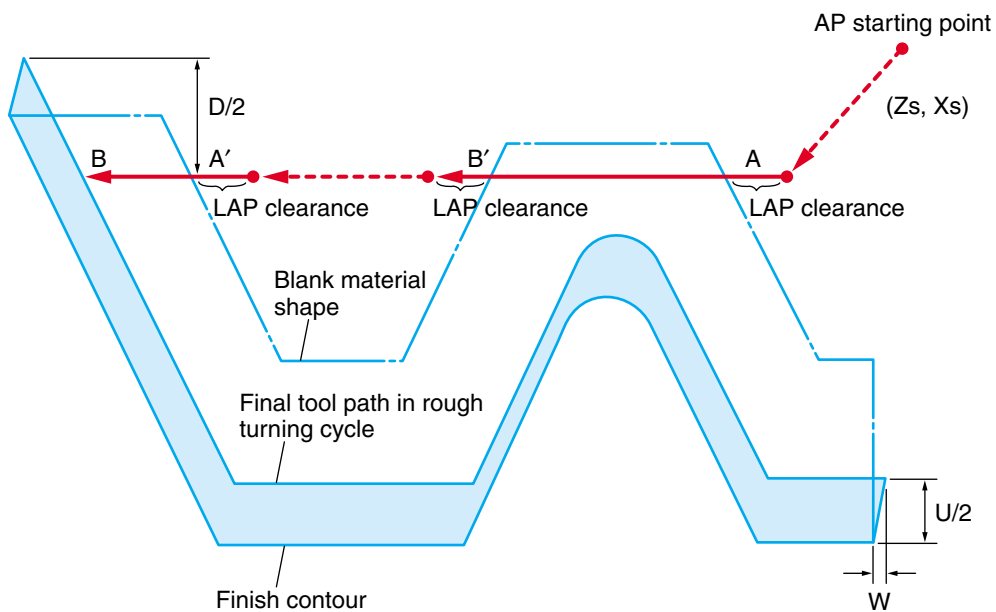
Point data of cutting condition change point(s) must become smaller in the order AP starting point (Xs), then XA and then XB for OD turning. For ID turning, they must become larger in this order.

- 4) The commands between G83 and G81 are taken as the commands to define the blank material shape, and the commands between G81 and G80 are taken as the commands to define the finish contour.
For OD turning, draw the perpendicular from the point which is obtained by shifting the point on the maximum OD of the blank material shape or final rough turning contour, whichever is larger, and obtain the point of intersection A of this perpendicular with the blank material shape.
For ID turning, draw the perpendicular from the point which is obtained by shifting the point on the minimum ID of the blank material shape or final rough turning contour, whichever is smaller.
The cutting tool is positioned at the point distanced from point A by the LAP clearance amount (Lc) in the Z-axis direction. Positioning is performed at the rapid feedrate when G00 is designated in the first block of the finish contour definition blocks, and at a cutting feedrate when G01 is designated in the first block of these blocks.
 - The LAP clearance amount (Lc) is set at LAP clearance amount of optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 1) in units of 0.01 mm.
 - For the relationship between the LAP clearance amount and the AP starting point, refer to 10-4-5 "How to Obtain the Infeed Starting Point".
 - An alarm occurs if the G02 or G03 code is specified in the first block of the blocks used to define the blank workpiece shape.

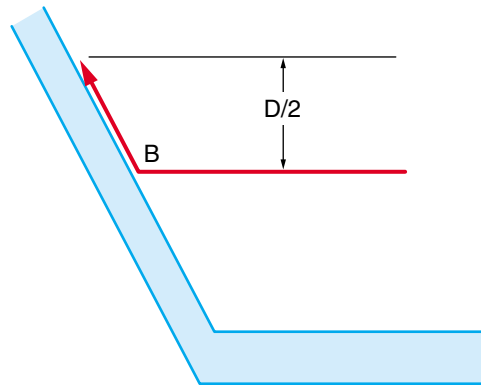
- 5) The cutting is performed in the G01 mode up to point B where the straight line parallel to the Z-axis and passing through point A intersects the final contour of the rough turning cycle. The feedrate in this cutting cycle is as selected by the F word when the rough turning cycle is called out.



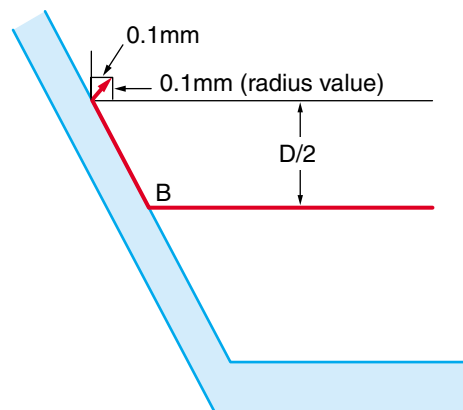
When the straight line intersects the blank material shape at point B' before it intersects the blank material at point B, cutting is executed in the G01 mode up to the point distanced from point B' by the LAP clearance amount (L_c) in the Z-axis direction, and after that the cutting tool is fed at the rapid feedrate. If the straight line again intersects the blank material shape at point A', cutting is restarted in the G01 mode from the point distanced from point A' by the LAP clearance amount (L_c) in the Z-axis direction.



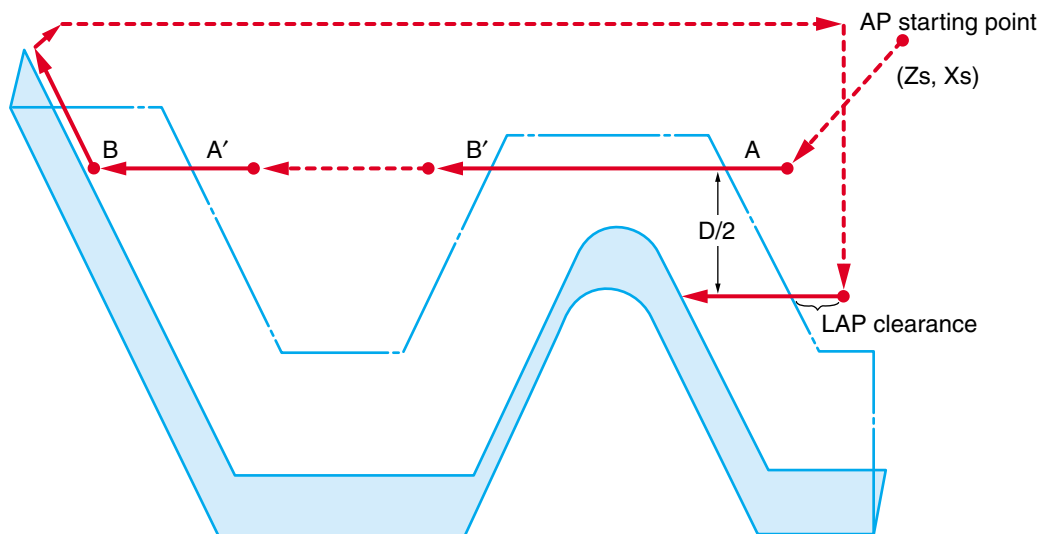
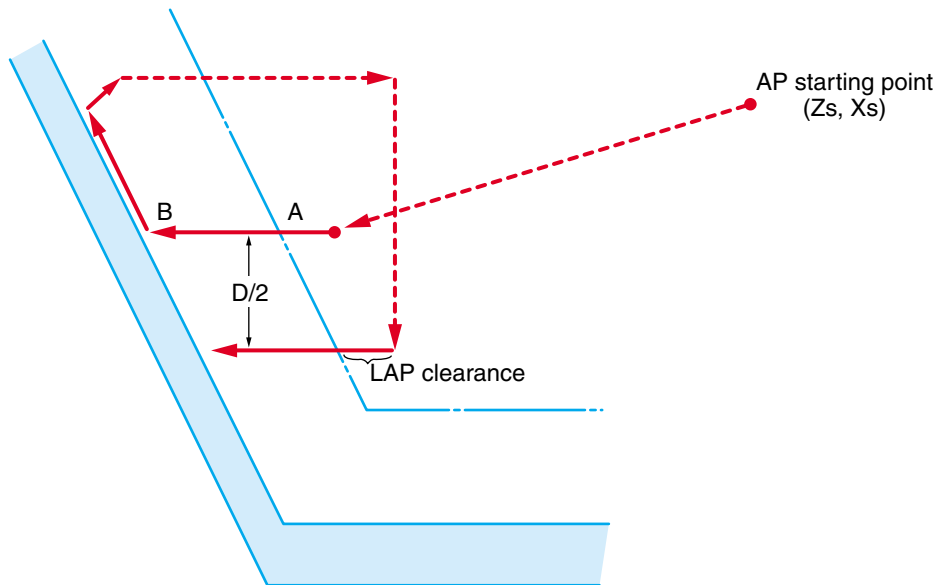
- 6) After point B is reached, the final contour of the rough turning cycle is cut up to the point whose X coordinate is $X_b + D$. If G80, indicating the end of contour definition, is found before this point is reached, the final rough turning contour is cut up to the point specified in the block preceding the G80 block. The feedrate in this cut is as specified by E which is designated in a contour definition program. If no E word is provided in the corresponding contour definition program, the one specified last is effective. When an E word has not been specified, the feedrate specified when the rough turning cycle was called out is effective.



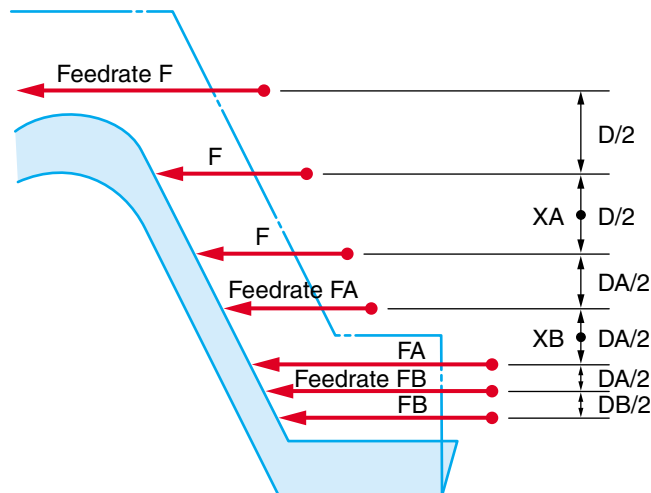
- 7) After the completion of cutting explained in 6), the cutting tool is relieved from the workpiece in the direction opposite to the infeed direction along the X-axis and opposite to the cutting feed direction along the Z-axis, by 0.1 mm (0.004 in.) on each axis (diameter value in the case of the X-axis). The relief amount is set for the optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 1) in units of mm.



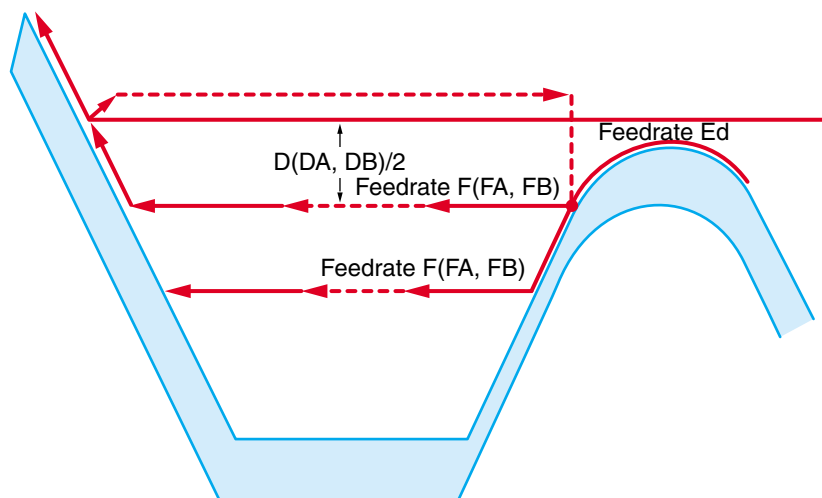
- 8) This completes the first rough turning cycle. The Z-axis returns to the next infeed point at the rapid feedrate and then the X-axis to X_s . The next infeed starting point is the point distanced from the point of intersection between the blank material shape and the line which is parallel to the Z-axis and whose X-coordinate is "the X-coordinate of the first infeed line - D" by the LAP clearance amount (L_c).



- 9) Steps 4) through 8) are repeated up to the cutting condition change point. After that point, the same cycle is repeated with the depth of cut (D) and feedrate (F) changed.

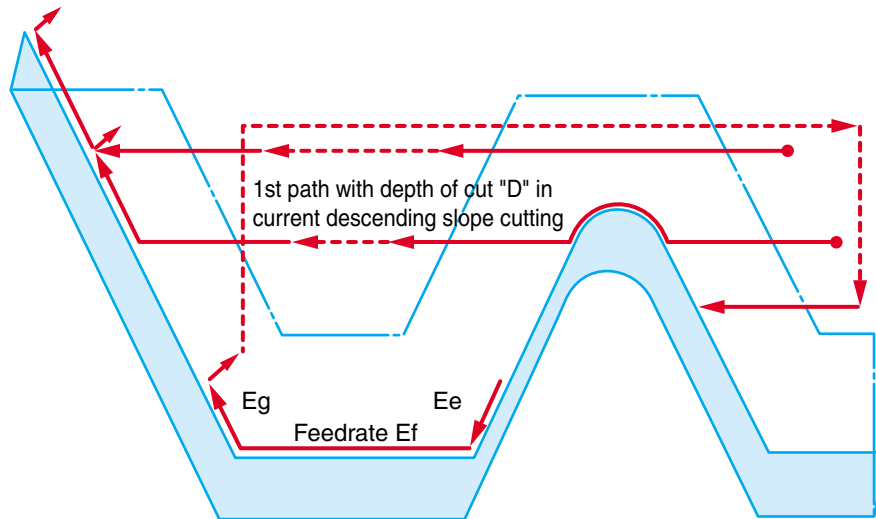


- 10) When a descending slope is to be cut in step 6., the cutting tool descends along the contour up to the point whose X-coordinate is the same as that of the point where cutting on contour started. Then, cutting is executed from that point in the G01 mode until the line parallel to the Z-axis intersects the final rough turning contour. The cutting tool moves in the same manner as in step 5. when the line intersects the blank material before it intersects the final rough turning contour.
- 11) Steps 6. and 7. are repeated. The Z-axis then returns to the point where cutting along the Z-axis is started in step 10. After the Z-axis has been positioned, the X-axis is positioned at the point where the previous cutting cycle started.



- 12) Steps 10. and 11. are repeated until the most recessed section along the X-axis is cut. After it has been cut, both the X- and Z-axis retract by 0.1 mm (radius value for the X-axis), and the X-axis is positioned at the point whose coordinate value is "the first cutting level along the descending slope $D + 0.2$ " mm. After the completion of descending slope cutting, the cutting previously in progress resumed and steps after 4) are repeated.

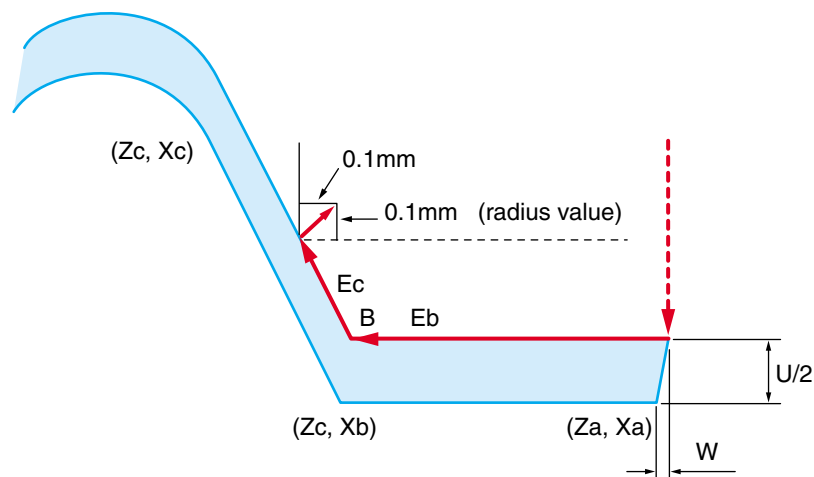
The next infeed starting point is the point distanced from the point of intersection between the line whose X-coordinate is "the first cutting level along the descending slope $D - D$ " and the blank material shape, by the LAP clearance amount (L_c).



- 13) The steps described above are repeated until the X-axis reaches the level where a tool path is generated below " $X_a + U$ ". When such a level is reached, the final rough cutting is carried out along the contour, leaving the finish cut allowance.

The feedrate in cutting along the final rough cut contour is the one specified by the E word.

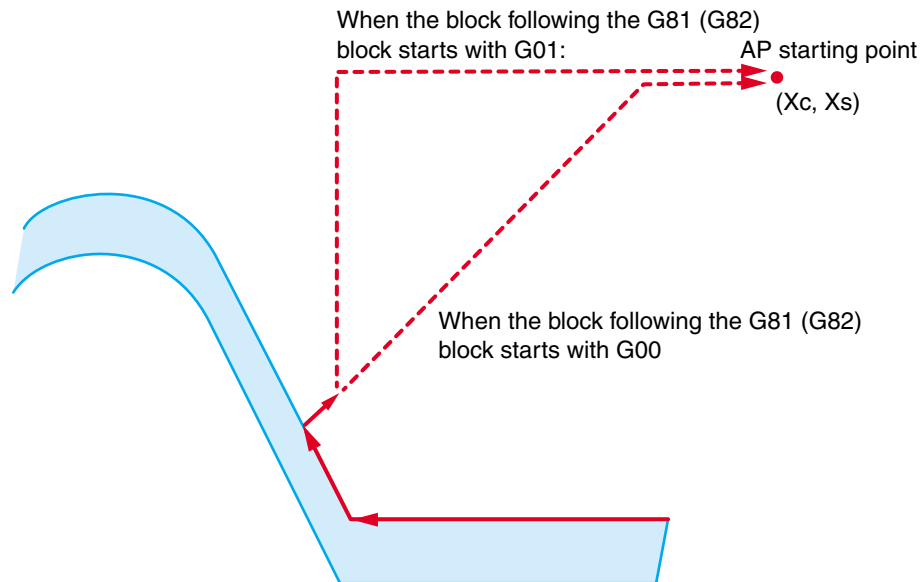
After the completion of the final rough turning step, the X- and Z-axes are relieved by 0.1 mm (0.004 in.) (diameter value for the X-axis). The relief amount is set at Relieving amount in LAP-BAR turning of optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 1).



14) At the completion of step 13), the axes return to the AP starting point (X_s , Z_s).

There are two patterns of axis return motion:

- The two axes return to the AP starting point simultaneously when G00 is designated in the first block of the contour definition program (the block following the one containing either G81 or G82).
- When G01 is designated in the block indicated above, positioning is done on the X-axis first and then the Z-axis returns to the AP starting point.



The tool does not return to the AP starting point as explained in step 14) when M85 is designated in the block calling for the rough turning cycle (the block starting with G85). This completes a rough turning cycle.

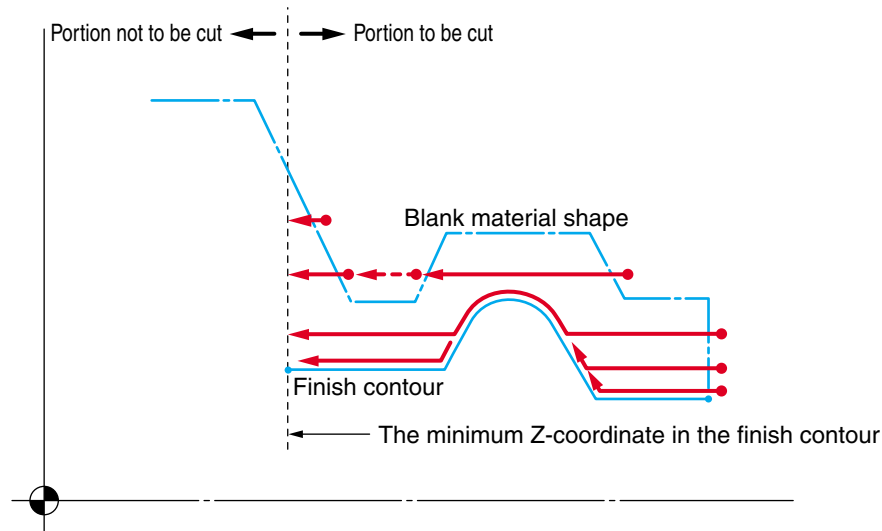
(2) Finish turning cycle in high-speed bar turning in longitudinal direction (example A)

- 15) The commands in block N0261 positioning the axes at the tool change position.
- 16) With the commands in block N0262, S, T, and M commands for the finish turning cycle are selected.
- 17) In block N0263, the control searches the program assigned the program name N0608. The finish turning cycle in the bar turning mode is performed using this program.
- 18) The finish turning cycle is performed following the dimension data designated in the contour definition program in the specified cutting conditions for the finish turning cycle.
- 19) After the finish turning cycle is completed, the commands in the block following N0263 are executed.

10-4-4. Precautions when Performing High-speed Bar Turning

Finish contour end point

In AP Mode IV, the portion beyond the Z-coordinate (X-coordinate in the transverse direction) of the finish contour end point (final rough turning contour when stock removal is designated using the U or W command) is not cut even when the blank material shape for that portion has been designated.



10-4-5. How to Obtain the Infeed Starting Point

The infeed starting point in a high-speed bar turning cycle is determined by the following items:

- Cs : AP starting point
- Lc : LAP clearance amount
- Bsp : Finish contour start point (after the activation of tool nose radius compensation)
- Cp : Point of intersection between the blank material shape and the infeed line
- Xp : Point of intersection between the line segment Cs-Bsp and the infeed line

When tool nose radius compensation is not activated, the finish contour start point designated in shape definition is taken as the finish contour start point Bsp.

The explanation that follows takes longitudinal cutting in the forward direction as an example.

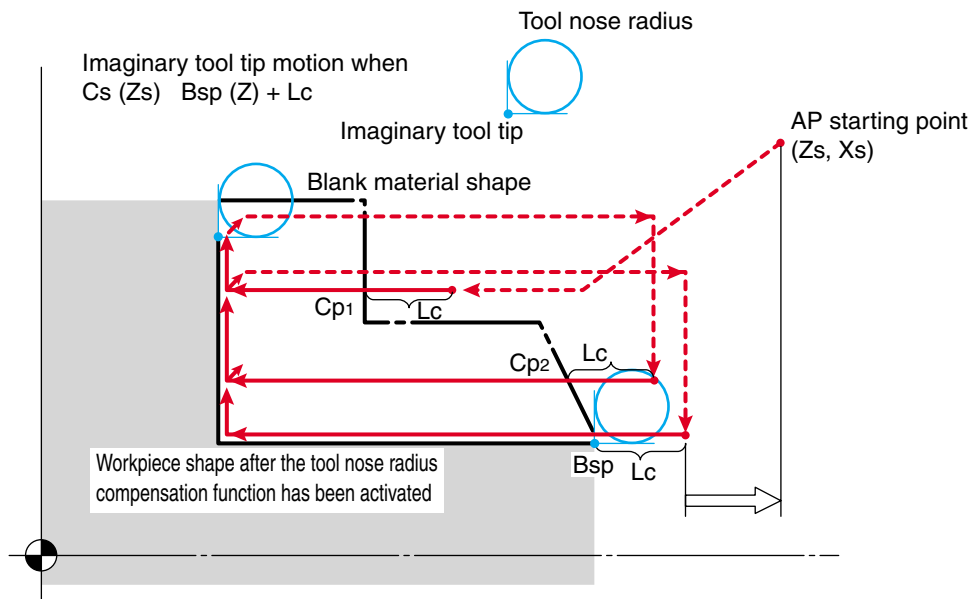
$$Cs(Z_s) \checkmark Bsp(Z) + Lc$$

This is the normal positional relationship in bar turning.

- 1) X-coordinate of the infeed line > Bsp (X)
The infeed starting point is defined at "Cp (Z) + Lc, Cp (X)" which is distanced from point Cp by the LAP clearance amount (Lc).

2) X-coordinate of the infeed line x_{Bsp} (X)

For cutting from the finish contour start point B_{sp} along the finish contour, the cutting tool is first positioned in the G00 mode at the rapid feedrate at " $B_{sp}(Z) + L_c, B_{sp}(X)$ ", which is distanced from point B_{sp} by the LAP clearance amount (L_c), and it is then positioned at point B_{sp} at a cutting feedrate in the G01 mode.

 $C_s (Z_s) < B_{sp} (Z) + L_c$

The portion that is to the right (in the Z-axis positive direction) of the line segment between AP starting point C_s and finish contour start point B_{sp} is not cut.

Assume that the point of intersection between the infeed line and this line segment is " X_p ".

1) $X_p (Z) > C_p (Z) + L_c$

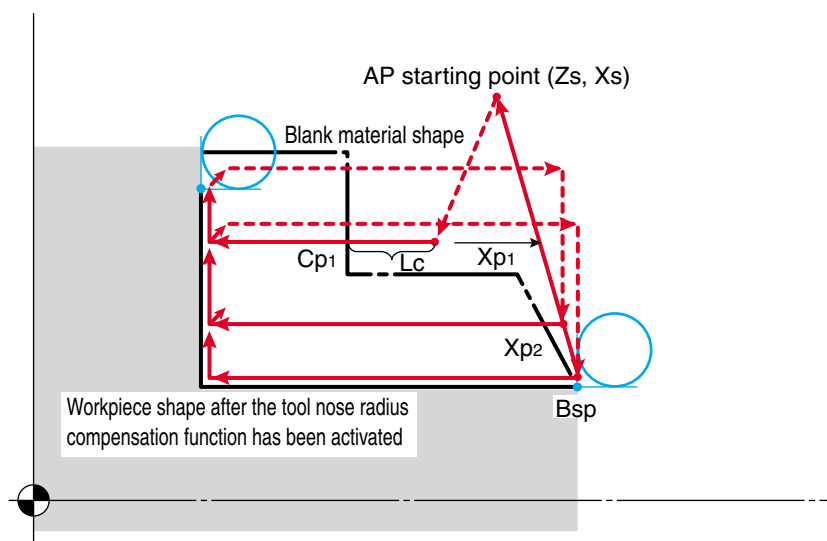
The infeed starting point is defined at " $C_p (Z) + L_c, C_p (X)$ ", which is distanced from point C_p by the LAP clearance amount (L_c).

2) $X_p (Z) < C_p (Z) + L_c$

The infeed starting point is defined at point $X_p (Z, X)$ where the line segment C_s - B_{sp} intersects the infeed line.

3) X-coordinate of the infeed line y_{Bsp} (X)

When cutting from finish contour start point B_{sp} along the finish contour, the cutting tool is directly positioned at point $B_{sp} (Z, X)$ at the rapid feedrate.



10-5. AP Mode V (Bar Copying Cycle)

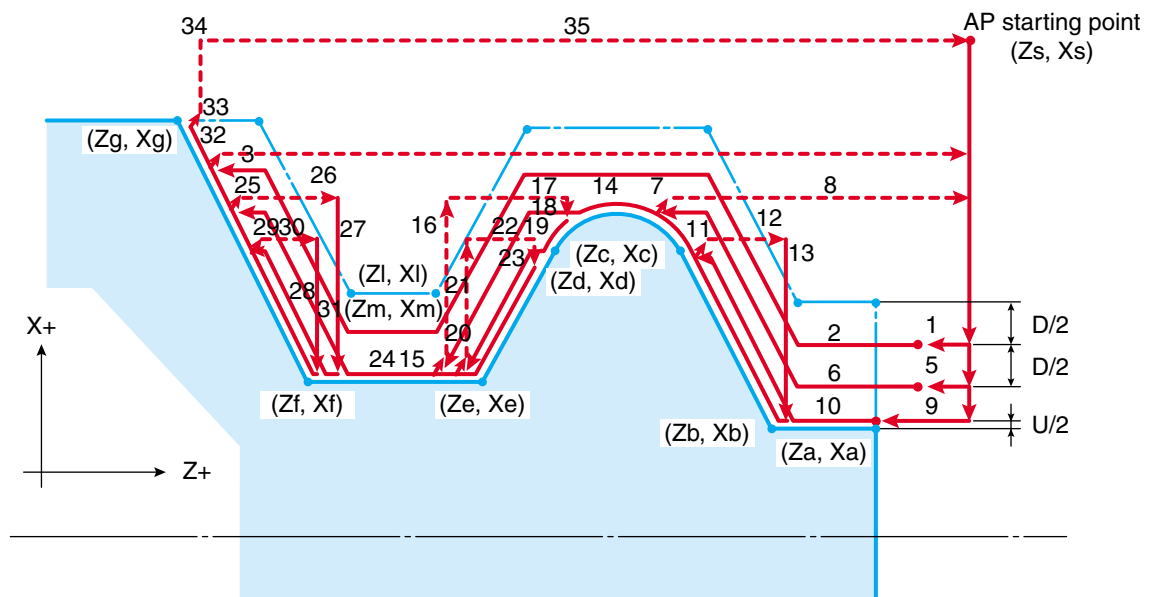
[Function]

In AP Mode V, the blank material shape data is input in addition to the finish contour shape data. The blank material shape is programmed in the blocks starting with G83.

Cutting is parallel to the designated blank material shape. Once the cutting tool starts cutting the workpiece, it is not moved away from the blank material until it meets the finish contour.

This feature reduces the number of tool collisions against the forged workpiece surface, resulting in longer tool life. This mode is also effective for ID turning, which used to be difficult in AP Mode II.

10-5-1. Tool Path and Program - Longitudinal Cutting



SECTION 8 LATHE AUTO-PROGRAMMING FUNCTION (LAP)

Contour Definition

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|----|--|--|--|--|--|--|---|
| NAT80 | G83 | | | | | | | | | 1) Blank material shape definition start G code |
| N0801 | G01 | Xa | Za | | | | | | | 2) Blank material shape definition blocks |
| N0802 | | Xh | Zh | | | | | | | |
| N0803 | | Xi | Zi | | | | | | | |
| N0804 | | Xj | Zj | | | | | | | |
| N0805 | | Xk | Zk | | | | | | | |
| N0806 | | Xl | Zl | | | | | | | |
| N0807 | | Xm | Zm | | | | | | | |
| N0808 | | Xn | Zn | | | | | | | |
| N0809 | | Xg | Zg | | | | | | | |
| N0810 | G81 | | | | | | | | | 3) Finish contour definition start G code |

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|----|----|----|----|----|---|--|-------------------------------------|
| N0811 | G01 | Xa | Za | | | | | | | 4) Finish contour definition blocks |
| N0812 | | Xb | Zb | | Fb | Sb | Eb | | | |
| N0813 | | Xc | Zc | | : | : | : | | | |
| N0814 | G03 | Xd | Zd | ld | Kd | : | : | : | | |
| N0815 | G01 | Xe | Ze | | | : | : | : | | |
| N0816 | | Xf | Zf | | Ff | Sf | Ef | | | |
| N0817 | | Xg | Zg | | Fg | Sg | Eg | | | |
| N0818 | G80 | | | | | | | | | 5) Contour definition end G code |

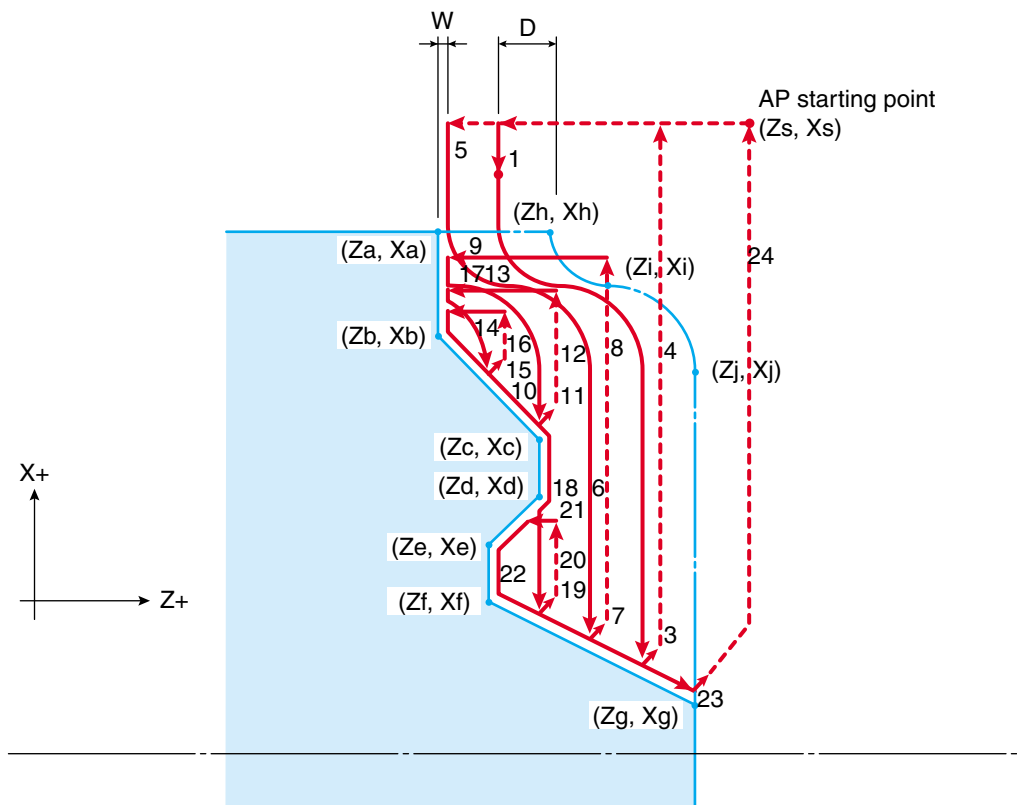
Rough Turning Cycle

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|----|---|---|-----|-----|--|--|---|
| N0181 | G00 | Xt | Zt | | | | | | | Tool change position |
| N0182 | | Xs | Zs | | | STM | | | | Starting point of S, T, and M for rough turning cycle |
| N0183 | G86 | NAT80 | D | F | U | W | M85 | | | 6) Calls for rough turning cycle |

Finish Turning Cycle

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|--|--|-----|--|--|--|--------------------------------------|
| N0281 | G00 | Xt | Zt | | | | | | | Tool change position |
| N0282 | | | | | | STM | | | | S, T, and M for finish turning cycle |
| N0283 | G87 | N0810 | ..... |  |  |  |  |  |  | 7) Calls for finish turning cycle |

10-5-2. Tool Path and Program - Transverse Cutting



SECTION 8 LATHE AUTO-PROGRAMMING FUNCTION (LAP)

Contour Definition

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|----|----|----|--|--|--|--|---|
| NAT90 | G83 | | | | | | | | | 1) Blank material shape definition start G code |
| N0901 | G00 | Xa | Za | | | | | | |] 2) Blank material shape definition blocks |
| N0902 | G01 | Xh | Zh | | | | | | | |
| N0903 | G03 | Xi | Zi | li | Ki | | | | | |
| N0904 | G02 | Xj | Zj | lj | Kj | | | | | |
| N0905 | G01 | Xg | Zg | | | | | | | |
| N0906 | G82 | | | | | | | | | 3) Finish contour definition start G code |

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|----|----|----|----|--|--|--|---------------------------------------|
| N0907 | G00 | Xa | Za | | | | | | |] 4) Finish contour definition blocks |
| N0908 | G01 | XB | Zb | Fb | Sb | Eb | | | | |
| N0909 | | Xc | Zc | : | : | : | | | | |
| N0910 | | Xd | Zd | : | : | : | | | | |
| N0911 | | Xe | Ze | : | : | : | | | | |
| N0912 | | Xf | Zf | Ff | Sf | Ef | | | | |
| N0913 | | Xg | Zg | Fg | Sg | Eg | | | | |
| N0914 | G80 | | | | | | | | | 5) Contour definition end G code |

Rough Turning Cycle

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|----|-----|---|---|-----|--|--|---|
| N0191 | G00 | Xt | Zt | | | | | | | Tool change position |
| N0192 | | Xs | Zs | STM | | | | | | Starting point of S, T, and M for rough turning cycle |
| N0193 | G86 | NAT90 | D | F | U | W | M85 | | | 6) Calls for rough turning cycle |

Finish Turning Cycle

| | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-------|-------|-----|--|--|--|--|--|--------------------------------------|
| N0291 | G00 | Xt | Zt | | | | | | | Tool change position |
| N0292 | | | | STM | | | | | | S, T, and M for finish turning cycle |
| N0293 | G87 | N0906 | ..... |  |  |  |  |  |  | 7) Calls for finish turning cycle |

The data entries in programs A and B are described in 1) through 7) below.

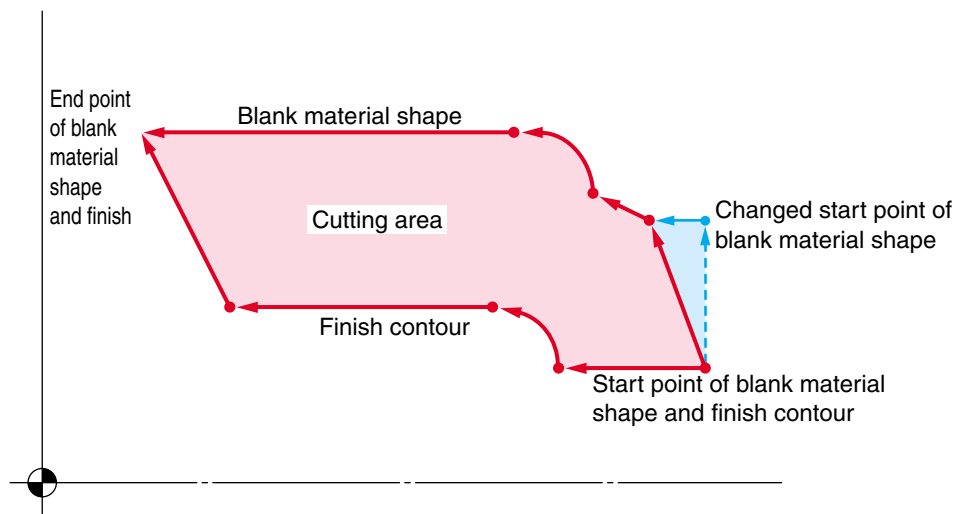
- 1) Blank material shape definition start G code (G83)
 - This code declares the start of blank workpiece shape definition.
 - The blocks following the G83 block and followed by the G81 or G82 block define the blank material shape.
- 2) Blank material shape definition block
 - Define the blank workpiece shape using the G01, G02, and G03 codes.
 - Note that the G00 code cannot be used.
- 3) Finish contour definition start G code
 - This code declares the start of finish contour definition.
 - The blocks following the G81 or G82 block and followed by the G80 block define the finish contour.
 - G81 code: Longitudinal contour
G82 code: Transverse contour
- 4) Finish contour definition blocks
 - Define the finish contour using the G00, G01, G02, and G03 codes.
 - The tool retraction path after the completion of machining varies depending on whether the first block contains the G00 or G01 code.
 - F: Feedrate in finishing
S: Spindle speed in finishing
 - E: Feedrate along contour in the high-speed bar turning cycle
 - F, S, and E commands are all modal.
- 5) Contour definition end G code (G80)
 - This code declares the end of contour definition.
- 6) Call for rough turning cycle
 - The rough turning cycle is started by calling the contour definition blocks starting with G86.
 - When the contour definition blocks start with G83, AP Mode V (bar turning cycle) is selected. (LAP4 only)
 - When the finish contour definition blocks start with G81 or G82, the AP Mode II (copy turning cycle) is selected.
- 7) Call for finish turning cycle
 - The finish turning cycle is carried out by designating G87 and calling for the finish contour definition blocks starting with G81 or G82.

NOTICE

- 1) The blank material shape definition must always come before the blocks defining the finish contour.
- 2) The blank material shape must be defined in the same direction as the finish contour is defined.



- 3) There are cases in which the NC changes the first element data of the blank material shape to shorten cycle time. For example, in longitudinal cutting in the forward direction, if the X-coordinate of the first element is smaller than the X-coordinate of the second element, the X-coordinate of the second element is used as the X-coordinate of the first element.



10-5-3. Outline of Bar Copying Cycle

(1) Rough turning cycle in the longitudinal direction (example A)

- 1) The commands in block N0181 position the axes at the tool change point.
- 2) With the commands in block N0182, S, T, and M commands for rough cut cycle are selected, and then the axes are positioned at the LAP starting point.
When no S, T, or M commands are specified in this block, those selected in the preceding block(s) are effective.
- 3) The NAT80 command in block N0183 causes the control to search for the program assigned the program name NAT80. A rough cut cycle in the bar turning mode is performed with this program.
When NAT80 is designated in the block starting with G83, a high-speed bar turning cycle (LAP4) is carried out.

The cutting conditions for the rough turning cycle are also specified in the same block.

D : Depth of cut

F : Feedrate

U : X component of stock removal in finish turning cycle

W : Z component of stock removal in finish turning cycle

If M85 is designated in this block, tool retraction to the AP starting point at the completion of rough turning can be canceled. This eliminates unnecessary tool motion which is generated when the same tool is used in the next machining process.

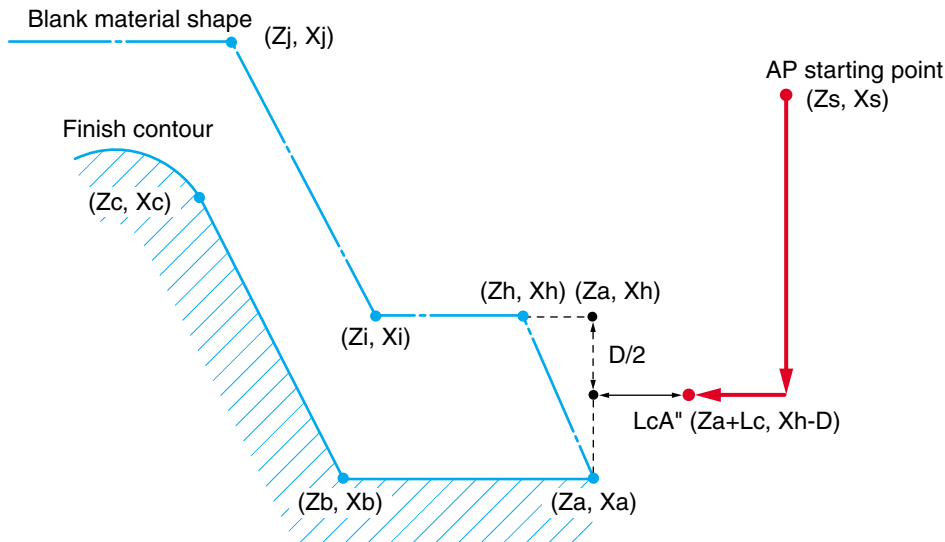
When no F word is designated in this block, the feedrate commanded last is effective.

- 4) The commands between G83 and G81 are taken as the commands to define the blank material shape, and the commands between G81 and G80 are taken as the commands to define the finish contour. The first element coordinate (Z_a, X_a) and the second element coordinate (Z_h, X_h) are compared, and since X_a is smaller than X_h in this example, the first element coordinate is changed to (Z_a, X_h). (Longitudinal cutting is carried out between the first and second shape elements.)

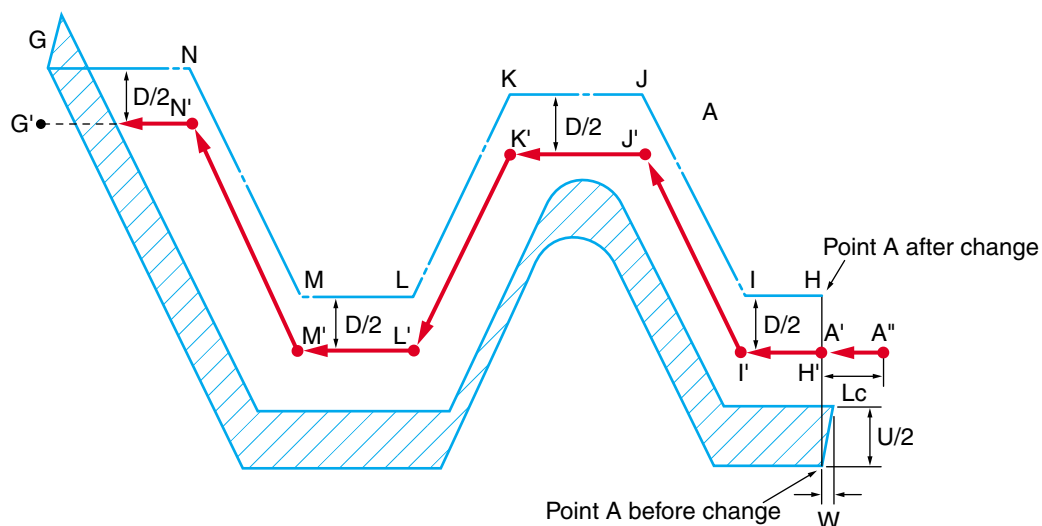
Then, first the X-axis, then the Z-axis is positioned at a cutting feedrate at point A'' which is obtained by shifting the X-coordinate of the first element by depth of cut "D" in the negative direction and then shifting the Z-coordinate by the LAP clearance amount (L_c) in the positive direction.

Positioning is performed at the rapid feedrate when G00 is designated in the first block of the finish contour definition blocks, and it is performed at a cutting feedrate when G01 is designated in the first block of the finish contour definition blocks.

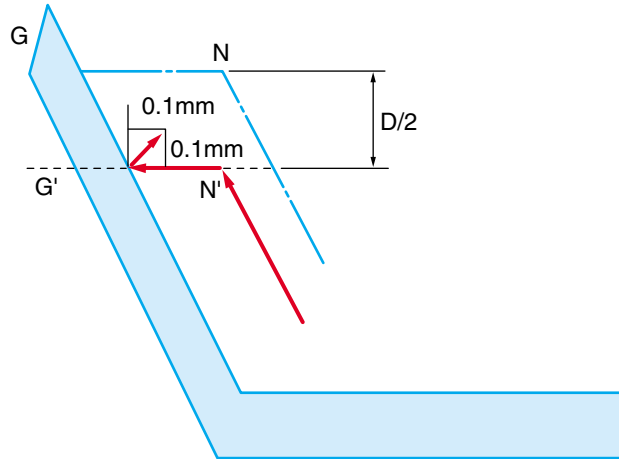
The LAP clearance amount (L_c) is set for the optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 1) in units of mm.



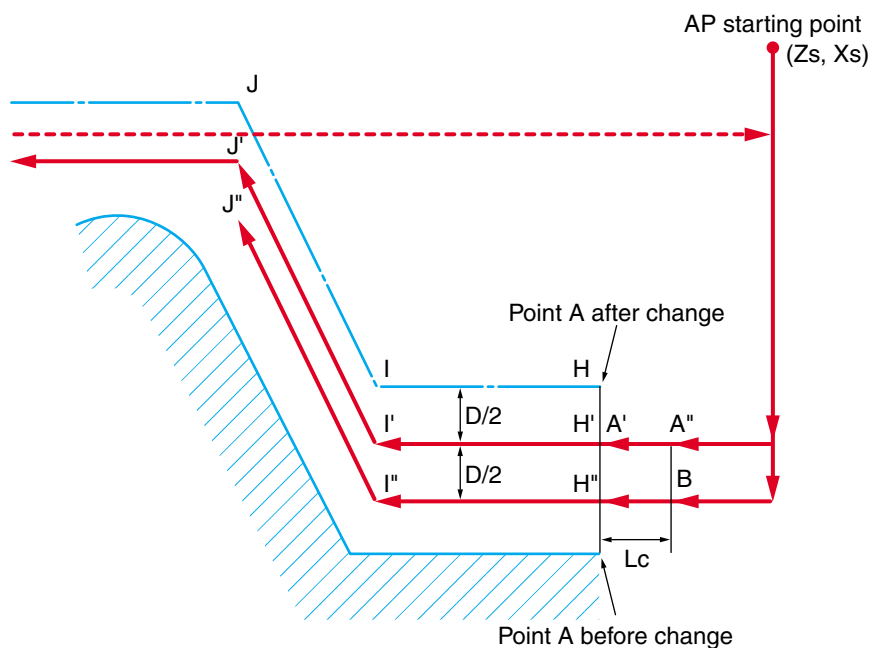
- 5) The points designated in the blank material shape definition blocks are shifted by D in the infeed direction. The cutting tool is fed at a cutting feedrate in the G01 mode from point A'' to point A' ($Z_a, X_h - D$) which is obtained by shifting the first element coordinate (Z_a, X_h) of the blank material shape definition blocks by D . Then, cutting is executed along H' - G' in the G01 mode. Here, the feedrate designated by the F command in the block for calling the rough turning cycle is effective.



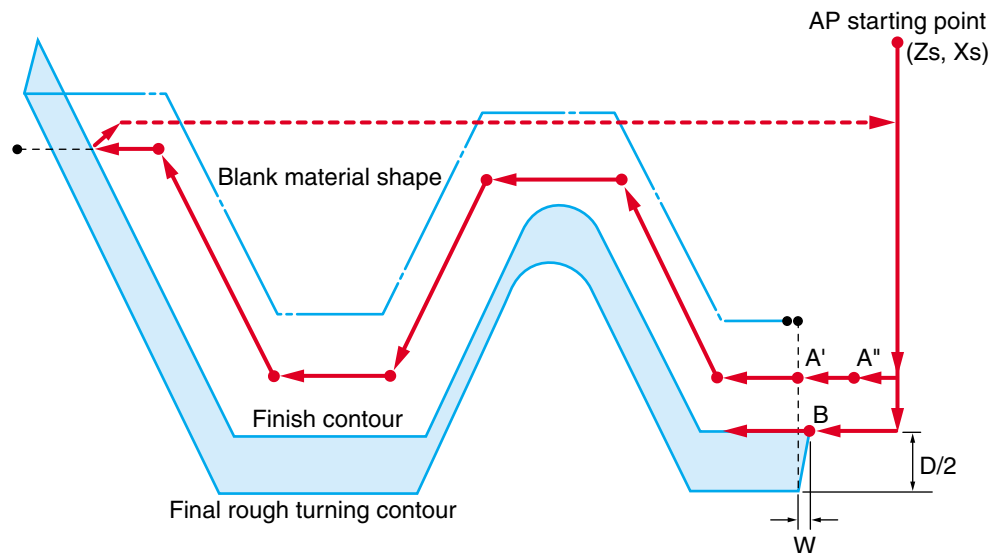
- 6) When cutting reaches the point where the shifted blank material shape intersects the finish contour, the cutting tool is relieved by 0.1 mm (radius value for the X-axis) in the direction opposite to the infeed direction along the X-axis, and opposite to cutting feed direction along the Z-axis. The relief amount is set for the optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 1) in units of mm. When stock removal is designated in the program using the U or W command, the cutting tool is relieved when cutting reaches the point where the shifted material shape intersects the final rough turning contour.



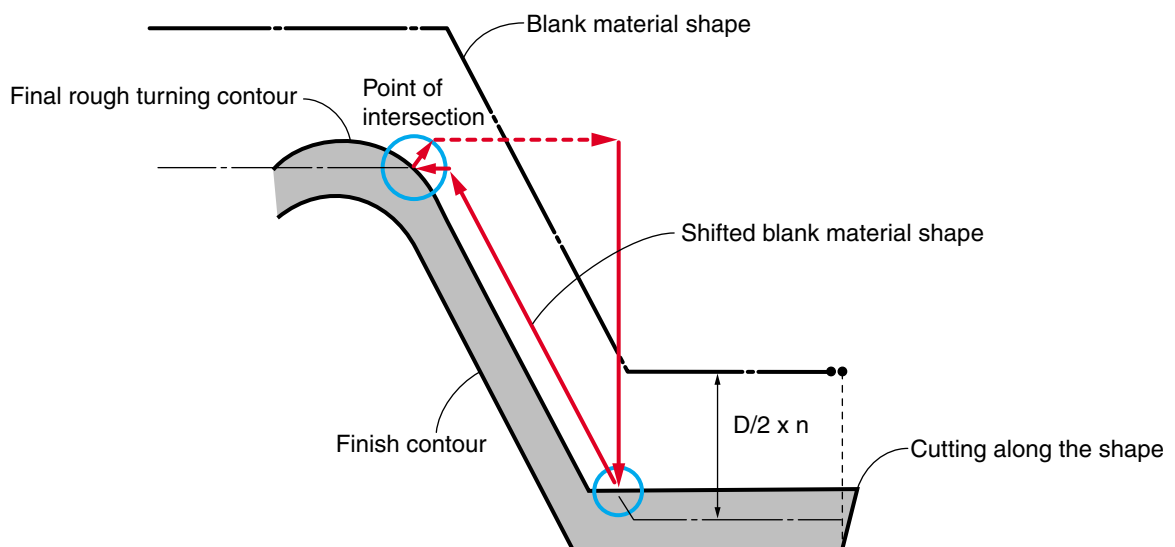
- 7) This completes the first rough turning cycle. The cutting tool is then positioned at the next infeed starting point B at the rapid feedrate. When the X-coordinate of the first rough turning cycle is smaller than the largest X-coordinate of the next cutting level, the cutting tool moves up to the point "largest X-coordinate + 0.2 mm" (diameter value) at the rapid feedrate (or "smallest X-coordinate - 0.2 mm" in the case of ID turning). Then, it moves up to the Z coordinate of the AP starting point (Z_s). After that, first the X-axis, and then the Z-axis moves to point B at the rapid feedrate. The approach to point B is in the same direction as the cutting direction. To obtain the "next infeed starting point B", first shift the first element coordinate (Z_a, X_h) of the blank material shape definition blocks by $2D$ in the X-axis negative direction and obtain the point ($Z_a, X_h - 2D$), and then shift this point by the LAP clearance amount (L_c) in the Z-axis positive direction. This is the "next infeed starting point ($Z_a + L_c, X_h - 2D$)".



- 8) When the " $X_h - 2D$ " value is smaller than the X_a value, the finish contour start point is taken as the next infeed starting point B.
 When a U or W command has been designated, the final rough turning contour is taken as the next infeed starting point B.
 The feedrate designated by the E command in the contour definition blocks is effective. When no E command is designated in the contour definition blocks, the E command value designated in the block before the contour definition blocks is effective. If no E command is designated at all, the feedrate designated by the F command in the block for calling the rough turning cycle is effective.

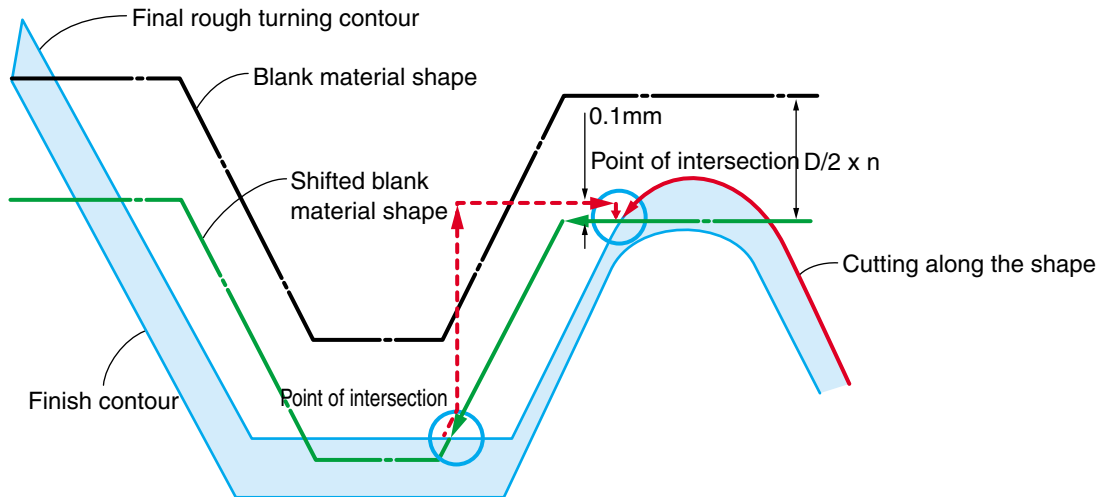


- 9) When the blank material shape shifted by " D even number" intersects the contour to be machined (or final rough turning contour) during cutting along the shape, the cutting tool starts cutting along the shifted material shape. When the blank material shape shifted by " D even number" again intersects the contour to be machined (or final rough turning contour), the axes retract by 0.1 mm as in step 6). Then, the Z-axis is positioned at a point directly above the point where cutting along the shifted blank material started and the X-axis is positioned at this point.

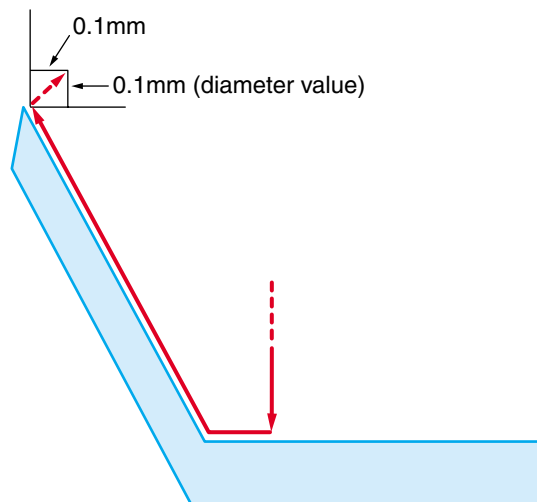


In rough turning cycles in AP Mode IV, the axes return to the point where cutting along the shifted blank material has been started according to the following procedure:

- The X-axis is positioned at the point “largest X-coordinate in that cutting cycle + 0.2 mm (0.008 in.) (diameter value)”.
- The Z-axis is positioned at a point directly above the point where cutting along the shifted blank material started.
- The X-axis is positioned at the point where cutting along the shifted blank material started at a cutting feedrate.

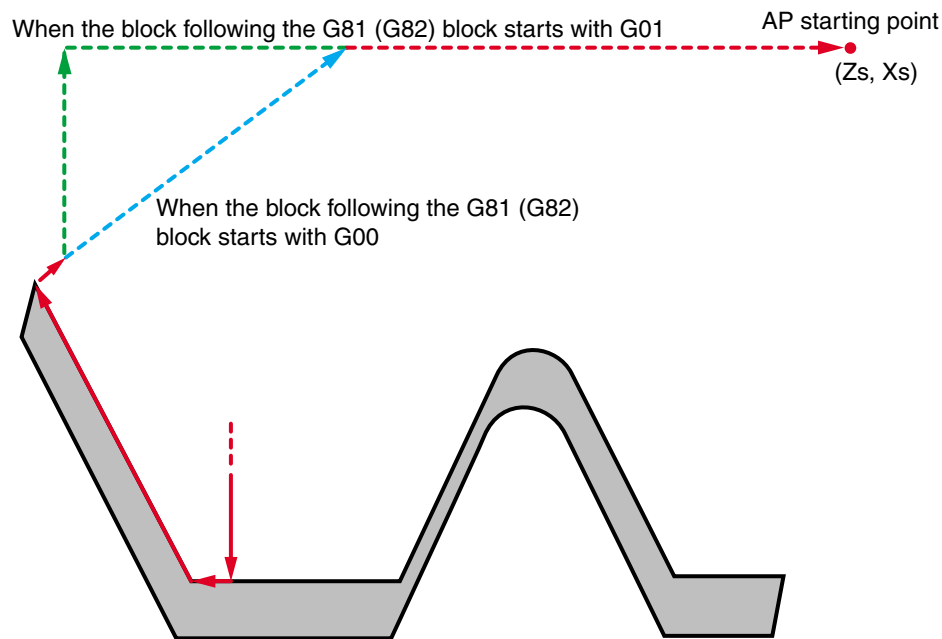


- 10) Steps 8. and 9. are repeated until the area between the blank material shape and the finish contour (or final rough turning contour) is cut. Then, the cutting tool is relieved by 0.1 mm (0.004 in.) (diameter value for the X-axis) in the direction opposite to infeed direction along the X-axis and opposite to cutting feed direction along the Z-axis. The relief amount is set at Relieving amount in LAP-BAR turning of optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 1).



- 11) After the completion of step 10., the axes return to the AP starting point (Zs, Xs).
There are two patterns of axis return motion:

- The two axes return to the AP starting point simultaneously when G00 is designated in the first block of the contour definition program (the block following the one containing either G81 or G82).
- Positioning along the X-axis is done first, then the Z-axis returns to the AP starting point when G01 is designated in the block indicated above.



When M85 is designated in the block calling for rough turning cycle (the block starting with G86), the axes do not return to the AP starting position as explained in step 11., and the commands in the block following N0183 are executed.

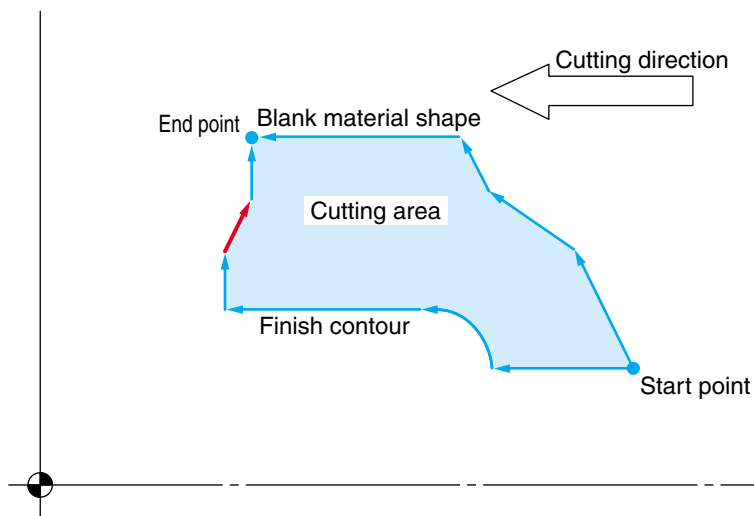
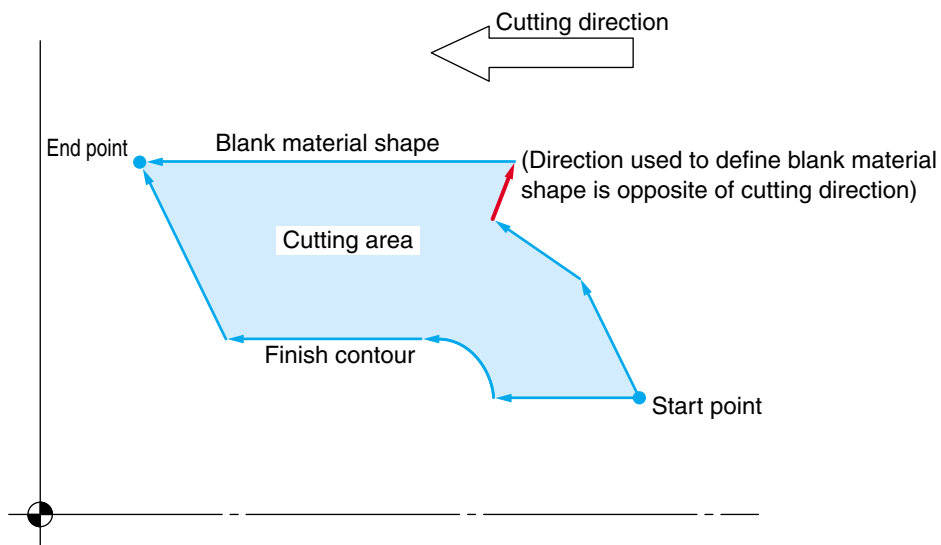
This completes the rough turning cycle.

(2) Finish turning cycle in the longitudinal direction (example A)

- 12) The commands in block N0281 position the axes at the tool change position.
- 13) With the commands in block N0282, S, T, and M commands for finish turning cycle are selected.
- 14) In block N0283, the control searches for the program assigned the program name N0810. Finish turning cycle in the bar turning mode is performed using this program.
- 15) The finish turning cycle is performed according to the cutting conditions for finish turning (F command for feedrate, S command for spindle speed) specified in the shape definition program.
- 16) After the finish turning cycle is complete, the commands in the block following N0283 are executed.

10-5-4. Precautions when Executing a Bar Copying Cycle

When the direction to define the blank material shape or finish contour is opposite to the cutting direction, an alarm occurs. In such cases, define the shape again or divide the machining process.



10-6. Precautions

- Be sure to designate the contour defining sequence name right after the G code calling for execution of a LAP program:
G85, G86, G87 and G88
- The G83 (G81 or G82) code used to indicate the start of contour definition must be assigned a proper sequence name.
- With regard to absolute or incremental programming, G90 or G91, the mode established when G85, G86, G87 or G88 is commanded is effective. However, this mode is changed if a G code selecting another dimensioning system is specified in the contour definition program.
In the first block of the contour definition program, it is impossible to designate G90 or G91 independently. Always designate them with X and/or Z commands in the same block.
- With regard to G64, G65, G94, G95, G96, and G97, the mode established when G85, G86, G87, or G88 is commanded is effective. Once established, this mode cannot be changed within the contour definition program.
- With regard to G00, G01, G02, G03, G31, G32, G33, G34, G35, G64, G65, G94, G95, G96, G97, G112 and G113, those commands effective when G85, G86, G87 or G88 is commanded become active after completion of the LAP.
- Nesting from LAP to LAP is not possible.
- If a G code calling for the LAP (G85, G86, G87 and G88) is designated while the nose radius compensation mode is active, an alarm results.
- Nose radius compensation can be activated during a LAP; however, be sure to cancel the activated nose radius compensation mode before the G80 block which indicates the end of contour definition.
Nose radius compensation (G41/G42) can be designated only in the blocks which define the finish contour (G81/G82 - G80).

NAT01 G83

N0001 G01 Xa Za

:

:

N0010 G81

N0011 G00 Xa Za G41

:

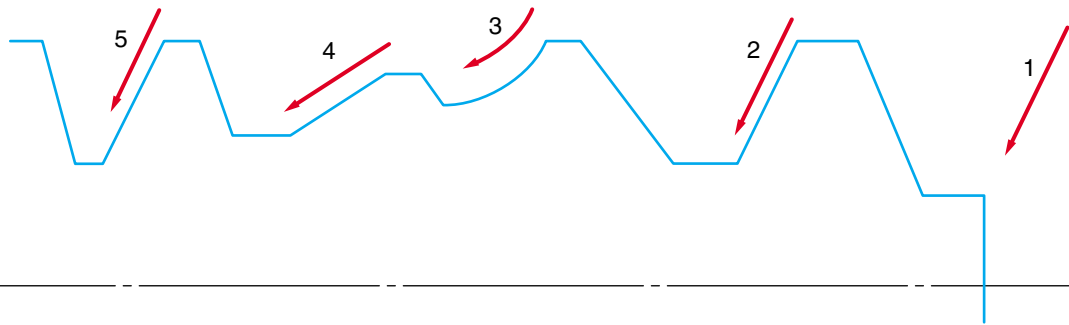
:

N0020

N0032 G80 Xj Zj G40

Be sure to activate and cancel the LAP
function between G81 (G82) block and G80 block.

- The maximum programmable number of descending slopes in AP Mode I and AP Mode IV is ten (10).



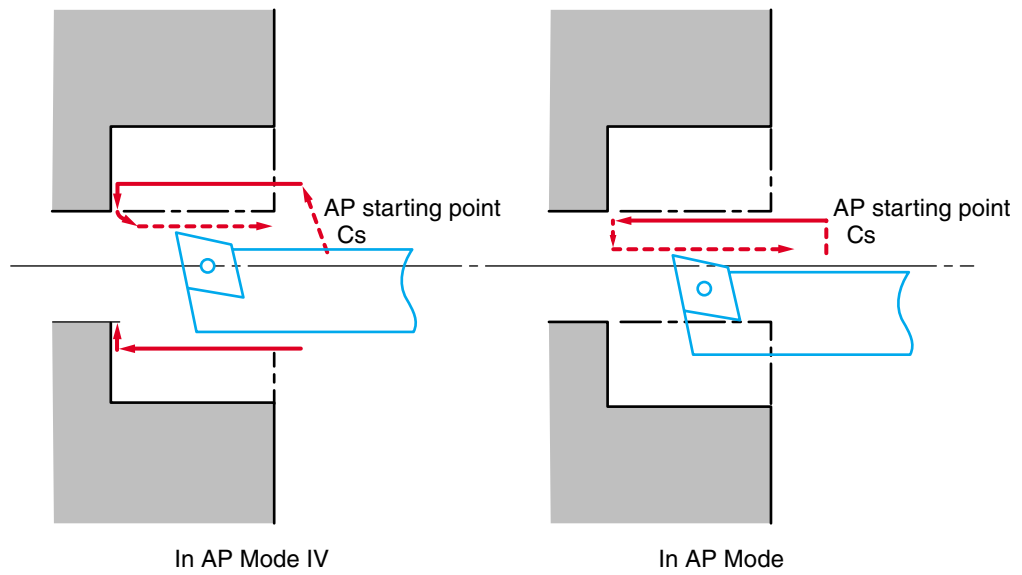
For the shape illustrated above, the number of descending slopes is five. If more than ten descending slopes are programmed, an alarm results.

- An overcut may occur in descending slopes if both U and W are designated for descending cutting. Designate "U" for longitudinal cutting, and "W" for transverse cutting. (When U or W is designated, the tool is offset in the X- or Z-axis direction.)
- In AP Mode IV and AP Mode V, the first sequence name of the contour definition blocks starting with G83 can be designated by specifying G87. In this case, the blank material shape defined in the blocks between G83 and G81/G82 is ignored. The program examples used in this section are created so that G87 calls for the sequence number of the finish contour definition block starting with G81/G82.
- When the blocks which define the blank material shape are deleted from the NC program intended for the AP Mode IV or AP Mode V, the program can be run in the AP Mode I or AP Mode II. To allow this change, call the same sequence number as called in the G81/G82 block in the G85/G86 block. When the AP Mode has been changed, tool path is changed accordingly. Special care must be taken in the following cases.

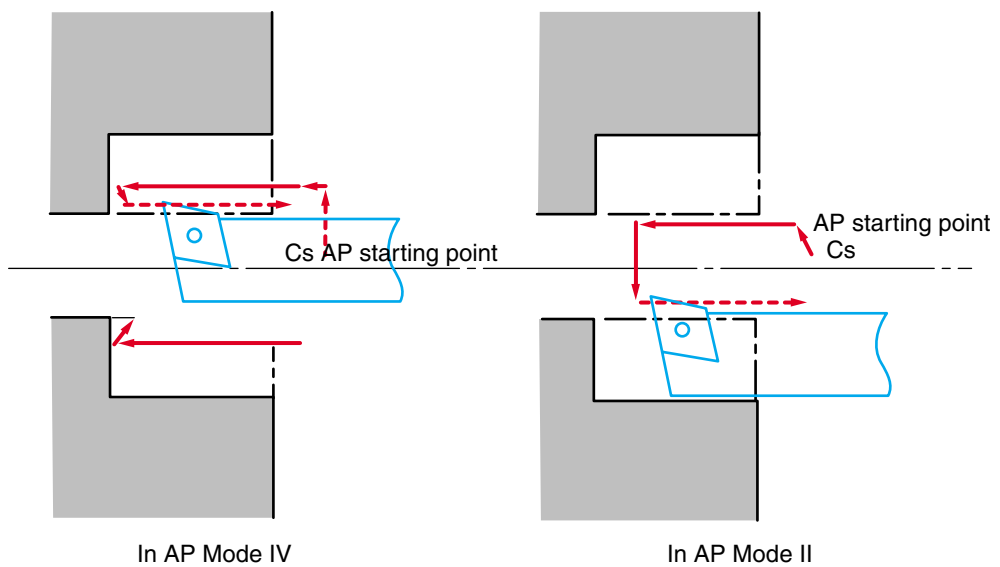
(1) ID machining

The cutting tool may interfere with the workpiece. Correct the program as necessary, for example, change the AP starting point.

From AP Mode IV to AP Mode I



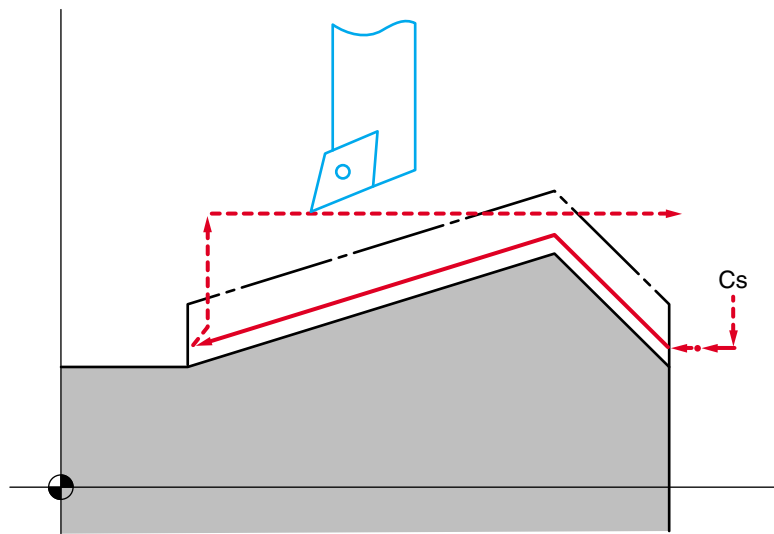
From AP Mode V to AP Mode II



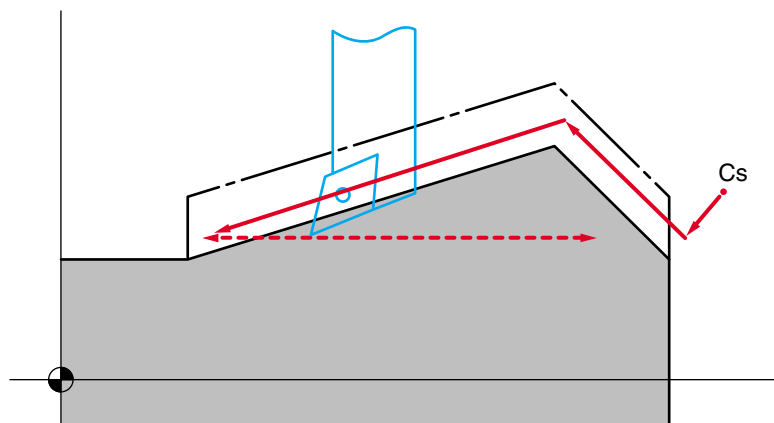
(2) Copy turning in descending slope

In the AP Mode II, the diameter must be largest at the end point of the contour definition portion (must be smallest in ID turning). Otherwise, the cutting tool interferes with the workpiece.

From AP Mode V to AP Mode II



In AP Mode V

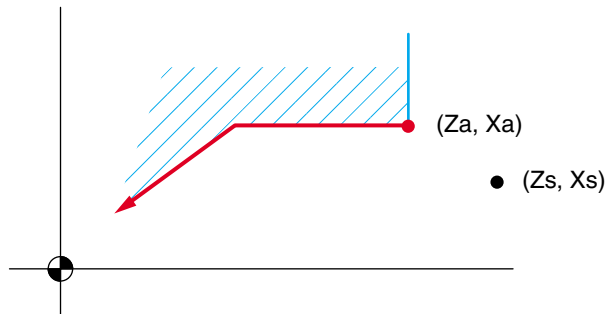


In AP Mode II

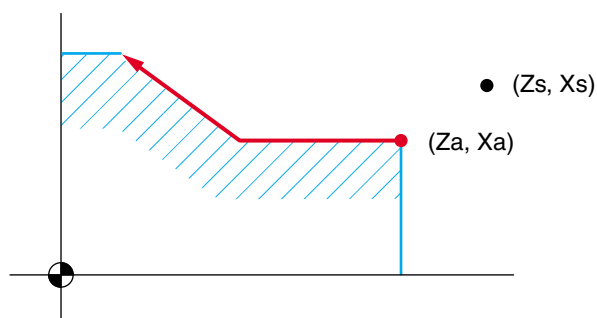
SECTION 8 LATHE AUTO-PROGRAMMING FUNCTION (LAP)

The relationship between the AP starting point (Z_s, X_s) and the cutting start point (Z_a, X_a) must satisfy the following conditions.

For ID cutting: $Z_s > Z_a, X_s < X_a$

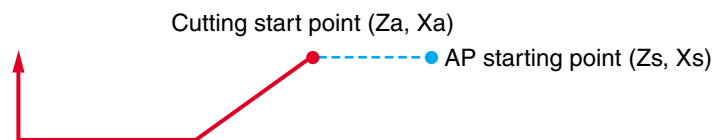


For OD cutting: $Z_s > Z_a, X_s > X_a$



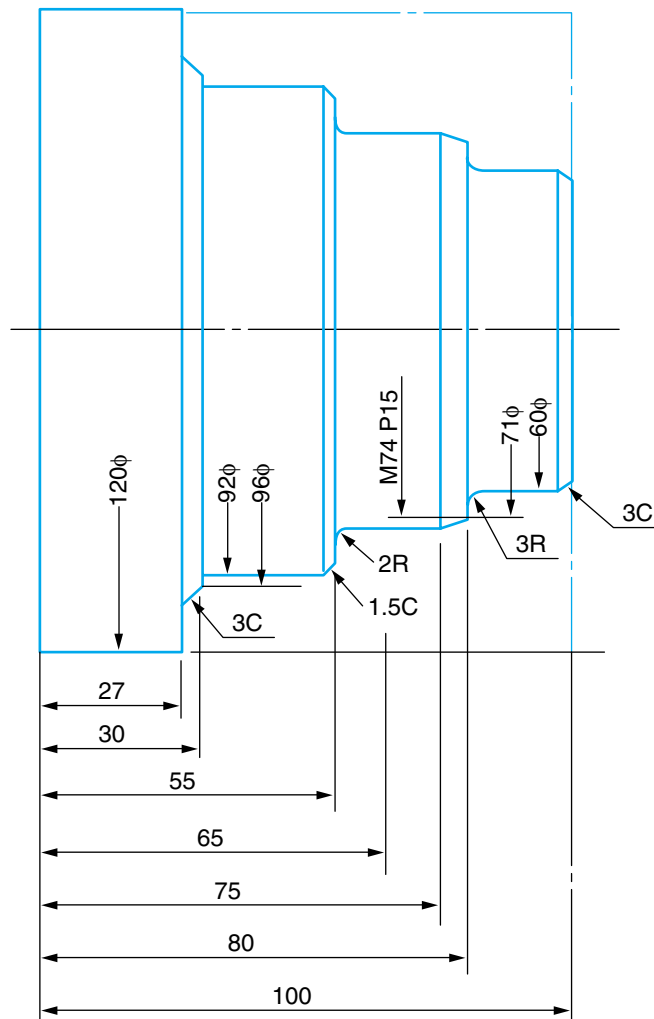
Bear the above relationships in mind when designating the AP starting point and the cutting start point.

Example:



When the cutting start point and the AP starting point are designated as illustrated above (where $X_s = X_a$), a cycle operation error will occur.

11. Application of LAP Function



(1) Machining Example using the AP Mode I

Program Example:

O0001

NAT1 G81

N001 G00 X54 Z102

N002 G01 Z100 F0.2

N003 X60 Z97

N004 Z83

N005 G02 X66 Z80 I3

N006 G01 X71

N007 X74 Z75 E0.4

N008 Z57

N009 G02 X78 Z55 I2 E0.45

N010 G01 X89

N011 X92 Z53.5 E0.4

N012 Z30

N013 X96 E0.45

N014 X102 Z27

N015 X122

N016 G80

(Contour Definition)

N100 G00 X800 Z102

N101 S900 T0101 M43 M03

N102 X122

N103 G85 NAT1 D8 U0.2 F0.45

N104 G00 X900 Z102

N105 S1000 T0303

N106 G87 NAT1

N107 G00 X800 Z102

N108 S950 T0505

N109 X80 Z85

N110 G33 X72.9 Z65 F1.5

N111 X72.3

N112 X71.9

N113 X71.73

N114 G00 X800 Z102 M05

N115 M02

(Tool change position)

(S, T, and M for rough turning cycle)

(Rough turning start point)

(Calling for bar turning rough turning cycle)

(S, T, and M for finish turning cycle)

(Calling for finish turning cycle)

* A contour defining program beginning with G81 and ending with G80 may be entered at any position within this program.

(2) Machining Example using the AP Mode IV

Program Example:

```

O0002

NAT1  G83
N001  G01 X54  Z102
N002  G01 X122
N003           Z27
N004  G81
N005  G02 X54  Z102
N006  G01           Z100          F0.2
N007      X60  Z97
N008           Z83
N009  G02 X66  Z80  I3          (Contour Definition)
N010  G01 X71
N011      X74  Z75          E0.4
N012           Z57
N013  G02 X78  Z55  I2          E0.45
N014  G01 X89
N015      X92  Z53.5          E0.4
N016           Z30
N017      X96           E0.45
N018      X102 Z27
N019      X122
N020  G80

N100  G00 X800 Z102          (Tool change position)
N101           S900 T0101 M43 M03 (S, T, and M for rough turning cycle)
N102      X122          (Rough turning start point)
N103  G85 NAT1 D8  U0.2 F0.45 (Calling for bar turning rough turning cycle)
N104  G00 X800 Z102
N105           S1000 T0303 (S, T, and M for finish turning cycle)
N106  G87 N004          (Calling for finish turning cycle)
N107  G00 X800 Z102
N108           S950 T0505
N109      X80  Z85
N110  G33 X72.9 Z65  F1.5
N111      X72.3
N112      X71.9
N113      X71.73
N114  G00 X800 Z102          M05
N115           M02

```

* A contour defining program beginning with G81 and ending with G80 may be entered at any position within this program.

SECTION 9 CONTOUR GENERATION

1. Contour Generation Programming Function (Face)

1-1. Function Overview

The contour generation function can cut straight lines or arcs on the end face of a workpiece by simultaneous two-axis interpolation of the C- and X-axes on multi-machining models.

Note that simultaneous three-axis control of X, Z, and C axes is possible for straight line cutting on a plane.

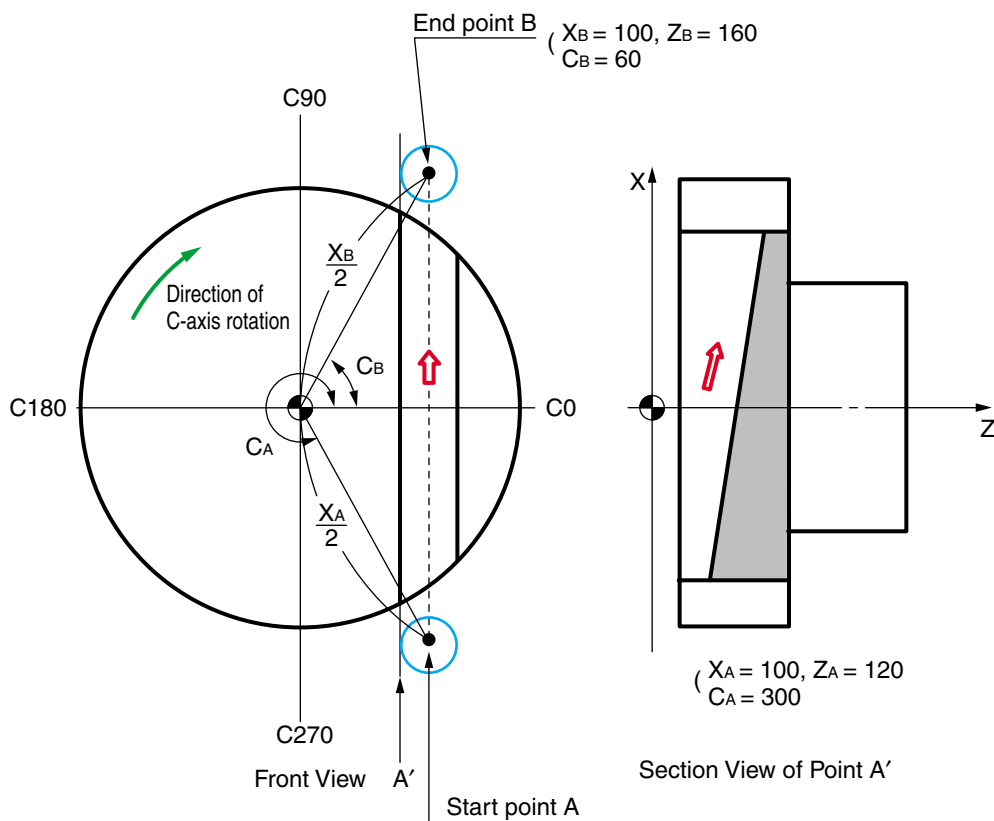
1-2. Programming Format

| | | |
|-----------------------|---|---|
| Straight line cutting | : | G101 X Z C F |
| | | X, Z, C : Coordinates of target point on straight line |
| | | F : Feedrate (mm/min) |
| Arc cutting | : | G102 X C L F |
| | | X, C : Coordinates of end point of clockwise arc |
| | | L : Arc radius |
| | | F : Feedrate (mm/min) |
| | : | G103 X C L F |
| | | X, C : Coordinates of end point of counterclockwise arc |
| | | L : Arc radius |
| | | F : Feedrate (mm/min) |

1-3. Programming Examples

(1) Straight line cutting G101)

Example 1:



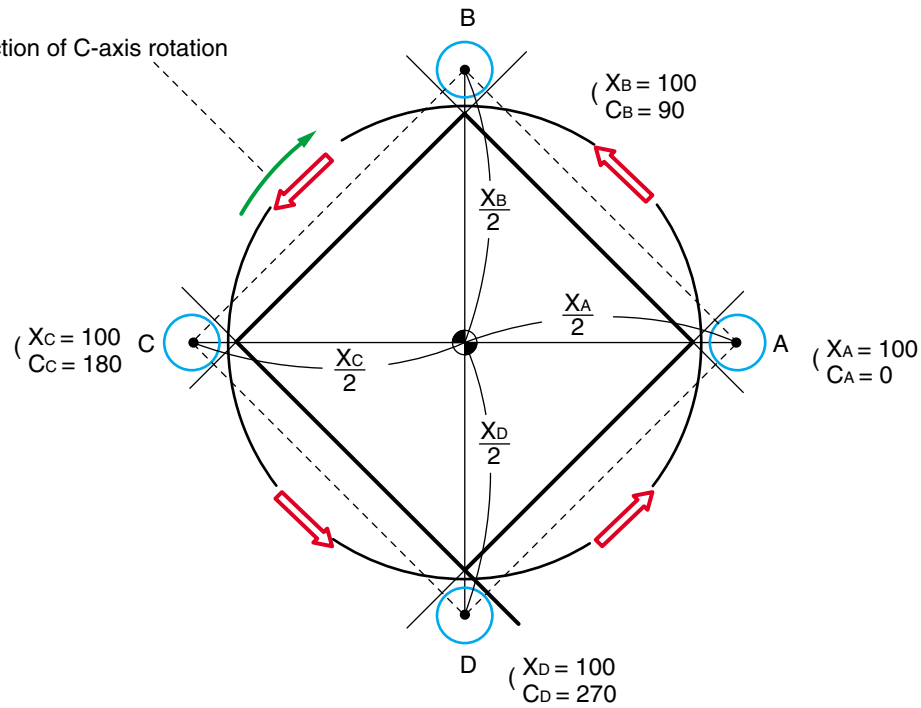
Program 1: Simultaneous 2-axis control of X and C axes

| | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|----------|----------------------|
| N101 | M110 | | | | | C-axis join |
| N102 | M146 | M15 | | | | C-axis unclamp |
| N103 | G00 | X100 | C300 | T0101 | SB = 250 | Positioning |
| N104 | G94 | | Z120 | M13 | | Start point A |
| N105 | G101 | | C60 | F30 | | End point B |

Program 2: Simultaneous 3-axis control of X, Z and C axes

| | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|----------|----------------------|
| N101 | M110 | | | | | C-axis join |
| N102 | M146 | M15 | | | | C-axis unclamp |
| N103 | G00 | X100 | C300 | T0101 | SB = 250 | Positioning |
| N104 | G94 | | Z120 | M13 | | Start point A |
| N105 | G101 | Z160 | C60 | F30 | | End point B |

Example 2:



Program:

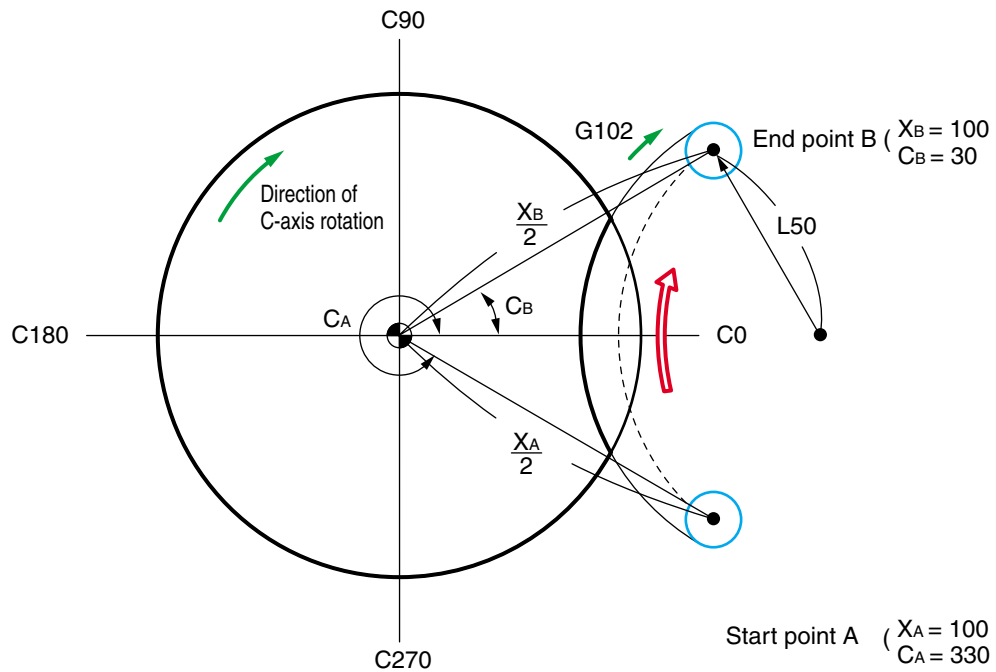
```

:
:
N101  M110          ..... C-axis join
N102  M146  M15     ..... C-axis unclamp
N103  G00  X100  C0   T0101  SB = 250 ..... Positioning
N104  G94          Z120  M13 ..... Start point A
N105  G101         C90   F30 ..... End point B
N106          C180 ..... End point C
N107          C270 ..... End point D
N108          C0 ..... End point A
:
:

```

(2) Arc cutting (G102, G103)

Example 1: G102



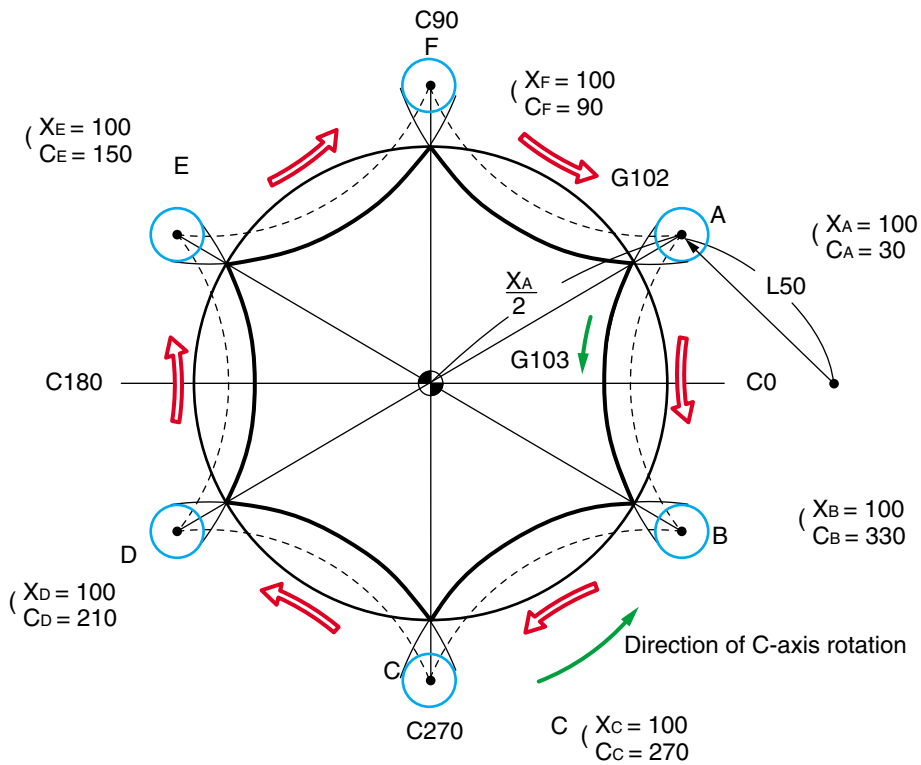
Program:

```

:
:
N101 M110 ..... C-axis join
N102 M146 M15 ..... C-axis unclamp
N103 G00 X100 C330 T0101 SB = 250 ..... Positioning
N104 G94 Z120 M13 ..... Start point A
N105 G102 C30 L50 F30 ..... End point B
:
:

```


Example 2: G103



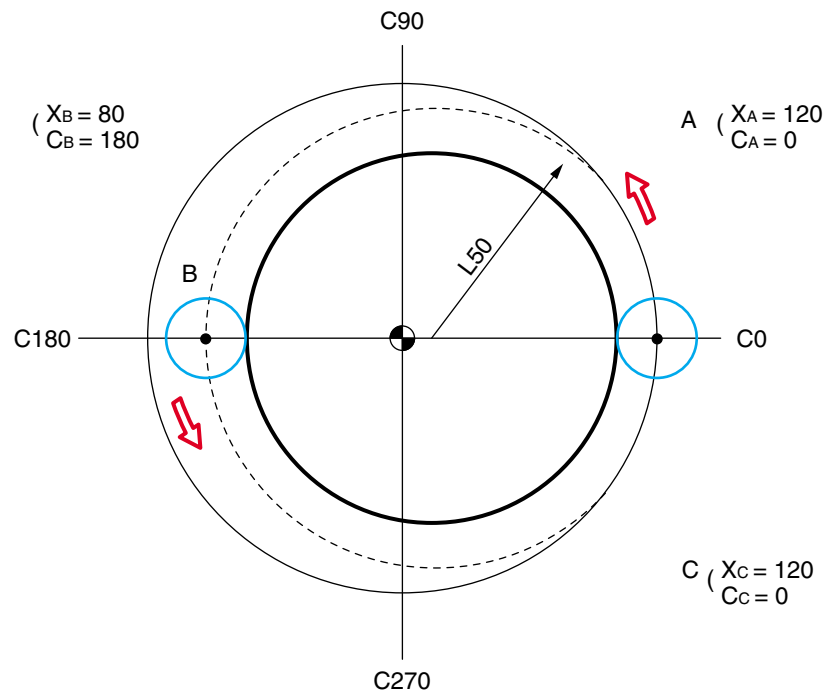
Program:

```

:
:
N101  M110          ..... C-axis join
N102  M146  M16     ..... C-axis unclamp
N103  G00  X100  C30  T0101  SB = 250 ..... Positioning
N104  G94          Z120      M13     ..... Start point A
N105  G103        C330  L50  F30     ..... End point B
N106          C270  L50           ..... End point C
N107          C210  L50           ..... End point D
N108          C150  L50           ..... End point E
N109          C90   L50           ..... End point F
N110          C30   L50           ..... End point A
:
:

```

Example 3: G103



Program:

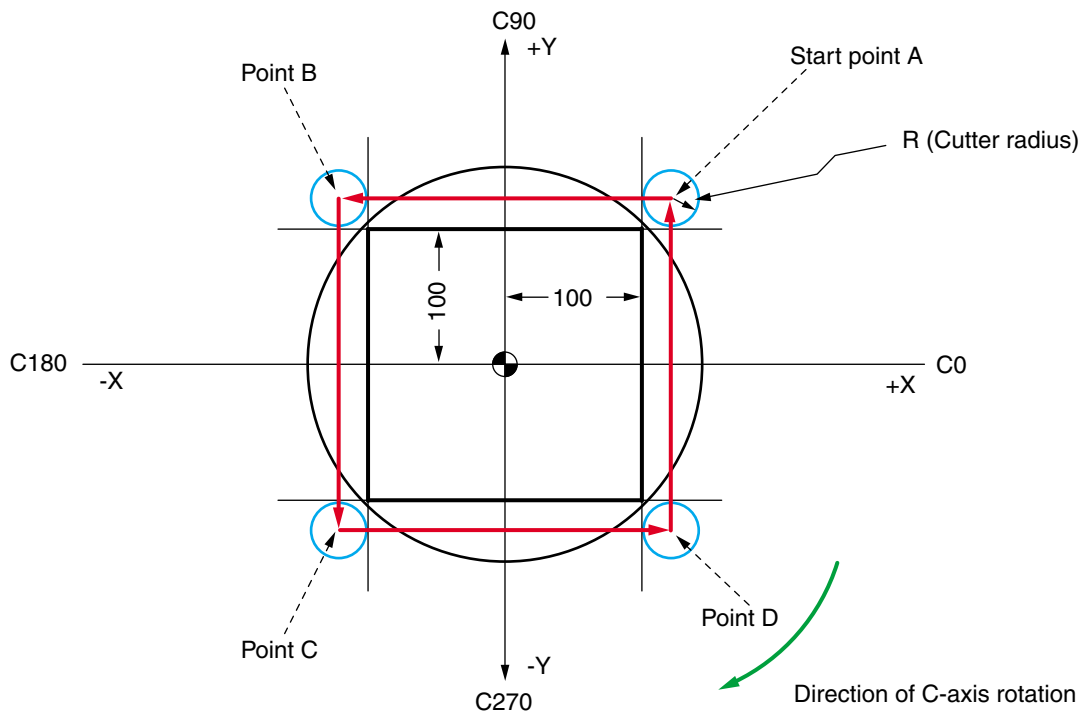
```

:
:
N101  M110           ..... C-axis join
N102  M146  M15     ..... C-axis unclamp
N103  G00  X120  C0   T0101  SB = 250 ..... Positioning
N104  G94  Z120  M13           ..... Start point A
N105  G103 X80  C80  L50  F30 ..... End point B
N106           X120  C0  L50 ..... End point C
:
:

```

(3) Combination with Coordinate System Conversion Function

Example 1:



$V1 = R$ (cutter radius)

The cutter radius value should be set for common variable V1 in advance.

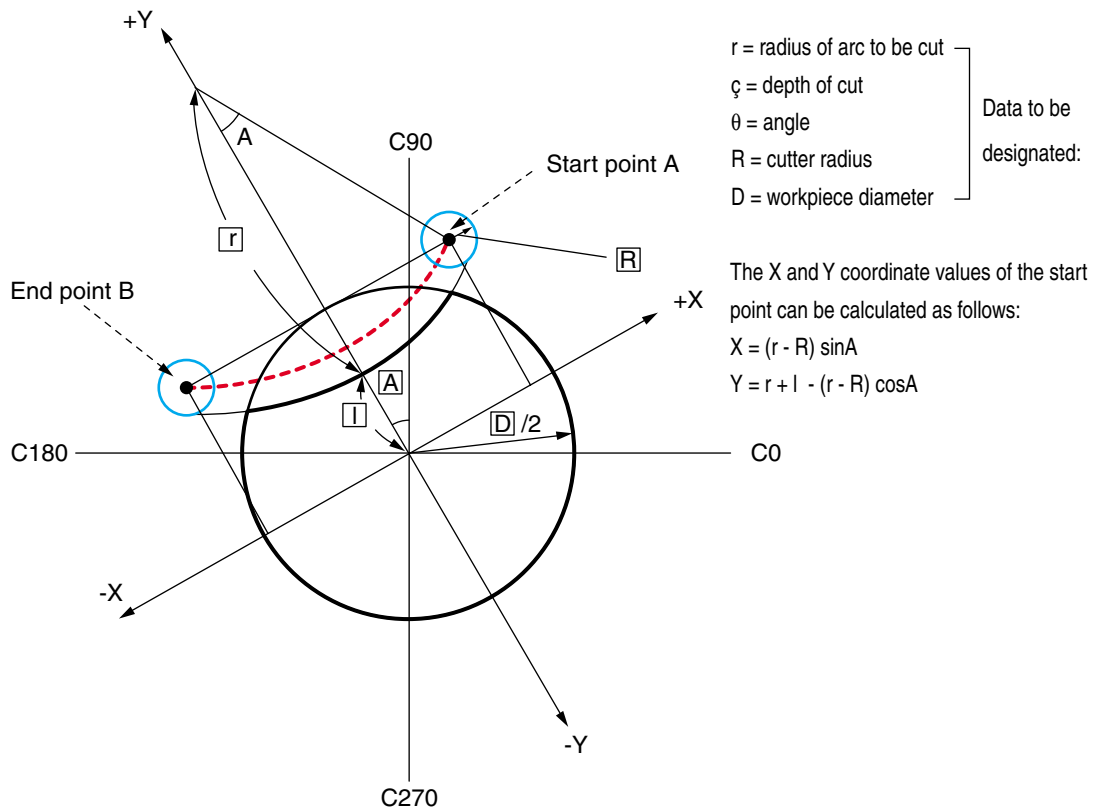
Program:

```

:
:
N101 M110 ..... C-axis join
N102 M146 M15 ..... C-axis unclamp
N103 G137 C0 ..... Start of coordinate system conversion
N104 G00 X100+V1 Y100+V1 T0101 SB = 250
N105 G94 Z100 M13 ..... Positioning at start point A
N106 G101 X-100-V1 Y100+V1 F30 ..... Cutting up to point B
N107 X-100-V1 Y-100-V1 ..... Cutting up to point C
N108 X100+V1 Y-100-V1 ..... Cutting up to point D
N109 X100+V1 Y100+V1 ..... Cutting up to point A
N110 G136 ..... End of coordinate system conversion
:
:

```

Example 2:



Where:

$$A = \cos^{-1} \frac{(c + r)^2 + (r - R)^2 - (D/2 + R)^2}{2(c + r)(r - R)} \quad \text{-----} (*)$$

Assuming $r = 220$ mm, $c = 60$ mm, $\theta = 30^\circ$, $R = 20$ mm and $D = 250$ mm, then value A will be greater than 29.6° . Use 35° for value A.

V1 = R (cutter radius)

The cutter radius R should be set for common variable V1 in advance.

Program:

```

      :
      :
N101  M110          ..... C-axis join
N102  M146  M15    ..... C-axis unclamp
N103  G137  C30    ..... Start of coordinate system conversion
N104  G00   X[200-V1]*SIN[35]  Y220+60-[200-V1]*COS[35]
      T0101  SB=250
N105  G94   Z100   M13          ..... Positioning at start point A
N106  G102  X-[200-V1]*SIN[35]  Y220+60-[200-V1]*COS[35]
      L220-20  F30          ..... Cutting up to point B
N107  G136          ..... End of coordinate system conversion
      :
      :

```

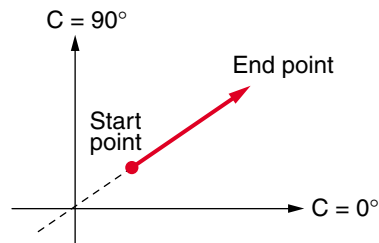
NOTICE

If the control does not support user task 2 (optional), it cannot perform trigonometric function calculations. Therefore, programming must be done by directly entering numeric values.

1-4. Supplementary Information

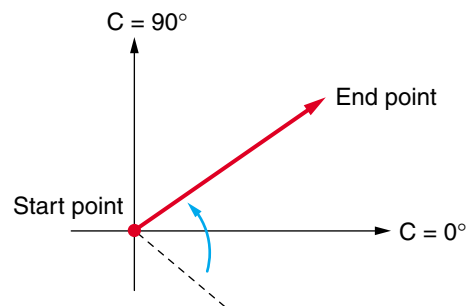
- Special operation in the G101 mode
If the tool paths commanded without the cutter radius compensation function or the tool paths calculated as a result of activation of the cutter radius compensation function are straight lines passing through the center of the X-C coordinate, the following special operation occurs.

- (1) When the C commands of the start and end points are the same:



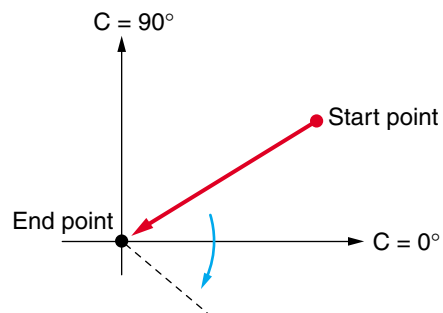
Although the G101 command calls for compound X- and C-axis motion, only the X-axis moves in this case (the same as G01 motion).

- (2) When the start point lies at the center and the C commands of the start and end points differ:



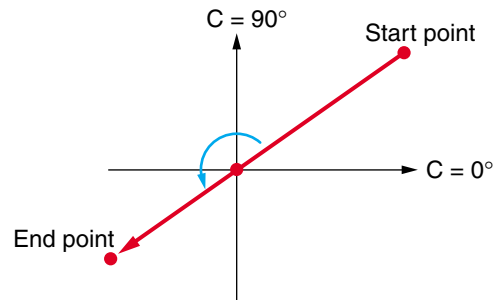
In this case, only the C-axis moves until the commanded value is reached; then X-axis motion occurs.

- (3) When the end point lies at the center and the C commands of the start and end points differ:



This case is the opposite of (2) above; only the X-axis moves until the commanded value is reached; then C-axis motion occurs.

- (4) When the start and end points lie at the opposite sides of the C-axis center with the C-axis commands at these points 180° apart:



In this case, first only the X-axis moves until it reaches "0". Then, the C-axis moves by 180 degrees; after the completion of the 180-degree motion, the X-axis moves again.

In motions in 2), 3), and 4) above, C-axis motion is also controlled by the commanded feedrate. It is possible to activate the C-axis feedrate override by the setting at C-axis center override (%) of optional parameter (MULTIPLE MACHINING).

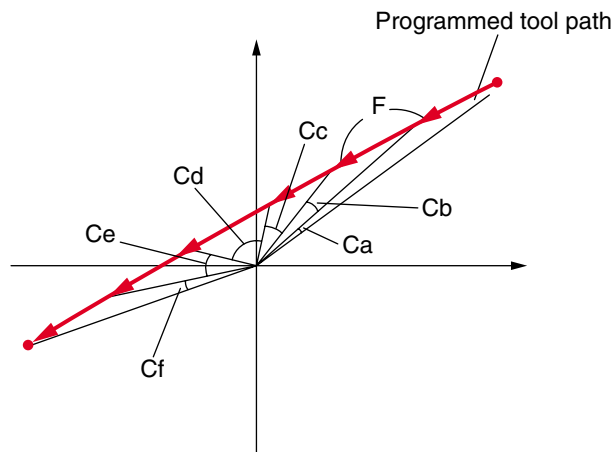
Special operation during G101 mode: Override value for C-axis feed is set.

Setting range: 1 - 1000 (Unit: %)

Initial value: 100 (%)

- Automatic feedrate control function

If the commanded paths pass close the center of the X-C coordinate, the C-axis feedrate calculated from the designated compound feedrate (compound feedrate of X and C axes) might be excessively large.



For the commanded feedrate F, the C-axis feedrates change in the sequence Ca, Cb, Cc and Cf. In this case, the C-axis feedrate is the maximum at Cd.

An excessively large C-axis feedrate to provide the commanded feedrate will cause the CON velocity alarm. The feedrate is limited automatically so that the C-axis feedrate will not exceed the CON velocity limit.

In this case, however, the programmed feedrate changes during the execution of the commands. Therefore, it is possible to ignore this automatic limitation by turning the automatic control function OFF with the setting at Auto limit for C-axis feedrate of optional parameter (MULTIPLE MACHINING).

- In the G101, G102, and G103 mode, the direction of C-axis rotation is determined by the control according to the programmed shape, regardless of M15 or M16.
- An alarm occurs if a C-axis command is designated in the M109 or M147 mode.
- In the G102 or G103 mode, two arcs, satisfying the start and end points and arc radius L, are obtained. The control selects the arc with a center angle of less than 180°. This means an arc having a center angle of larger than 180° cannot be machined with a single block of commands. In this kind of case, divide the arc to make a program.
If the G102 or G103 block does not contain an L command, the L value is not positive, or L is too small to define an arc, an alarm occurs.
- In the G102 or G103 mode, Z-axis control is not possible.
An alarm occurs if a Z-axis command is specified.
- To carry out the contour generation machining with the cutter radius compensation function ON, program the final shape. To carry out the contour generation machining with the cutter radius compensation function OFF, program the cutter center paths.
- To give the face contour generation machining commands, the X-axis must be at a position greater than "0" in the program coordinate system. An alarm occurs if the face contour generation machining commands are specified although the X-axis is at a position not greater than "0" and an alarm occurs.

2. Contour Generation Programming Function (Side)

2-1. Overview

This function carries out arc-form machining on the periphery (side face) of a workpiece on a multiple machining model by feeding the Z-axis while rotating the C-axis.

Programming is performed on the plane which is obtained by developing the cylindrical surface.

Two different planes can be assumed: one is the "outer plane" as shown in Figs. 1 and 2, and the other is the "inner plane" as shown in Figs. 3 and 4.

The plane used for programming, that is, the outer plane or inner plane, can be selected with the parameter indicated below:

- Z-CE coordinate screen of optional parameter (MULTIPLE MACHINING)
 - Outer plane selection (Figs. 1 and 2)
 - Inner plane selection (Figs. 3 and 4)

1) Outer Plane

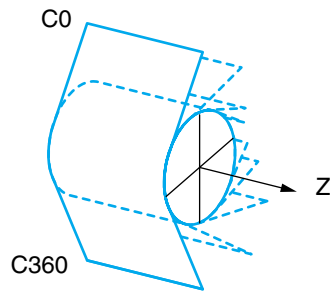


Fig. 1

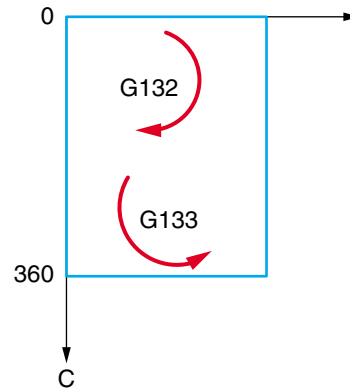


Fig. 2

2) Inner Plane

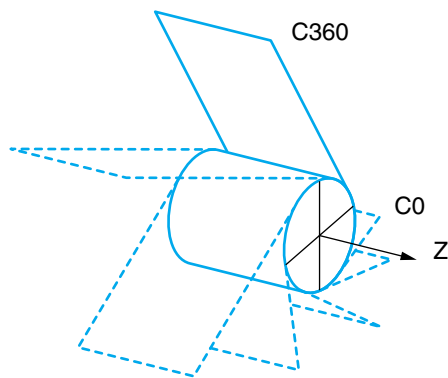


Fig. 3

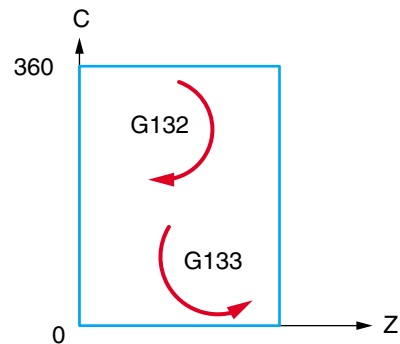


Fig. 4

The circular interpolation direction, tool nose radius compensation direction, and other factors are determined based on the selected plane.

2-2. Programming Format

- Circular interpolation (CW) on side face : G132 Z C L F
 Z, C : Coordinates of end point for circular interpolation (CW) on contour generation side face
 L : Radius of arc on side face
 F : Cutting feedrate (mm/min)
- Circular interpolation (CCW) on side face : G133 Z C L F
 Z, C : Coordinates of end point for circular interpolation (CCW) on contour generation side face
 L : Radius of arc on side face
 F : Cutting feedrate (mm/min)

2-3. Cautions

- An alarm occurs if the X coordinate value of the start and end points are different. This is because the coordinate plane will be changed if the X coordinate values are different.
- For circular interpolation between two points A and B on the side face, there are two possible paths which have the same radius. In this case, the arc whose center angle is less than 180° is selected. In Fig. 5 below, the arc "a" is generated.

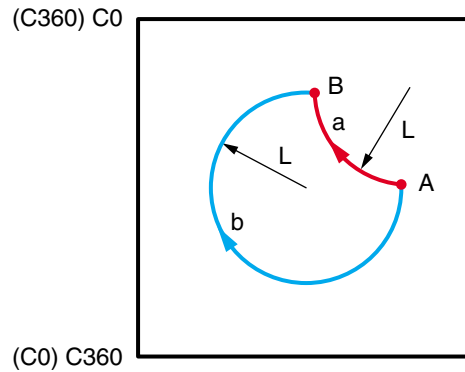


Fig. 5

The values in parentheses are for the inner plane.

- For circular interpolation between two points A and B on the side face, there are two possible paths which have the same radius and a center angle of less than 180° since the C-axis is a rotary axis and the coordinate values are continuous in 360 degree cycles.

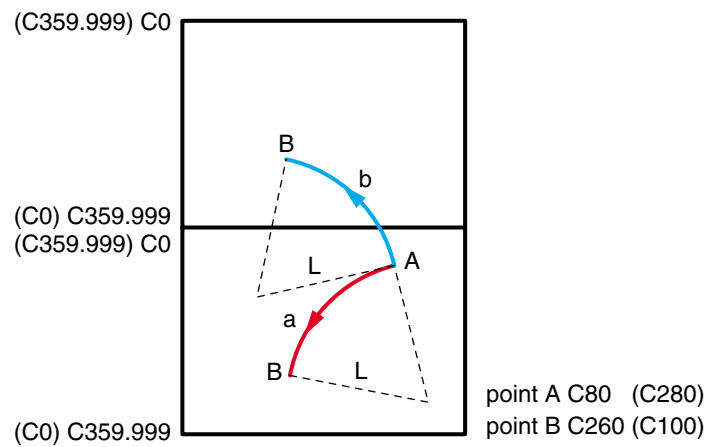


Fig. 6

In such a case, an arc is generated according to M15/M16 (C-axis forward/reverse rotation command) designated preceding the arc command.

Arc "a" is generated when M15 is designated.

Arc "b" is generated when M16 is designated.

The values in parentheses are for the inner plane (in both the figures and the text).

NOTICE

When the C-axis is joined, machining is possible within a C-axis rotation range of 5965 turns (5965 turns for the 0.1 μm specification) in one direction. If side contour generation machining that exceeds this limit is carried out, the following alarm message is displayed.

Alarm B 2480 Profile generation calculation.

If this alarm message is displayed, use the side contour generation programming mode function. The setting method is described below.

(1) Side Contour Generation Programming Mode Function

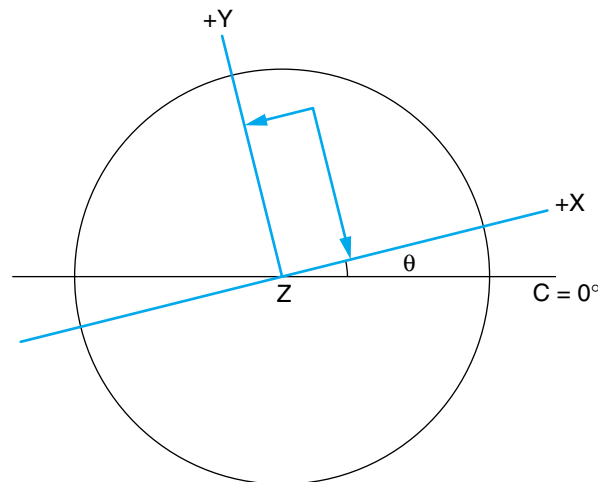
- **Making the mode valid/invalid**
The side contour generation programming mode function is valid when "1" is set at optional parameter (bit) No. 56 bit 4.
 - 1: Side contour generation programming mode function Valid
 - 0: Side contour generation programming mode function Invalid (initial setting)
- **Designating the Side Contour Generation Programming Mode**
The system enters the side contour generation programming mode when G119 is designated and the mode is turned off when G119 is canceled.
Although G119 is originally used for the designation of the Z-C plane as the offset plane in the nose R compensation mode, it is also used to call out the side contour generation programming mode when this function is used.
G119 is canceled in the following cases:
 - Designation of G138 (Y-axis mode ON)
 - Designation of G136 (Y-axis mode OFF)Note that G136 is used as the cancel code for G137 (coordinate conversion ON)
 - Designation of M109 (C-axis control OFF)
 - Reset
- **Restrictions**
When the side contour generation programming mode function is set as valid, the following restrictions apply. The side contour generation programming commands G312 and G313 may be designated only in the side contour programming mode. If G312 or G313 is designated other than in the side contour programming mode, the following alarm message is displayed.
Alarm B 2224 UNUSABLE contour generation command

SECTION 10 COORDINATE SYSTEM CONVERSION

1. Function Overview

Multiple-machining models have a function to convert the program commands designated in the Cartesian coordinate system into X and C-axis data in the polar coordinate system on-line.

This function simplifies programming when a hole on the end face of a workpiece is not specified by the angle but by the vertical distance from a radius vector.



[Programming format]

- Start of coordinate system conversion
G137 C_____
C : Angle of C-axis that defines the orthogonal coordinate system (θ)
- Cancellation of coordinate system conversion
G136

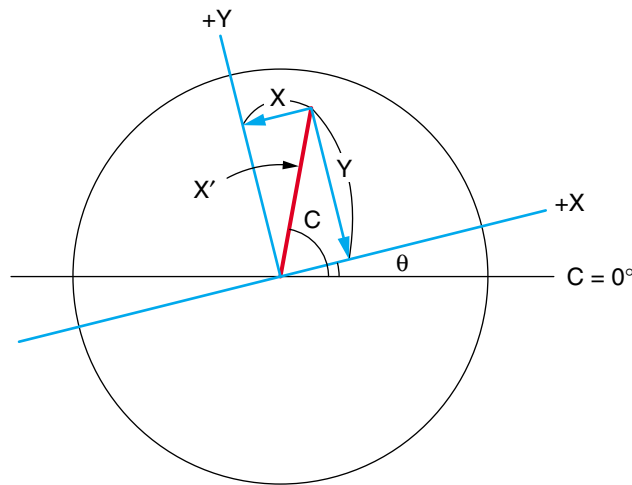
[Details]

- When G137 is designated, a Cartesian coordinate system is set. In this coordinate system, the Z-axis is taken as the zero point, and the straight line in the direction of angle C designated in the G137 block is taken as the positive coordinate axis of X.
After the designation, commands are given using the X and Y words instead of using the X and C words. Values for the X and Y words are given as radius values. Prefix X and Y words of the specified Cartesian coordinate system with a plus (+) or minus (-) sign.

| | | | |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|
| First quadrant | : X > 0 Y > 0 | Second quadrant | : X < 0 Y > 0 |
| Third quadrant | : X < 0 Y < 0 | Fourth quadrant | : X > 0 Y < 0 |
- After the completion of positioning using X and Y words in the G137 mode, proceed to machining. As the machining mode, select a compound fixed cycle or G01.
Since G00, G01, and G codes designating compound fixed cycles are canceled by G137, designate them in the next block.
- If the coordinate conversion command is designated while the X- or Z- axis is at its travel end limit position, an alarm occurs.

2. Conversion Format

The radius vector and C-axis angle after coordinate conversion are calculated with the formula below.



$$\text{Radius vector, } X' = \sqrt{X^2 + Y^2}$$

$$\text{Angle, } C = \tan^{-1}(Y/X) + \theta$$

3. Program Examples

G137 is effective until G136 is designated. Do not designate other commands in the G136 block.

For the C command in a G137 block, designate the angle in reference to the C-axis zero point. This angle is equivalent to "θ" in the figure in 2. "Conversion Format" above.

After designation of G137, use X and Y words instead of X and C words as positioning commands until G136 is designated.

Example 1: Fixed cycle machining at P1

```

N01    G137    C20
N02    G181    X10    Y50    Z125    Q2    F30    K10
N03    G180
N04    G136

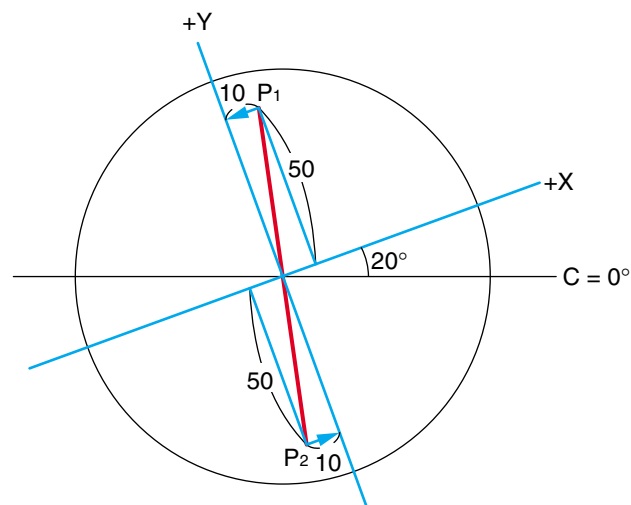
```

Example 2: G01 mode machining at P2

```

N011   G137   C20
N012   G00   X-10   Y-50
N013   G94
N014   G01   Z125   F30
N015   G00   Z150
N016   G136

```



Note: Use X and Y words only for positioning.

4. Supplementary Information

When creating the orthogonal coordinate system by the coordinate system conversion command, it is possible to select whether or not the C-axis zero shift is included by the setting at the following parameter:
C-axis zero shift in G137 of optional parameter (MULTIPLE MACHINING)

NOTICE

- 1) Designate both X and Y words in the first block after the G137 block. When only an X or Y word is designated, an alarm occurs. This does not apply to the subsequent blocks.
- 2) When an incremental command is designated in the G137 mode, an alarm occurs. To designate incremental commands in the G137 mode, proceed as follows.
Cancel the incremental programming mode in the block before the G137 block.
Designate X and Y words in the absolute programming mode in the first block following the G137 block.
Designate the incremental programming mode.
Program example:

```

G91          ..... Incremental programming mode ON machining
:
:           Machining
:
G90          ..... Cancel the incremental programming mode before designating G137
G137  C180   ..... Coordinate system conversion
G00  X50  Y50 ..... Designate an absolute value for X and Y
G91          ..... Incremental programming mode ON
G00  X-50
:
:           Machining
:
G90          ..... Cancel the incremental programming mode
G136        ..... Cancel coordinate system conversion
:
:

```

When the G90 before the G137 block is omitted, an alarm occurs.

- 3) When the incremental programming mode (G91) is designated without designating absolute commands in the G137 mode, an alarm occurs.
If G91 is designated in the block right after the G137 block, an alarm occurs.

SECTION 11 PROGRAMMING FOR SIMULTANEOUS 4-AXIS CUTS (2S Model)

This section describes the programming for operations where a single workpiece is machined with two tools at the same time.

1. Programming

1-1. Turret Selection

To write a program for turret A (upper turret) or turret B (lower turret), the turret for which the program is written must be selected first. There are no differences in programming format between the programs for turrets A and B.

G code for selecting turret A : G13

G code for selecting turret B : G14

The G code used to select the turret must always be placed at the start of a program.

All commands in a program beginning with a turret selection G code are effective for the selected turret. To program an operation for the other turret, specify the G code to select it first.

Example:

```

G13
G00      X500    Z500
G00      X100    Z200    T0303
G01      X50     Z150    F4
          X20     Z20     F3
G00      X500    Z500
G14
G00      X500    Z500
G00      X100    Z200    T0303
G01      X50     Z150    F4
          X20     Z20     F3
G00      X500    Z500
M02

```

Turret selection G codes may be specified in a program as many times as necessary. On program execution, the portions of the program governed by the turret selection G codes are separated into G13 side and G14 side programs which are regarded as programs for the individual turrets.

1-2. Synchronization Command (P Code)

[Function]

In simultaneous 4-axis operation, although two turrets can be operated independently, there are operations that require synchronized control of two turrets; spindle rotation during cutting using tools in both turrets is an example that requires such control.

To synchronize the execution timing of the G13 side program and the G14 side program, a special command is provided. This synchronization command is specified using address character P.

[Programming format]

P _ _ _ _

P : Integer (up to four digits)

P codes control the execution order of the G13 side and G14 side programs.

[Details]

Program execution proceeds in order from smaller to larger P code numbers. If a P code is read during the execution of a program, execution of that program is suspended until a P code is read in the other side program. When a P code appears in the other side program, the P code numbers are compared and the program with the smaller P code number is executed. If the P code numbers are the same, both programs are executed. When execution of the program for one turret is completed during suspension of the program for the other turret, execution of the suspended program is resumed.

[Program example]

Spindle rotation commands, spindle speed commands, and gear range selection commands that must be synchronized between the programs of the two turrets should be specified in the manner as indicated below.

```

G13
G00      X500      Z500
                S1500      M42      M03      P10 ... A

G00      X100      Z150
G01                Z50      F3.5                P20 ... B
                M05                P40 ... D

G14
G00      X500      Z500                P10 ... A
                S1500      M42      M03

G00      X130      Z150                P30 ... C
G01      X20                F2.5                P40 ... D
                M05

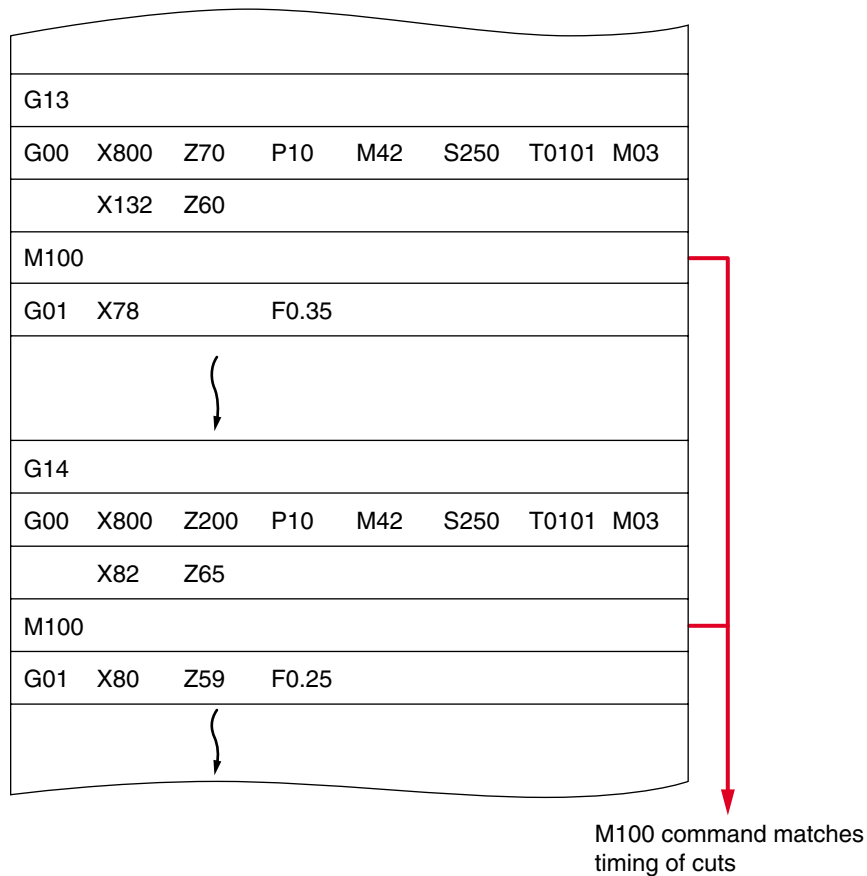
M02

```

In the example program above, block A is executed for both G13 and G14 side programs. Blocks B, C and D are executed in this order.

1-3. Waiting Synchronization M Code (M100) for Simultaneous Cuts

Waiting synchronization of turrets A and B during simultaneous cuts can be commanded with M100.

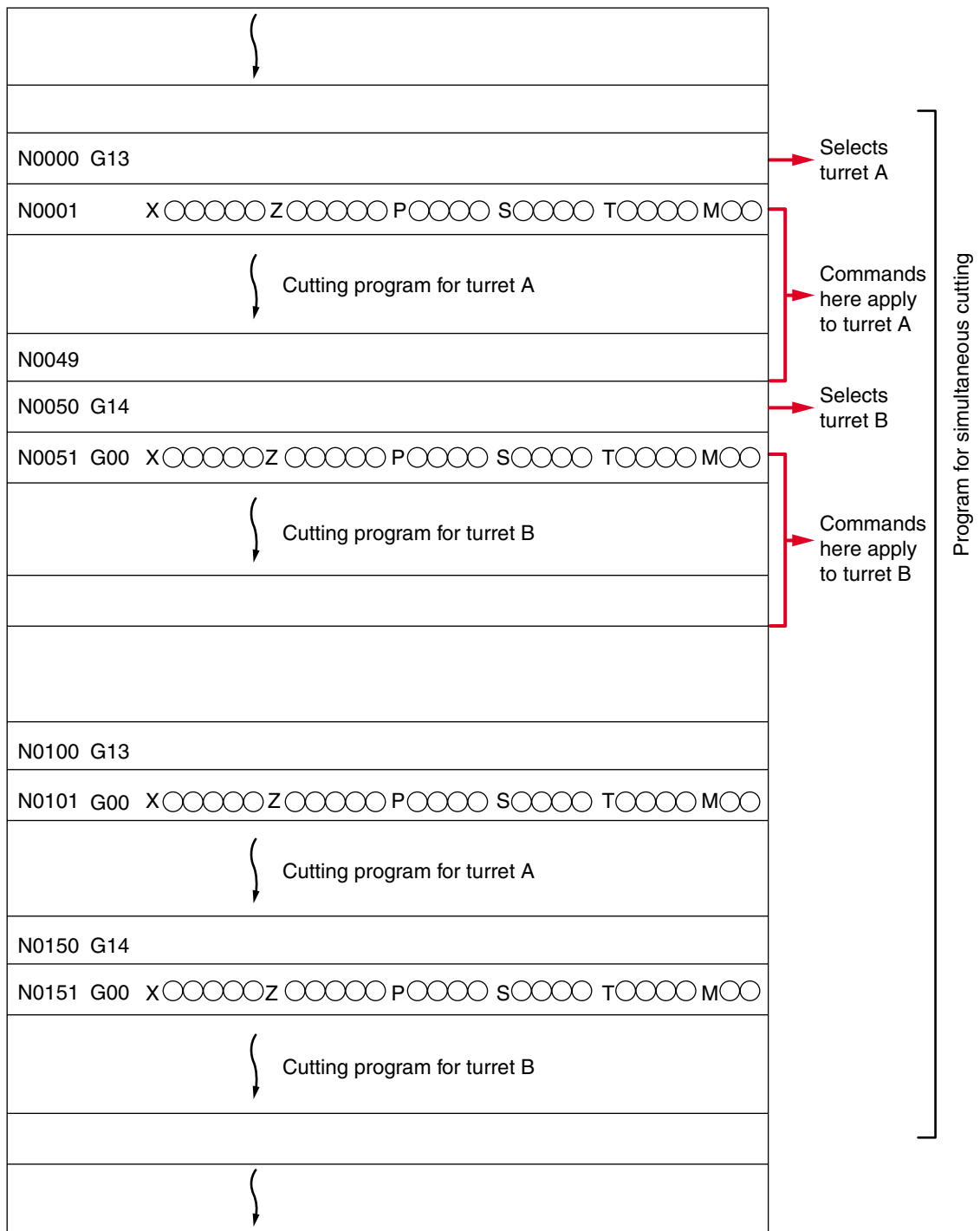


NOTICE

The following points should be considered when synchronizing operations with the M100 command.

- 1) S and M commands cannot be synchronized with the M100 command.
- 2) The same number of M100 codes must be used at both the G13 and the G14 sides in the program. If a different number of M100 codes were to be programmed in the G13 and G14 sides, operation would continue with no waiting time.
- 3) The insertion of an M100 command into a nose R compensation operation will result in an alarm. No advance program reading is conducted during a stop which has been programmed by an M100 command. The nose R compensation, however, requires advance program reading, and for this reason insertion of an M100 command in this operation is not permitted.
- 4) Take special care not to mix P codes and the M100 command. Any attempt to stop one turret by use of an M100 command while the other turret is stopped due to a P code will result in operation continuing with no waiting time at all.

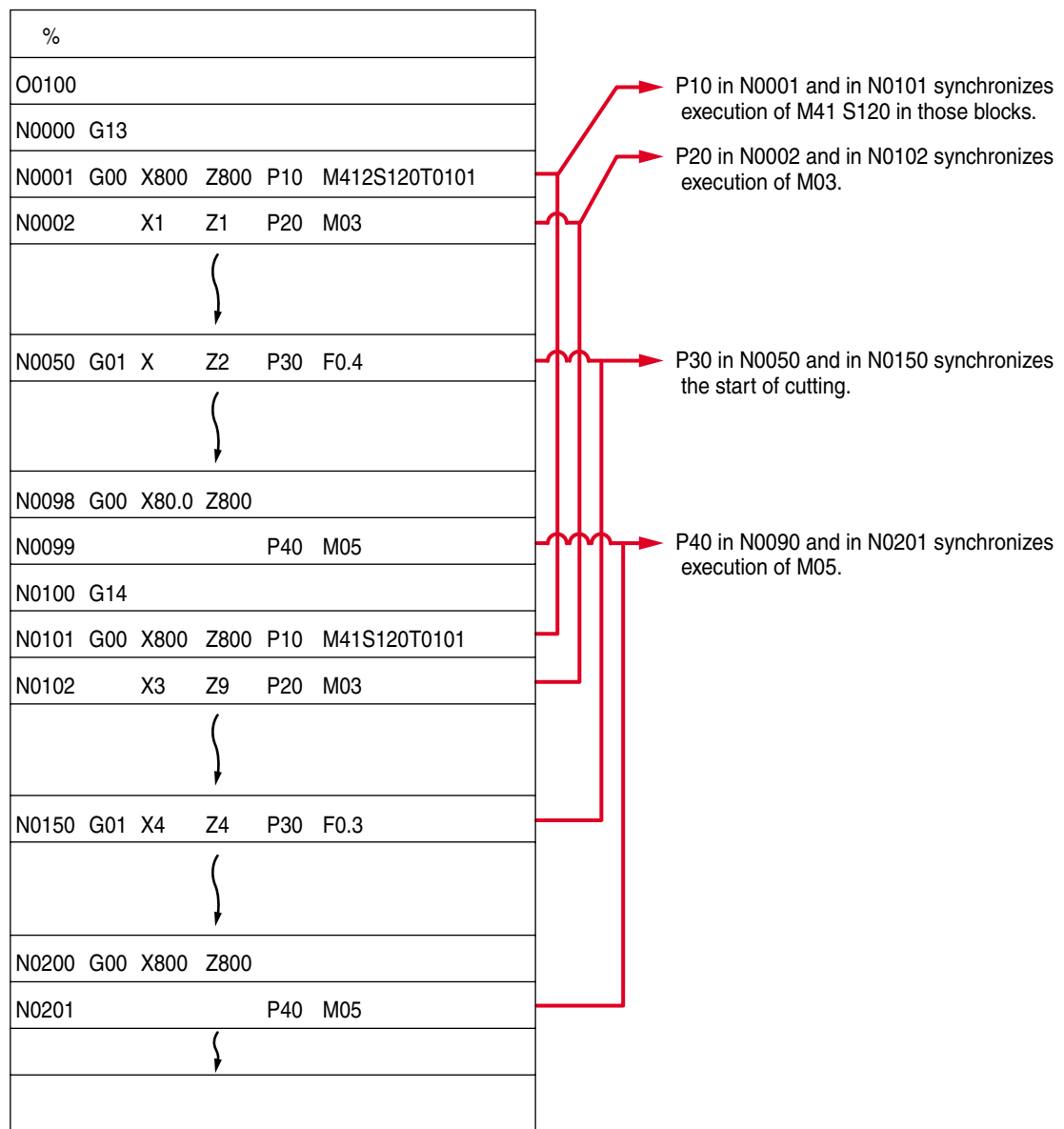
2. Programming Format



SECTION 11 PROGRAMMING FOR SIMULTANEOUS 4-AXIS CUTS (2S Model)

- During the simultaneous 4-axis control mode, S commands, M commands relating to spindle rotation (M00, M01, M03, M04, M05 and M41 through M44), and G96 calling for the constant speed cutting mode must match for turrets A and B. Otherwise, an alarm results.
- If G13 and G14 codes for turret selection are not specified, the machine fails to perform the intended operation.
- The blocks dominated by the respective G codes, G13 and G14, are continuous as a program. That is, N0101 directly follows N0049 and N0151 follows N0099. Therefore, when the S, T, and M commands in these blocks are the same as designated in N0001 and N0051, respectively, they can be omitted.
- Blocks containing S and M commands (M41 through M44, M00, M01, M03, M04 and M05) for turrets A and B, or a G96 code, must also contain P commands assigned the same number (up to four digits) to synchronize the execution of the commands in those blocks at turrets A and B. When synchronization of command execution at the two turrets is required, use the P command.

Program example:



SECTION 11 PROGRAMMING FOR SIMULTANEOUS 4-AXIS CUTS (2S Model)

If the P number in block N0002 is made, for example, P200, i.e., if the P number does not match, the control first executes the commands in N0001 for turret A and those in N0101 for turret B. After that, commands for turret B assigned a P number smaller than P200 are executed, then the commands for turret A are executed from the block containing P200, i.e., N0001. Therefore, P numbers must be assigned sequentially (P10 → P20 → P30) in accordance with the order of command execution.

- It is advisable to use two or three digits for P numbers, rather than just one, to make it easier to correct programs.

Examples: P10 instead of P1
P20 instead of P2

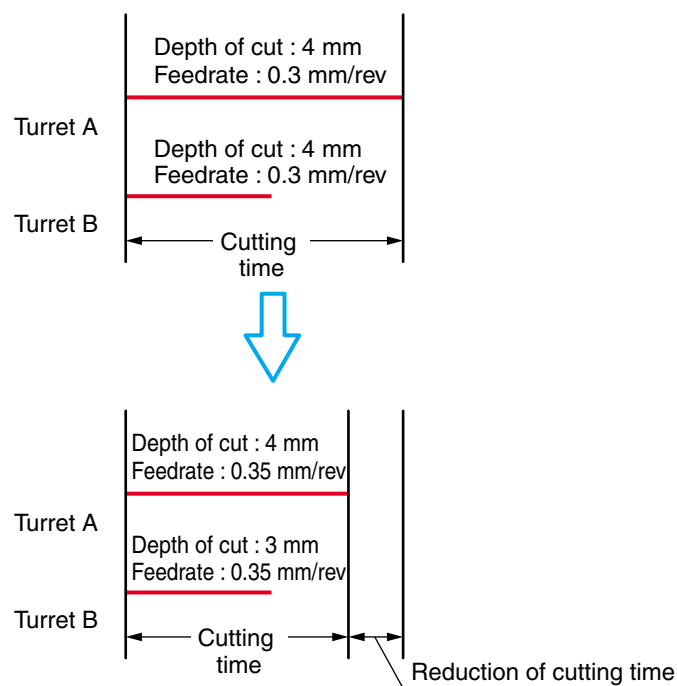
3. Precautions on Programming Simultaneous 4-axis Cuts

The key to efficient simultaneous 4-axis cuts on a 2S model is performing the intended cutting in a well-balanced manner.

When programming simultaneous 4-axis cuts, observe the following points carefully:

- 1) Determine the extent of operations to be performed by turrets A and B.
The cutting times required for these two turrets should be well matched when determining the sections to be cut by each.
- 2) Determine optimum cutting conditions.
 - Since a spindle change cannot be performed during a simultaneous 4-axis cut, the cutting speed will vary according to the diameter being cut. Select the tip material carefully to suit the workpiece material to be cut.
 - Select feedrate and depth of cut by taking the cutting at the two turrets into account:

Example:



- Determine the cutting conditions so that a total of the cutting power required by the two turrets will not exceed the capacity of the machine.

SECTION 11 PROGRAMMING FOR SIMULTANEOUS 4-AXIS CUTS (2S Model)

3) Other considerations

- The use of the INDIVIDUAL switch allows the turrets to be operated independently, facilitating checking of trial cuts.
- Care should be taken to avoid interference:
 - (1) Interference between the boring bar and the chuck
 - (2) When performing end face cutting with the tools on turret A:
 - Interference between tools on turret A and boring bar on turret B,
 - Interference between tools on turret A and ID toolholder on turret B
- Program movements of the tools on turret B taking into account those of turret A. G02 and G03 should also be programmed taking cutting with the tools on turret A into account.
- In constant speed cutting mode operation called for by G96, G110 and G111 select the turret on which constant cutting speed is obtained: G96 G111 calls for constant speed cutting for turret B and G96; G110 cancels G96 G111 and selects constant speed cutting mode on turret A. This feature generates large differences in cutting speeds for the tools on turrets A and B when, for example, performing simultaneous cutting on a workpiece with large diameter differences. Therefore, the cutting portion handled by each turret and the cutting tip material should be selected very carefully.

Program example:

| | | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|------|----|-----|------|------|-----|-------|--|
| G13 | | | | | | | | | |
| G00 | | X1 | Z1 | P10 | S120 | M41 | M03 | T0101 | |
| G96 | G01 | G110 | X2 | Z2 | P20 | S100 | | | |
| ⋮ | | | | | | | | | |
| G13 | | | | | | | | | |
| G00 | | X3 | Z3 | P10 | S120 | M41 | M03 | T0101 | |
| G96 | G01 | G110 | X4 | Z4 | P20 | S100 | | | |
| ⋮ | | | | | | | | | |

The G96
S, M and P commands of
turrets A and B must match.

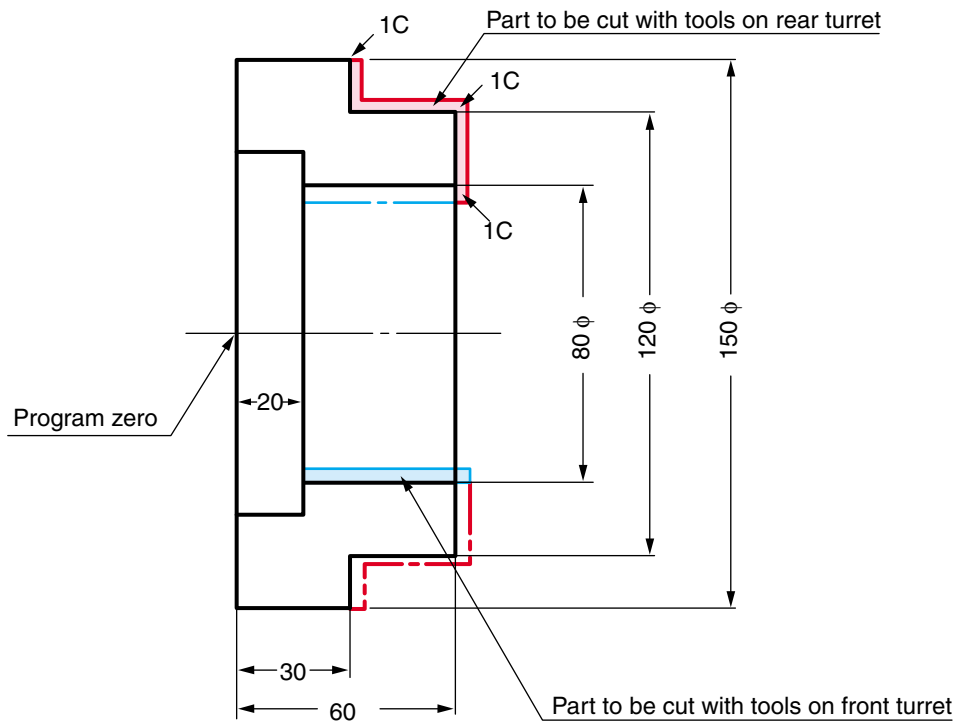
⎵
Even when the constant
speed cutting mode is in
effect, it is active only on
turret A and turret B is
not this mode.

4. Programming Example


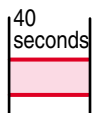

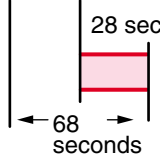
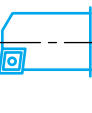
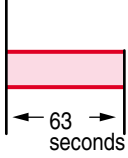
<Workpiece Dimensions>

Material : S45C (JIS, carbon steel)

Stock : 3mm (in radius)



<Tooling and Cutting Conditions>

| Turret | Tool No. | Cutting Tool | Cutting Conditions | Cutting Time |
|--------|----------|---|--|---|
| A | T0101 | Upset tool  Facing | Cutting speed: 120 to 65 m/min. Depth of cut: 3 mm Feedrate: 0.35 mm/rev. |  |
| | T0202 | Upset tool  OD turning | Cutting speed: 95 m/min. Depth of cut: 3 mm Feedrate: 0.4 mm/rev. |  |
| B | T0101 | Normal tool  ID turning | Cutting speed: 65 m/min. Depth of cut: 3 mm Feedrate: 0.25 mm/rev. |  |

The net cutting time per piece is 68 seconds when the part is cut in 4-axis simultaneous cut mode. It is 131 seconds if the part is cut in the conventional manner. This means that simultaneous 4-axis cut yields nearly a 48% saving on cutting time.

SECTION 11 PROGRAMMING FOR SIMULTANEOUS 4-AXIS CUTS (2S Model)

4-1. Program Process Sheet

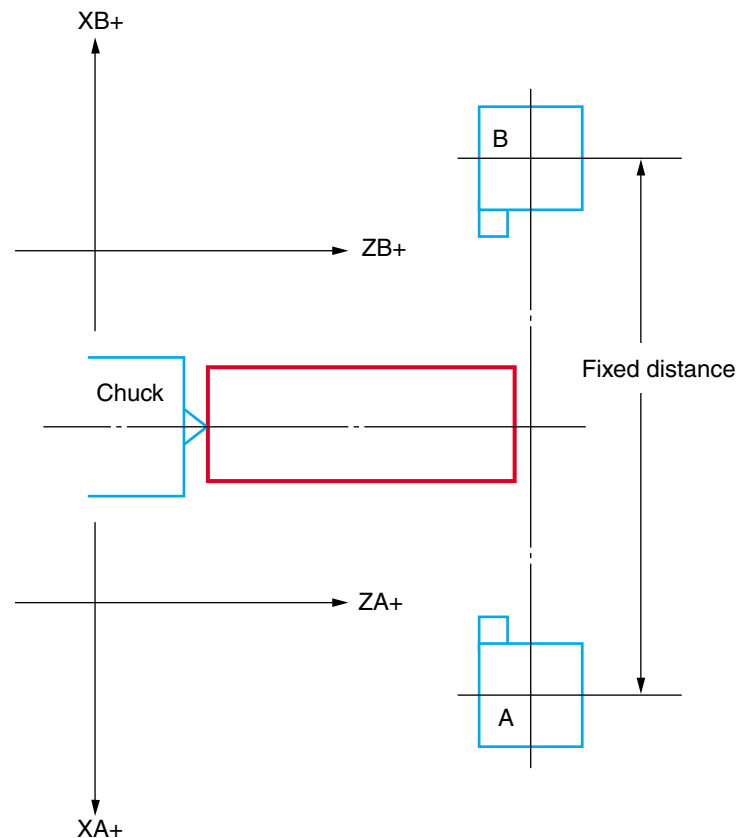
The program below performs simultaneous end face cutting and OD turning by turret A and ID turning by turret B.

| | | | | | | | |
|------|-----|------|-------|-------|--------------------|--|---|
| % | | | | | | | |
| O100 | | | | | | | → Program name |
| N000 | G13 | | | | | | → Selection of turret A |
| N001 | G00 | X800 | Z70 | P10 | M42 S250 T0101 M03 | | → End face cutting with the tool on turret A |
| N002 | | X132 | Z60 | | M08 | | |
| N003 | G01 | X78 | | F0.35 | | | |
| N004 | G00 | X156 | Z63 | | | | |
| N005 | | | Z29 | | | | |
| N006 | G01 | X150 | | | | | |
| N007 | | X148 | Z30 | | | | |
| N008 | | X128 | | | | | |
| N009 | G00 | X800 | Z70 | | | | → OD turning with the tool on turret A |
| N010 | | X112 | Z63 | | Z0202 | | |
| N011 | G01 | X120 | Z59 | F0.4 | | | |
| N012 | | | Z30 | | | | |
| N013 | | X130 | | | | | → Since no P20 command is presented in a program executed by the tool on turret B, this block is executed by turret A only. |
| N014 | G00 | X800 | Z70 | | | | |
| N015 | | | | P20 | M09M05 | | → Selection of turret B |
| N100 | G14 | | | | | | → ID turning with the tool on turret B |
| N101 | G00 | X800 | Z200 | P10 | M42 S250 T0101 M03 | | |
| N102 | | X92 | Z65 | | M08 | | |
| N103 | G01 | X80 | Z59 | F0.25 | | | |
| N104 | | | Z18 | | | | |
| N105 | G00 | X78 | Z100 | | | | |
| N106 | | X800 | Z1000 | | | | |
| N999 | | | | | M02 | | |

SECTION 12 MIRROR IMAGE FUNCTION (2-Turret Model)

1. Outline

The mirror image function is a function for generating a shape symmetrical about a particular axis. It allows the programmer to program cutting with turret B in the same manner as programming with turret A.



With the two-turret specification machines, turret A and turret B are arranged on either side of the spindle centerline. Since these two turrets are mounted on the same saddle, they cannot be controlled independently, but move simultaneously, separated by a fixed distance.

The Mirror Image function helps simplify programming for two-turret models and enables the machine to demonstrate its best performance.

2. Operations

When a part is programmed assuming use of turret A, the mirror image function automatically converts the X-axis motion direction (for both A and B turrets this is “plus” when moving away from the workpiece), spindle rotation direction and direction of arc cutting . Therefore, the B turret cuts exactly the same part shape as finished by the turret A tools.

3. Programming and Cutting

3-1. Designating the Turret

- To select turret A (front turret) : G13
- To select turret B (rear turret) : G14

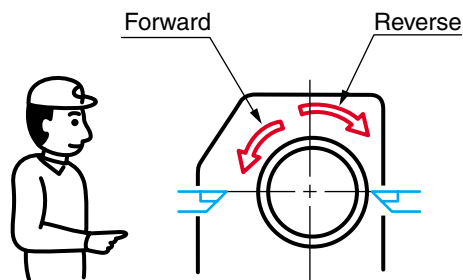
Example 1: Selecting tool No.4 in turret B:

```
G14
G00 X Z T0404
```

Example 2: Selecting tool No.3 in turret A:

```
G13
G00 X Z T0303
```

3-2. Programming Spindle Rotating Direction



When turret B is selected, the mirror image function starts the spindle in the reverse direction when M03 “spindle forward” command is executed.

- Turret A:

| |
|-----|
| G13 |
| M03 |
- Turret B:

| |
|-----|
| G14 |
| M03 |

When the turret designation is changed during spindle rotation, the direction of spindle rotation does not change until a new spindle rotation command is given.

3-3. Cautions on Programming

- The G codes selecting the turret, G13 and G14, must be designated in a block without other commands. If other commands are designated in the block containing G13 or G14, they are ignored.
- Resetting the control automatically selects G13 and cancels G14.
- Switching from G13 to G14 or from G14 to G13 is ineffective in the following four cases. An attempt to make such a switch will cause ALARM-B “change timing G13/G14”. To change the turret in these cases, cancel the relevant operation mode, then program the turret selecting G code.
 - (1) While G41 or G42 is active (tool nose radius compensation mode)
 - (2) While G91 is active (incremental programming mode)
 - (3) While LAP2 is active
 - (4) While G96 is active (constant cutting speed mode)
- When the turret is switched, commands other than X and Z words are all canceled. However, the tool number and tool offset number that are active when switching is executed remain active.
- The G and M codes that are reversed by the mirror image function are:

| | | |
|-----|---|-----|
| G02 | → | G03 |
| G41 | → | G42 |
| M03 | → | M04 |

Note that these codes remain effective after switching between G13 and G14 (switchover is impossible while G41 or G42 is active).

```

N0001    G14
N0002    G00    X2    Z2    M03
N0003    G13
N0004    G00    X2    Z2    M03
          :      :      :      :
          :      :      :      :

```

With the program above, the spindle rotates in the reverse direction when M03 in N002 is executed. M03 in N004, calling for spindle forward direction rotation, causes ALARM-B “change timing G13/G14”.

- When a programmed cycle is to be executed repeatedly using the “GOTO” statement, care is required with regard to the following point:

```

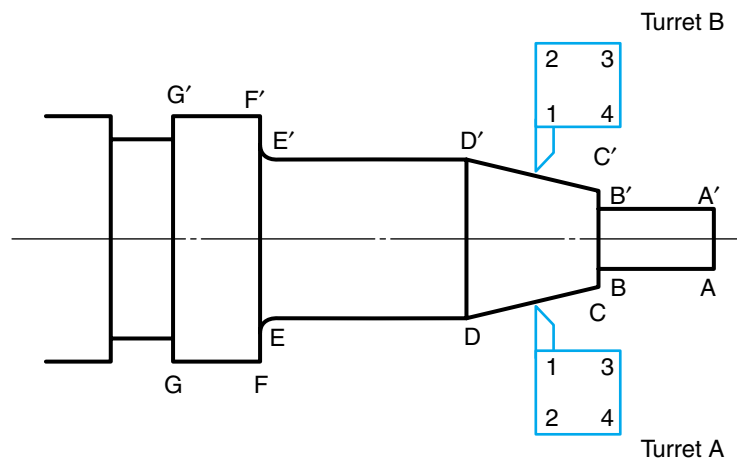
N0001    G00    X    Z1
N0002    G01    X2    Z2    F • S • T • M
N0003    G14
N0004    G00    X3    Z3
N0005    GOTO   N001

```

When the program above is executed, the first cycle of the commands in blocks N001 and N002 is executed with a tool on turret A (G13): in the second and later cycles, those commands are executed with a tool on turret B (G14). This is because “GOTO N001” does not reset the control and G14 designated in N003 remains effective for the second and later cycles. It is necessary, therefore, to designate G13 or G14 in the first block of repetition when the cycle is repeated using a “GOTO” statement.

3-4. Cutting Program

(1) Example Program



When a part like that shown above is cut with a tool on turret A, the cutting edge of the tool traces the path $A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow D \rightarrow E \dots$. In contrast, when cutting is carried out with the tool on turret B, it traces the path $A' \rightarrow B' \rightarrow C' \rightarrow D' \rightarrow E'$.

An example of this kind of program with machining by turret B is given below.

```

N001      G14      .....G14 is necessary when turret B is used.
N002          G00   XA   ZA   S300   T0101
N003          G01           ZB   F0.2   M03
N004                  XC
N005                  XD   ZD
N006                  ZE
N007          G02   XF   ZF   I       K
N008          G01           ZG
N009          G00   XH   ZH   M05

```

(2) Cutting Operation

The axis and turret operations for turrets A and B in the program example in (1) above are explained below.

- Turret A
When the program does not contain G14, cutting program is executed with the tool(s) on turret A (G13). The commands in N002 select tool number 01 and tool offset number 01 of turret A. N03 in N003 rotates the spindle in the forward direction and cutting is performed along the path $A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C$.
- Turret B
When the program contains G14, the cutting program is executed with the tool(s) on turret B. The commands in N002 select tool number 01 and tool offset number 01 of turret B, M03 in N003 rotates the spindle in the reverse direction and cutting is performed along the path $A' \rightarrow B' \rightarrow C'$. The direction of cutting is also reversed for the arc cutting called for by the commands in N007.

4. Other Considerations

4-1. Designation of Turrets A and B

On lathes with a flat bed, models LS30-N, LH35-N and LH55-N, the front turret is turret A and the rear turret B.
On lathes with a slant bed, the upper turret is turret A and the lower turret B.

4-2. Sequence Re-start

On two-turret models, there are following restrictions on the turret for sequence re-start operation.
The turret on which sequence re-start is active is turret A when the block where sequence re-start is to be performed is in G13 mode, and turret B if it is in G14 mode. Sequence re-start is not active for the other turret.
It is very dangerous to activate sequence re-start on both turrets of a two turret model.
Therefore, it is necessary to follow the steps below to activate sequence re-start on both turrets.

<Program Example>

```

N001  G13
N002  G00    X1    Z1    T0101
N003  G14
N004  G00    X2    Z2    T0101
N005  G13
N006  G00    X3    Z3
N007      X4    Z4    T0202
N008  G14
N009  G00    X5    Z5
N010      X6    Z6
      :      :      :      :
      :      :      :      :

```

When sequence re-start is activated from N007, T1 on turret A is indexed since block N006 is in the G13 mode.
When sequence re-start is activated from N010, T1 on turret B is indexed since block N009 is in the G14 mode.
To activate sequence re-start from N010 with the appropriate tool number on turret A indexed, index turret A to the desired position by entering the appropriate T command at the MDI keyboard and then perform sequence re-start operation from N010.

Note: The turret indexing position is different from the programmed position.

NOTICE

- 1) Select the turret with G13 or G14 for circular interpolation and thread cutting also. Apart from this, program as usual.
- 2) G13 and G14 must be designated in a block without other commands.

| | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|------|------|--|--|---------------|-----|----|
| N001 | G14 | | | | | | | LF |
| N002 | G00 | X335 | Z300 | | | S400 T0101 | M03 | LF |
| N003 | | X100 | Z50 | | | | | LF |
| ~~~~~ | | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | |
|------|-----|------|------|--|--|---------------|-----|----|
| | | | | | | | | |
| | G00 | X335 | Z300 | | | M05 | | LF |
| * | G13 | | | | | | | LF |
| N050 | | | | | | | | |
| * | G00 | X270 | Z300 | | | S400 T0303 | M03 | LF |
| N051 | | | | | | | | |

If T030 were not designated in block N051, the final tool and tool offset number when G13 was last designated would be automatically selected.

If no N, G, F, S, or M command were designated in N051, the last designated N, G, F, S, and M commands would remain in effect (however, the previous X and Z commands would not be effective).

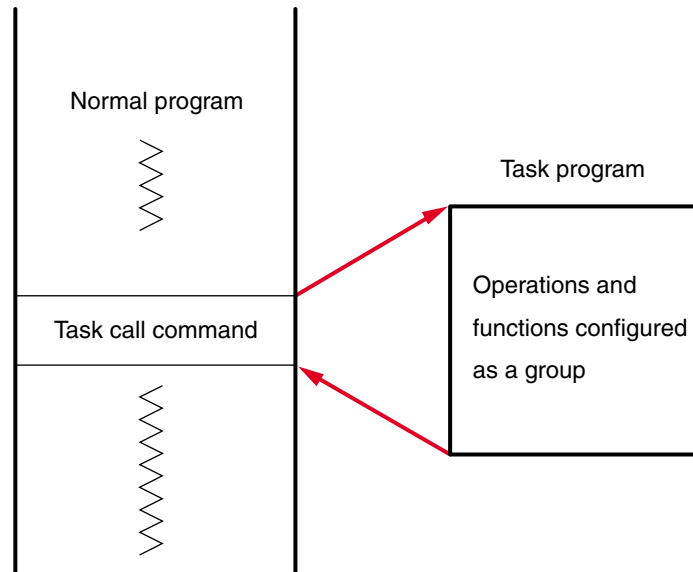
- 3) If neither G13 nor G14 is designated, turret A is selected.
- 4) The turret rotation position can be set any position on the X and Z axes.
Select a position where there is no interference.
- 5) When a turret switchover command is executed while an incremental command, constant speed command, the LAP mode, or a nose radius compensation command is in effect, an alarm occurs and the machine stops.
- 6) Remember that when G77 or G78 is designated for the opposing turret, the direction of spindle rotation is reversed.

SECTION 13 USER TASK

1. Overview

Operations and functions constructed as one group of instructions are stored in the memory when assigned a program name like a subprogram. The stored subprogram can be accessed from the main program by specifying the program name, which represents a group of instructions, and the operations and functions in that program can be executed.

A group of operations and functions stored in this way is called a User Task Program and the command to call it is called a User Task Call Command.



The biggest advantage of the user task function is that various operation functions and variables can be used in a user task program. In addition, the use of control statements assures versatility.

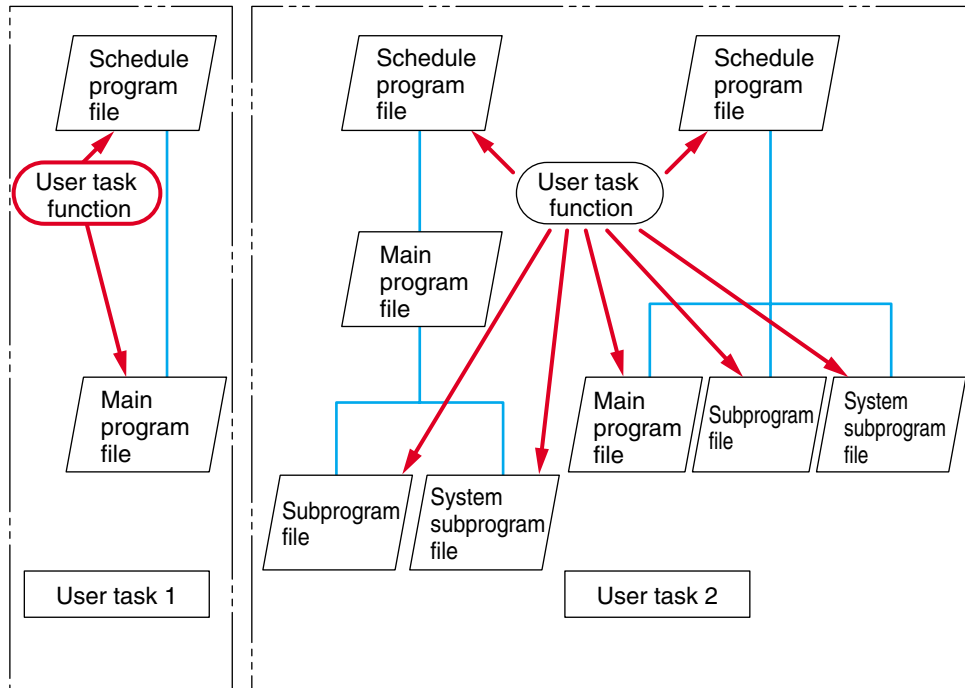
There are many fields where user task functions can be used to great advantage; among them, the following:

- Parts for which the same contour is repeatedly specified during cutting, such as pulleys
- Gears and flanges which have similar contours
Common and similar contour elements of parts to be cut are picked up using Group Technology and these elements are expressed using variables. The user task program is created using the variables, while the actual dimensions of a specific part to be cut are provided in a cutting (or main) program. Thus parts with similar contours can be machined using one user task program.
- Automatic cycles involving peripheral equipment and/or functions
Instructions necessary to interlock the machine cycle with a bar feeder or loader cycle, or work loader/unloader, work gauging cycle commands, instructions for machine operations interlocked with a robot or other peripheral equipment are programmed as user task programs.
When using peripheral equipment and functions like these, the user can perform specialized functions or operations by using the user task function.
- Parts with similar contours
When dimensions of points where circular arcs intersect or a circular arc and a tapered segment intersect each other are not indicated on a part drawing but can be calculated with a number of expressions, a user task program for these parts can be programmed using expressions.
- Special fixed or custom cycles for users
As mentioned above, effective use of the user task function can enable various operations and functions. In addition, complicated programs can be greatly simplified with this function, assuring accurate and quick programming.

2. Types of User Task Function

2-1. Relationship Between Types of Program Files and User Task Functions

The relationship between the types of program files and user task functions is summarized below.



- Programs in left hand frame (User Task 1)
The configuration here comprises a schedule program and main programs; the User Task function can be used with these two types of programs. The User Task function applicable in such a configuration is called "User Task 1".
- Programs in the right hand frame (User Task 2)
The configuration here comprises all types of program files and the User Task function can be used in every type of program. The User Task function applicable in such a configuration is called "User Task 2".

2-2. Comparison of User Task 1 and User Task 2

| Function and Contents | | User Task 1 | User Task 2 |
|----------------------------|------------------------|---|---|
| Usable programs | | Main program Schedule program | Main program Subprogram Schedule program System subprogram |
| Control statement function | | 'GOTO statement' 'IF statement' | 'GOTO statement' 'IF statement' 'CALL statement' 'RTS statement' 'MODIN statement' 'MODOUT statement' 'GET/PUT statement' 'READ/WRITE statement' |
| Variable function | | Common variables Local variables System variables | Common variables Local variables System variables I/O variables |
| Operation function | Calculation expression | +, -, *, /, (four rules) | +, -, *, /, (four rules) |
| | Comparison expression | LT, LE, EQ, NE, GT, GE | LT, LE, EQ, NE, GT, GE |
| | Boolean expression | — | OR, AND, EOR, NOT |
| | Functions | — | SIN, COS, TAN, ATAN, ATAN2, SQRT, ABS, BIN, BCD, ROUND, FIX, FUP, DROUND, DFIX, DFUP, MOD |

* Enter either a space or a tab code following the control statements indicated below.
GOTO, CALL, RTS, MODIN, MODOUT

2-3. Fundamental Functions of User Task

The basic user task functions are largely classified into the following three functions:

- 1) **Control Statement Function**
This function allows you to control the execution order of programmed sequences using the statements such as IF, GOTO, and CALL.
- 2) **Variable Function**
In normal programming, numerical data directly follows the address characters such as A through Z. This function allows you to assign variables expressed by alphanumerics, instead of numerical data, to the address characters. The actual numerical data are assigned to the variables in respective programs. The variable function, thus, provides versatility and flexibility in programming.

Example:

| | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Normal programming | When calculation function is used | |
| X135 | <u>X = XP1</u> | <u>XP1 = 135</u> |
| | Variable name | Desired value can be assigned |
| | (alphanumeric) | |

- 3) **Calculation Function**
This function allows you to directly program the arithmetic expressions including operators (such as +, -, x, /) instead of values or variables (see the above variable function) with the address characters (such as X, Z, I, K).

Example:

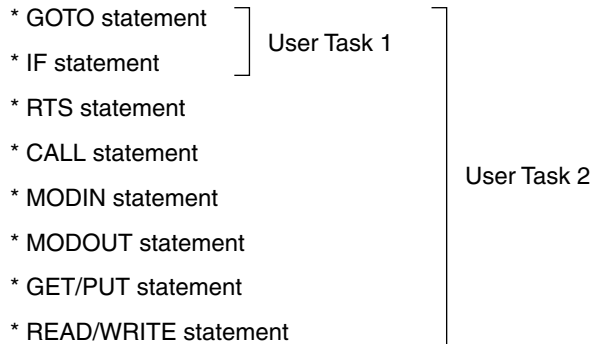
| | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|----------|
| Normal programming | When calculation function is used | |
| X135 | X = 100 + XP2 | XP2 = 35 |

3. User Task 1

The basic functions of User Task 1 (control statement function, variable function, arithmetic operation function) are described here.

3-1. Control Statement Function 1

The User Task can use the following eight control statements. Of these, the GOTO statement and the IF statement are User Task 1 functions.



Program these control statements either at the beginning of a block or right after a sequence name specified at the beginning of a block (*1). Be sure to enter either a space or a tab code following the sequence name or a control statement as a delimiter. If there is no delimiter, an alarm occurs.

It is not necessary to enter a space or a tab following an IF statement since it is followed by a left bracket “[”.

Sequence Names

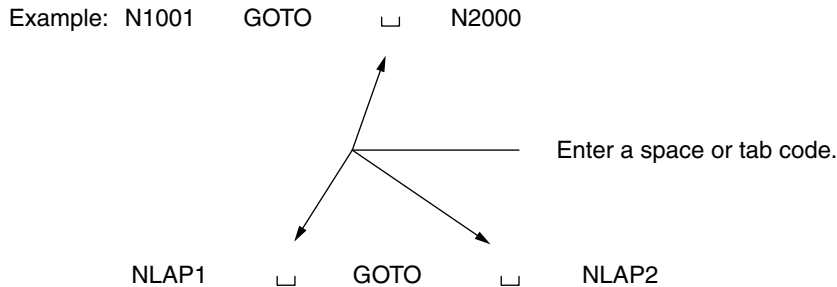
Sequence names are codes for identifying individual blocks in a program, and they consist of four alphanumeric characters following address character N.

There are two types of sequence names with the following constructions:

<N> <four numerics>, and

<N> <letter> <three alphanumeric>.

The term “sequence name” as used in this manual refers to both types of sequence name.

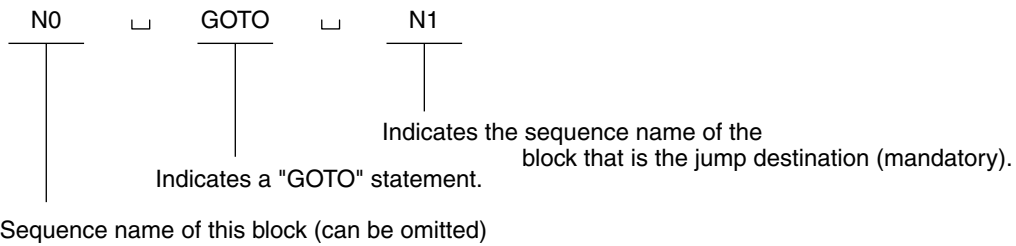


In other words, any element consisting of more than one address character (A through Z) such as a sequence name and a control code must be followed by either a space or a tab code.

Next we will consider the GOTO statement and IF statement, which are the control statements of User Task 1. For details on the control statements of User Task 2, refer to section 4-1 “Control Functions 2”.

(1) GOTO Statement (Unconditional Branch)

[Programming format]



[Function]

Program execution jumps unconditionally to the block indicated by N1 and that block is executed.

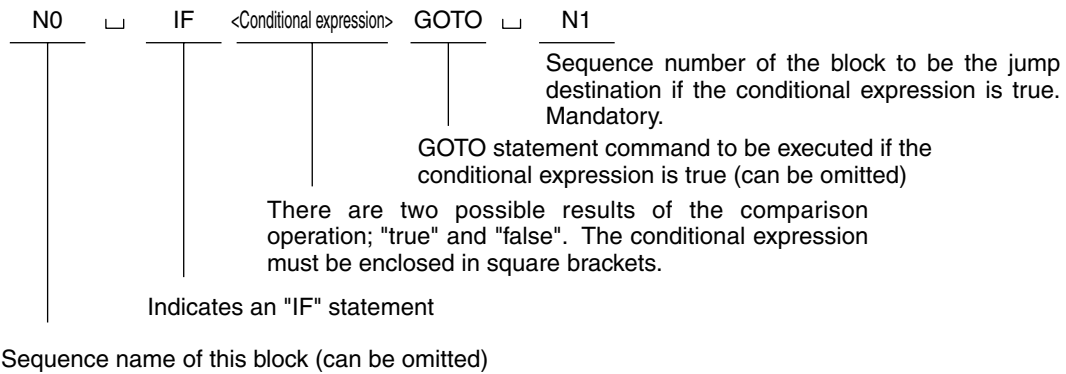
[Details]

The N1 block must be in the same program as the block containing the control statement.

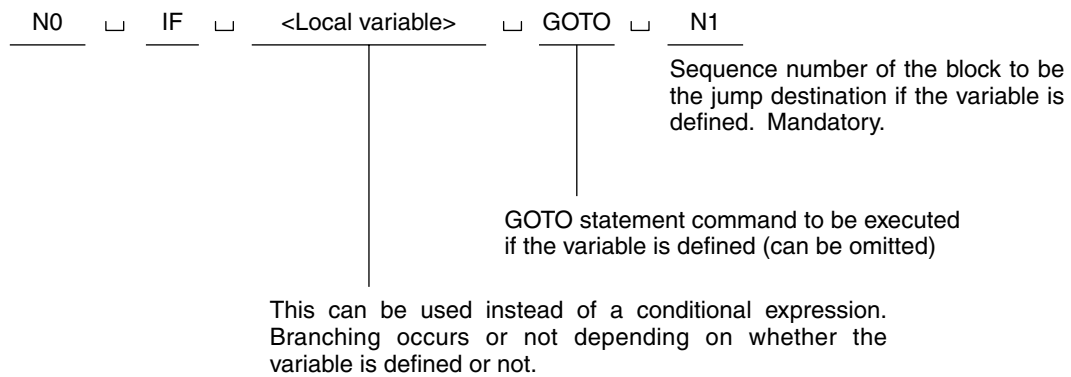
(2) IF Statement (Conditional Branch)

[Programming format]

(1)



(2)



[Function]

- When the conditional expression is true (Example 1) or when the local variable is defined (Example 2), sequence execution jumps to sequence N1.
- When the conditional expression is false (Example 1) or when the local variable is not defined (Example 2), the following sequence is executed.

[Details]

Example 1:

```
N1000  □ IF [V1 □ EQ □ 10] GOTO  N2000
                    |
                    (*)
```

or

```
N1000  □ IF [V1 □ EQ □ 10] N2000
```

A jump is made to N2000 if variable V1 equals 10 (V1 = 10). When V1 is not equal to 10, the following block is executed.

Example 2:

```
N1000  □ IF □ ABC □ GOTO □ N2000
                    |
                    Local variable
```

or

```
N1000  □ IF □ ABC □ N2000
```

If the local variable ABC has been defined, execution jumps to N2000. If not, the next block is executed.

* EQ means "equal". For details, see section 3-3 "Arithmetic Operation Function 1".

3-2. Variables

Three types of variable are used:

- Common variables
- Local variables
- System variables

These three types of variable differ in their uses and characteristics.

3-2-1. Common Variables

The term “common” in “common variables” can be literally understood as common; they can be used in common for main and subprograms. When the same variable is used in two or more programs, the variable number used in those programs must be identical. Therefore, a common variable, the result of calculation in one program, can be referred to in other programs.

[Format]

| | |
|---|---|
| V | numerals = numerical data or expression |
|---|---|

Common variable designations consist of up to three digits following “V”. The usable common variables are V1 through 200.

Examples:

N101 □ V5 = 10

N101 □ V5 = V5 + 1

[Details]

- Common variables are effective both in main programs and subprograms.
- Common variables are not affected by resetting the control or turning power off. That is, the data are retained unless they are re-set or a control software is installed.
- Besides setting or changing them in a program, common variables can be set or changed by setting a parameter. For detailed information on parameter setting, refer to SECTION 4 PARAMETER SETTING, DATA OPERATION in OPERATION MANUAL.

3-2-2. Local Variables

As is apparent from the term “local”, local variables are the variables that a user can set as desired with meaningful names assigned to them. Up to 127 local variables each can be used for the A and B saddles.

[Format]

| | | |
|--------|--------|--|
| Letter | Letter | two alphanumerics = Numerical data or expression |
|--------|--------|--|



O, N and V cannot be used.

Example: 'DIA1' 'ITH5'

[Details]

A local variable cannot be assigned the same name as already used for a function name, comparison operator, boolean operator, or extended address character*. (For details on function names, refer to section 4-4, for comparison operators, section 3-3, and for boolean operators, section 4-3.)

- * Extended address characters are provided to realize LAP, pattern processing, and user-specific fixed cycles. They are necessary because there are not enough letters in the alphabet to cover the required number of extension names. The following extended address characters are currently used.

<AA> <AB> <DA> <DB> <FA> <FB> <IA> <IB> <KA> <KB>
 <LA> <LB> <RA> <RB> <SA> <SB> <TA> <TB> <UA> <UB>
 <WA> <WB> <XA> <XB> <ZA> <ZB> <BC>

- Characteristics of Local Variables

- Local variables are cleared when the control is reset.
- When a new local variable is set in a main program, that is, when data is assigned to a new local variable name, that local variable name and corresponding data are registered in the memory.

NOTICE

If a local variable name is used without setting any data for it, an alarm results.

- When new data is assigned to a local variable already registered with other data, that old data is updated.

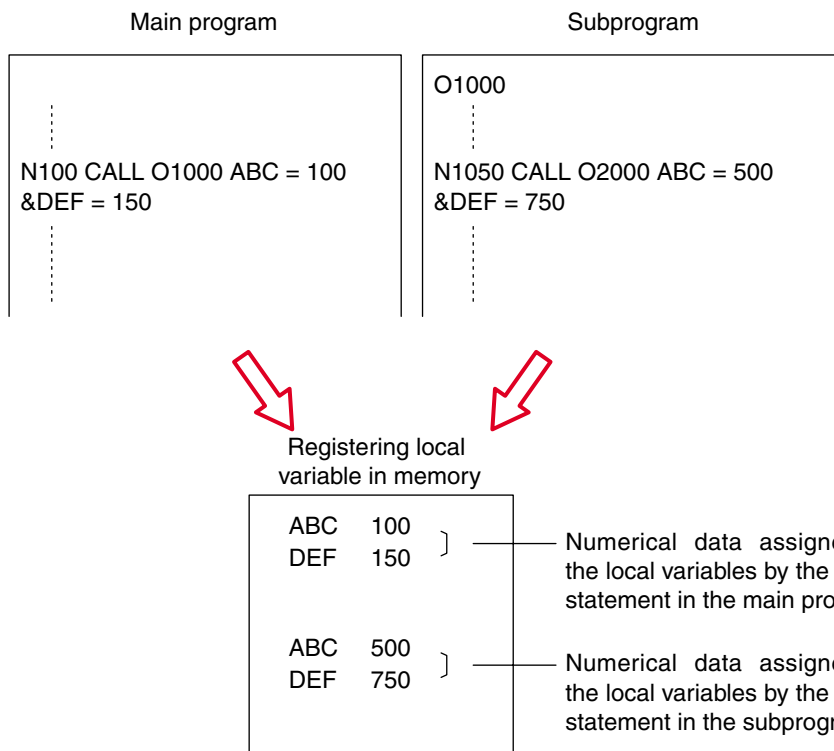
Main program

```
N0010    DIA1 = 160
      :
      :
      :
N0049
N0050    DIA1 = 20
      :
      :
      :
```

In N0010, numerical data "160" is assigned to local variable name "DIA1", and this data remains effective up to sequence N0049. In N0050, the new numerical data "200" is assigned to the same local variable name "DIA1". This clears the old data "160" and replaces it with the new data "200"

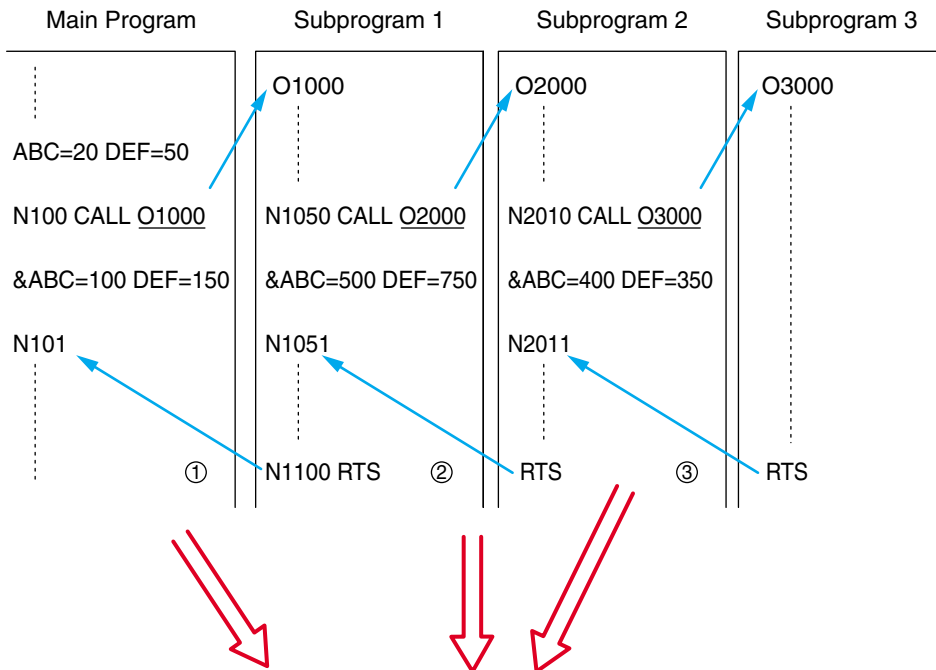
- Up to 127 local variables can be used.

- When a subprogram call command (CALL statement) is programmed in a main program and subprogram with local variables set in the block containing the CALL statement, the variables assigned numeric values in such a block are all registered as new local variables and their numeric values are stored in memory. Even when a local variable has the same name as one already registered before the call statement was programmed, it is registered as a new variable.



As shown above, the variables with the same name as ones already registered are registered anew as different variables.

- When using local variables in a called subprogram, and there are several local variables with the same name registered in the memory, the data of the local variable which last had that name registered is used. The local variables set in the block containing the CALL statement are all cleared when the RTS statement in the called subprogram is executed.

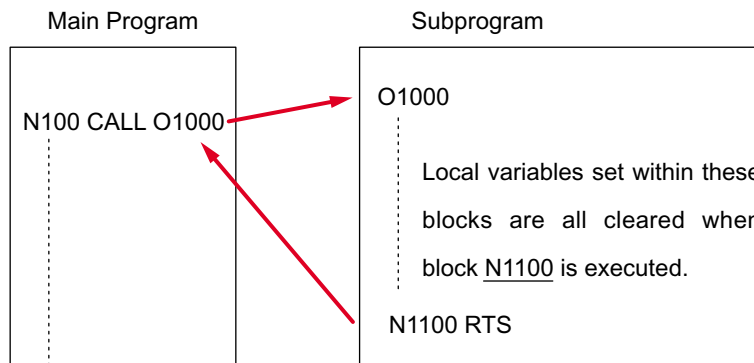


Registration of Local Variables

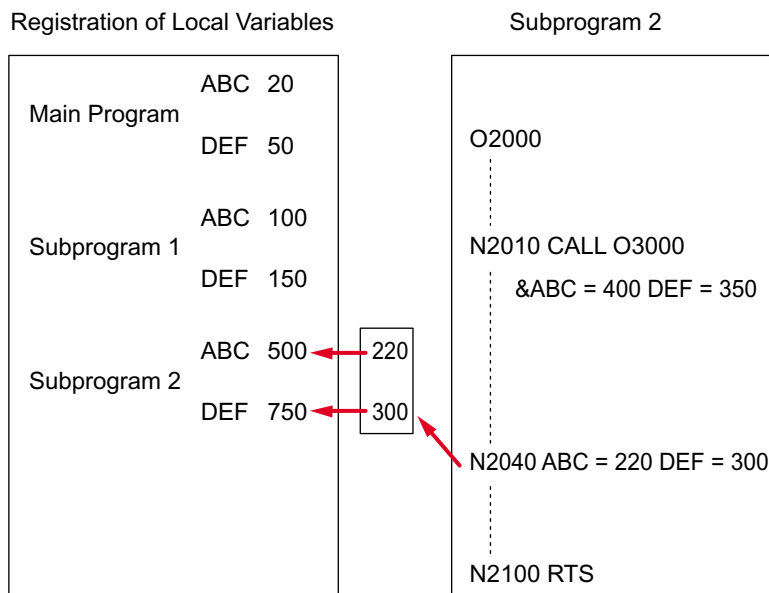
| | | | |
|--------------|-----|-----|--------------------|
| Main Program | ABC | 20 | |
| | DEF | 50 | |
| Subprogram 1 | ABC | 100 | |
| | DEF | 150 | Cleared in ① |
| Subprogram 2 | ABC | 500 | |
| | DEF | 750 | Cleared in ② |
| Subprogram 3 | ABC | 400 | |
| | DEF | 350 | Cleared in ③ |

In the example above, execution of N2010 in subprogram 2 registers 4 kinds of local variables with the same name - ABC and DEF - then subprogram O3000 is executed. If subprogram O3000 contains local variable names ABC and DEF, the numeric data registered last, i.e., ABC = 400 and DEF = 350 are called for. At the end of subprogram O3000, that is, when the RTS statement in O3000 is executed, the local variables registered by the subprogram CALL O3000, ABC = 400 and DEF = 350, are cleared from the memory.

- When a local variable is newly set in a subprogram, its name and numerical data are registered in the memory. They are effective only in the subprogram in which they are set, and are cleared when the RTS statement in that subprogram is executed.



- When numerical data is assigned to a local variable name which has already been assigned other numerical data during execution of a subprogram, the numerical data is updated. If several local variables with the same name are registered in the memory, the numerical data of the local variable registered last is updated.



When N2010 in subprogram 2 is executed, local variables ABC = 400 and DEF = 350 are registered in the memory but they are cleared by executing RTS in subprogram 2. Therefore, in blocks prior to N2040, the variables registered when subprogram 2 was called are used. When block N2040 is executed, the numerical values of local variables ABC and DEF registered in subprogram 2 are updated to 220 and 300, respectively, and those registered in subprogram 1 and the main program are not updated.

3-2-3. System Variables

A system variable is a variable specific to a particular system and its name is fixed. The system variables are not cleared when the control is reset. The system variables available are:

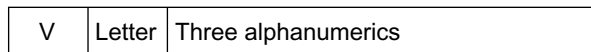
- Zero offset variable
- Zero shift variable
- Tool offset variable
- Nose radius compensation variable
- Tool interference data variable
- Variable soft limit variable
- Chuck barrier variable
- Droop variable
- Tailstock barrier variable
- Pitch error compensation variable
- User restart variable
- Alarm comment variable

These variables can be set, changed, and used in a program according to the format described later. Therefore, they can be effectively used in programs requiring them, such as work gauging programs, tool gauging programs, and post-process gauging programs.

They can of course be set by selecting the ZERO SET, TOOL DATA or PARAMETER mode. For details of the setting procedure, refer to SECTION 4 PARAMETER SETTING, OPERATION in OPERATION MANUAL.

Details of system variables are given below:

[Basic program format for system variables]



The character string in this part is fixed and the use of an illegal character string causes an alarm.

All system variables are prefixed with the character "V".

1) Zero offset variables

| | | |
|-------|-------|---|
| VZOFZ | ..... | Zero OFFset of Z-axis |
| | _____ | Zero OFF set Z-axis |
| VZOFX | ..... | Zero OFFset of X-axis |
| VZOFC | ..... | Zero OFFset of C-axis (for multi-machining model) |

Set variables in the following manner: VZOFZ = 12364.256.

2) Zero shift variables

| | | |
|--------------|-------|--|
| <u>VZSHZ</u> | ..... | Zero SHift of Z-axis |
| | _____ | Zero SHift Z-axis |
| VZSHX | ..... | Zero SHift of X-axis |
| VZSHC | ..... | Zero SHift of C-axis (for multi-machining model) |

Set variables in the following manner: VZSHZ = 50.

These zero shift variables deal with shift amount set by the zero shift operation called by G50, and the set shift amount is cleared when the control is reset.

3) Tool offset variables

| | | |
|--------------------------------|-------|-----------------------|
| <u>VTOFZ</u> [Tool Offset No.] | ..... | Tool OFFset of Z-axis |
| | _____ | Tool OFFset Z-axis |
| VTOFX [Tool Offset No.] | ..... | Tool OFFset of X-axis |

Set variables in the following manner: VTOFZ [5] = 2.634.

This indicates that tool offset amount of the Z-axis for #5 is set 2.634.

4) Nose radius compensation variables

| | | |
|--|-------|------------------------------------|
| <u>VNSRZ</u> [Nose R Compensation No.] | ..... | NoSe Radius compensation of Z-axis |
| | _____ | NoSe Radius Z-axis |
| VNSRX [Nose R Compensation No.] | ..... | NoSe Radius compensation of X-axis |

Set variables in the following manner: VNSRZ [4] = 0.8

This indicates that the nose radius (on the Z-axis) of the tool assigned nose radius compensation no. 4 is set to 0.8 mm.

5) Variable soft limit variables

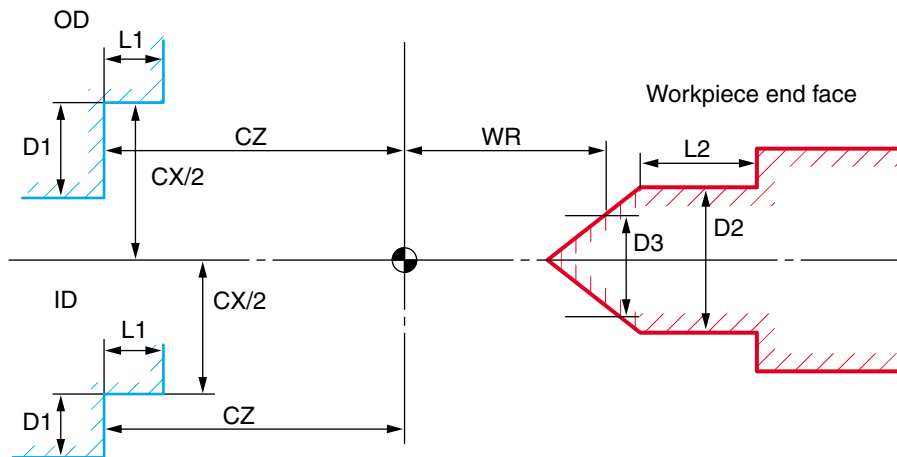
| | | |
|--------------|-------|--------------------------|
| <u>VPVLZ</u> | ..... | PositiVe Limit on Z-axis |
| | _____ | PositiVe Limit Z-axis |
| VPVLX | ..... | PositiVe Limit on X-axis |
| <u>VNVLZ</u> | ..... | NegatiVe Limit on Z-axis |
| | _____ | NegatiVe Limit Z-axis |
| VNVLX | ..... | NegatiVe Limit on X-axis |

Set variables in the following manner: VPVLZ = 2352.168.

This indicates that the variable soft limit of Z-axis in positive direction is set at Z = 2352.168 mm.

The numerical data of these variables are referenced to the origin of the machine coordinate system (machine origin).

6) Chuck barrier/tailstock barrier variables



- VCHKLJaw dimension L1
- VCHKDJaw dimension D1
- VCHKZJaw position CZ
- VCHKXJaw position CX
- VTSLCenter dimension L2
- VTSDACenter dimension D2
- VTSDBCenter position D3
- VWKRWorkpiece end face position WR

The numerical data of these variables are referenced to the origin of the program coordinate system (programming zero).

7) Droop variables

- VINPZ Droop amount on Z-axis IN Position Z-axis
IN Position Z-axis
- VINPX Droop amount on X-axis IN Position X-axis
- VINPC Droop amount on C-axis IN Position C-axis

8) Pitch error compensation variables

These variables are only effective when the pitch error compensation specification function is featured.

- VPFVZ Pitch compensation amount on Z-axis Pitch Fillup Value Z-axis
Pitch Fillup Value Z-axis
- VPFVX Pitch compensation amount on X-axis Pitch Fillup Value X-axis
- VPFVC Pitch compensation amount on C-axis Pitch Fillup Value C-axis
- VPCHZ Pitch amount on Z-axis PitCH Z-axis
PitCH Z-axis
- VPCHX Pitch amount on X-axis PitCH X-axis

9) Restart variables

VRSTT Indicates the restart state in sequence restart operation.
 #00 : Restart in progress
 #80 : Restart not in progress
 ReSTarT

Example: N100 IF [VRSTT NE 0] N200

10) Alarm comment variables

VUACM User alarm comments of up to 16 characters can be designated.
 VUACM[1] ~ VUACM[16]
 This variable is cleared when the NC is reset.
 User Alarm CoMment

For the alarm variable, a character-string or a hexadecimal code (prefixed by the \$ symbol) in quotation marks (' ') can be used. Letters of the alphabet (upper and lower case) can be used for the character string. For the procedure refer to "GET/PUT Statement".

Up to four characters of hexadecimal code can be set.

Output of a comment to the display screen is designated with output variable VDOUT [*] =code number. See below.

* = 991: 3202 Alarm C

* = 992: 2288 Alarm B

* = 993: 1213 Alarm A

The valid range for code numbers is 1 to 9999.

- Program example 1:

```
N202 VUACM [1] = ' ABC = 100' .....Corresponds to ABC=100
N203 VUACM [9] = ' ^ ABC' .....abc
N204 VUACM [12] = ' =200' .....=200
N205 VDOUT [991] = 999
```

After the execution of the program above, an alarm with a comment can be generated in N205.

```
Screen display 3202 Alarm C User reserve code 999
                ABC = 100 abc = 200
```

- Program example 2:

```
N202 VUACM [1] = ' ABC'
N203 VUACM [5] = ' = 123'
N204 VDOUT [991] = 999
:
```

When the program above is executed, only ABC is displayed as a comment.

Set a comment without placing a space between comment characters. In the above example, since three characters are set at VUACM[1], the fourth and the following characters should be set at VUACM [4].

- Program example 3:

```
N101    VUACM [1] = '-L ^ K]'    .....corresponds to PART
N102    VUACM [5] = '= GEAR'     .....=GEAR
N103    VDOUT [992] = 1000
      :
```

After the execution of the program above, an alarm with a comment can be generated in N103.

```
Screen display  2288  Alarm B    User reserve code    1000
                PART = GEAR
```

- Program example 4:

```
N301    VUACM[1] = '$41424344'   .....Corresponds to ABCD
N302    VDOUT[992] = 2000
```

```
Screen display  2288  Alarm B    User reserve code    2000  ABCD
```

11) Arithmetic variable

VPAI π (Ratio of circumference of circle to its diameter)

12) NOEX command

Designated at the beginning of a variable setting sequence to speed up the “program check” by eliminating single-block processing. (The operation is the same whether this command is designated or not.) The NOEX command is effective only in the single block mode operation with “1” set at NOEX command ignore of optional parameter (OTHER FUNCTION 1).

3-2-4. I/O read variables

I/O read variables are system variables that read the status of panel inputs/outputs and EC inputs/outputs. The system variable used for reading the input status is "VIRD" and the one used for reading the output status is "VORD".

[Format]

- Reading the input bit:

VIRD [* * * #]

* * * : I/O check number

: Bit position

- Reading the output bit:

VORD [* * * #]

* * * : I/O check number

: Bit position

[Details]

- The suffix address is expressed by the I/O check number and the bit position. For the address of individual bits, refer to the Maintenance Manual.
- It is possible to read the information of any required bit by specifying the I/O bit address as a suffix.
- The read data is: "1" if the bit is ON and "0" if the bit is OFF.

3-3. Arithmetic Operation Function 1

This function allows arithmetic operation using variables. The programming can be done in the same way as for general arithmetic expressions.

Address character, Extended address character, Variable = Expression

The expression on the right-hand side, requesting an arithmetic operation, is made up of constants, variables, comparison expressions, and operators.

The arithmetic and comparison expressions are described below.

(1) Arithmetic Expression

| Operator | Meaning | Example |
|----------|--------------------------|-----------------|
| + | Positive sign | +1234 |
| - | Negative sign | -1234 |
| + | Sum (addition) | $X = 12.3 + V1$ |
| - | Difference (subtraction) | $X = 12.3 - V1$ |
| * | Product (multiplication) | $X = V10 * 10$ |
| / | Quotient (division) | $X = V11/10$ |

(2) Comparison Expression

| Operator | Meaning | Example | Contents | Rule |
|----------|----------------------------|-------------------|---|---|
| LT | (Less Than, <) | IF [V1 LT 5] N100 | Jump to N100 when V1 is less than 5. | Provide a space on either side of the operator. |
| LE | (Less than or Equal to, ≤) | IF [V1 LE 5] N100 | Jump to N100 when V1 is less than or equal to 5. | |
| EQ | (Equal to, =) | IF [V1 EQ 5] N100 | Jump to N100 when V1 is equal to 5. | |
| NE | (Not Equal to, ≠) | IF [V1 NE 5] N100 | Jump to N100 when V1 is not equal to 5. | |
| GT | (Greater Than, >) | IF [V1 GT 5] N100 | Jump to N100 when V1 is greater than 5. | |
| GE | (Greater than or Equal, ≥) | IF [V1 GE 5] N100 | Jump to N100 when V1 is greater than or equal to 5. | |

4. User Task 2

User Task 2 allows the use of more functions than are provided by User Task 1, including I/O variables, boolean operations, function operations, and control statements such as the CALL statement, MODIN/MODOUT statements, and PUT/GET statements.

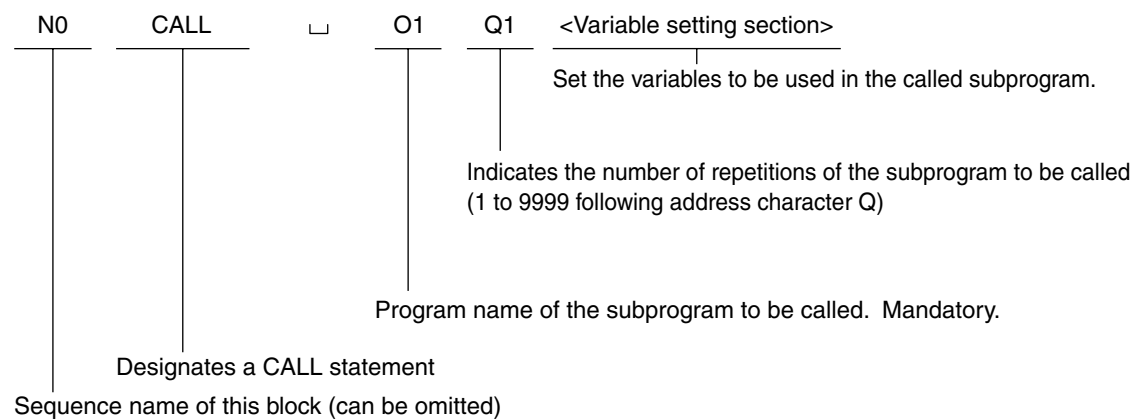
4-1. Control Functions 2

The control statements available under User Task 2 - CALL statement, RTS statement, MODIN statement, MOD-OUT statement, READ/WRITE statement and GET/PUT statement - are described in this section.

Note that a space or tab code must always be inserted after a control statement.

(1) CALL Statement - Calling Program

[Program format]



[Function]

The subprogram designated by <O1> is called and executed. When variables are set in the variable setting section, all of them are registered.

Example:

```
N1000 CALL O1234 XP1 = 150 ZP1 = 100
```

With the designated commands above, the subprogram O1234 is called and executed. At the same time, variables XP1 and ZP1 are registered.

(2) RTS Statement - End of Subprogram

[Program Format]

| | | |
|----|---|-----|
| N0 | □ | RTS |
| | | |

Indicates an RTS statement

The sequence name of this block (can be omitted)

[Function]

This RTS statement must always be specified at the end of a subprogram. Executing the RTS block ends the called subprogram and the execution sequence jumps to the block right after the one containing the CALL statement. The variables registered in the block containing the CALL statement and the variables in the subprogram are all cleared.

● Judging defined/undefined state of local variables with an IF statement

| | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|----|---|---------------------|---|------|---|----|
| N2 | □ | IF | □ | Local variable name | □ | GOTO | □ | N3 |
| | | | | | | | | |

Specify here the block sequence name that is the jump destination if the local variable is found to be defined.

This can be omitted

Name of the local variable whose defined/undefined status is under investigation
There is no need to enclose the local variable name in square brackets.

Designates an IF statement

Sequence name of this block

This checks whether the local variable name designated is defined or not. A jump is made to the designated sequence name, N3, if it is defined; if it is not defined the block which follows this N2 block will be executed.

Example 1:

```
N1000 □ IF ABC □ N2000
```

If local variable ABC has been defined, sequence execution jumps to N2000. If it has not been defined, the next block is executed.

Example 2: Main Program

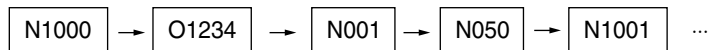
```

N1000  CALL  O1234  XP1 = 150  ZP1 = 10
N1001
:
:
      Subprogram
          O1234
          N001  G00  XZ
          :    :
          :    :
          N050  RTS

```

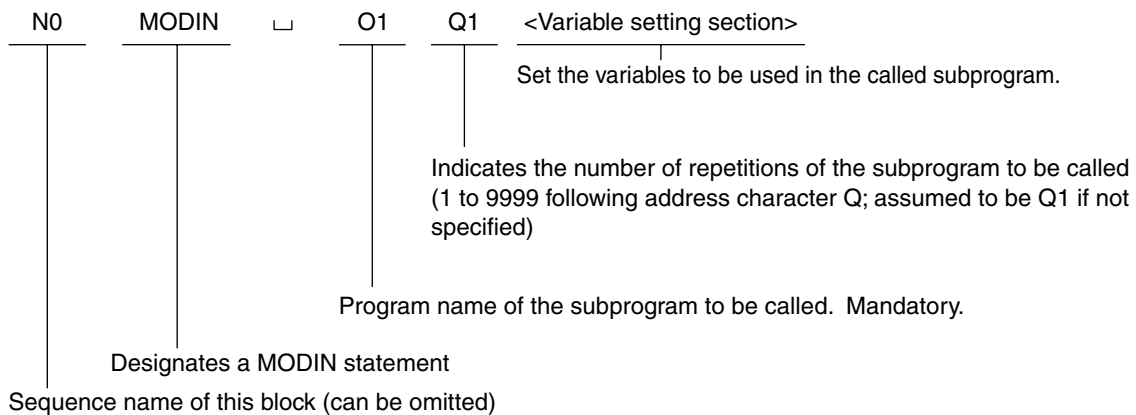
When block N1000 in the main program is executed, sequence execution jumps to subprogram O1234. The subprogram is executed from N001 and when the control reads the RTS statement in N050, sequence execution then jumps back to N1001 of the main program and the commands in that block and subsequent blocks are executed. At the same time as the jump from the subprogram to the main program occurs, variables XP1 and ZP1 are cleared.

Order of program execution:



(3) MODIN Statement

[Program Format]



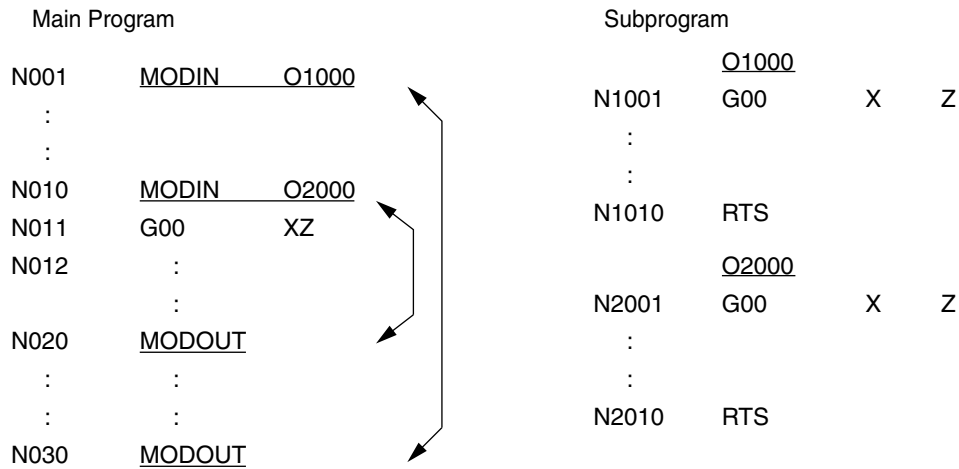
[Function]

The designated subprogram is called each time an axis motion command is executed. That is, the designated subprogram is called and executed each time an axis motion command (*1) in the program calling that subprogram is executed. This function remains active until the MODOUT statement described in (4) is read.

- * Axis motion command means any command in G00, G01, G03 and G31 through G35 mode which contains either an X and Z word or both.

- Nesting and effective range of MODIN/MODOUT mode
The permissible nesting level in MODIN/MODOUT mode is eight.

Example: Two nesting levels



In this example, the MODIN mode is active from N001 to N030 for subprogram O1000 and from N010 to N020 for subprogram O2000.

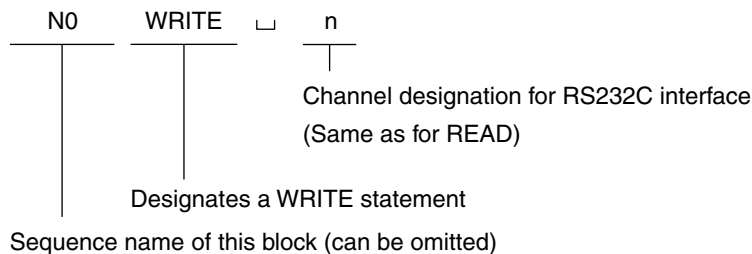
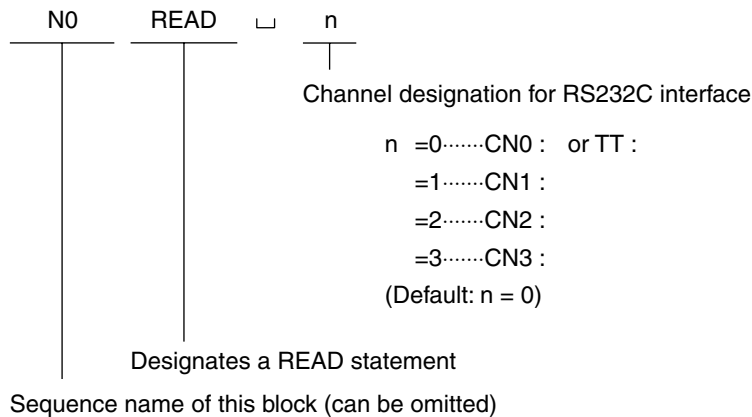
● Operation Sequence:

- 1) In the blocks from N001 to N009, subprogram O1000 is called and executed each time an axis motion command is executed.
- 2) In the blocks from N010 to N020, subprogram O1000 is called and executed first after an axis motion command is executed. Then, subprogram O2000 is called and executed successively. If the subprogram O2000 contains an axis motion command, N2001 in this example, O1000 is executed after this axis motion command is completed. After the subprogram O2000 is completed, the block of commands in the main program is executed.
- 3) In the blocks from N021 to N030, subprogram O1000 is called and executed each time an axis motion command is executed.

(5) READ/WRITE Statement

READ and WRITE statements are used for communications with external devices through the RS232C interface. They are used in conjunction with the GET/PUT statement described in (6) below.

[Program format]



[Function]

- READ : Receives the data from the external device connected to the channel designated by <n> and stores it in the read area (max. of 160 characters) in JIS8 code.
- WRITE : Sends the data stored in the write area (max. of 160 characters) in JIS8 code to the external device connected to the channel designated by <n>.

[Details]

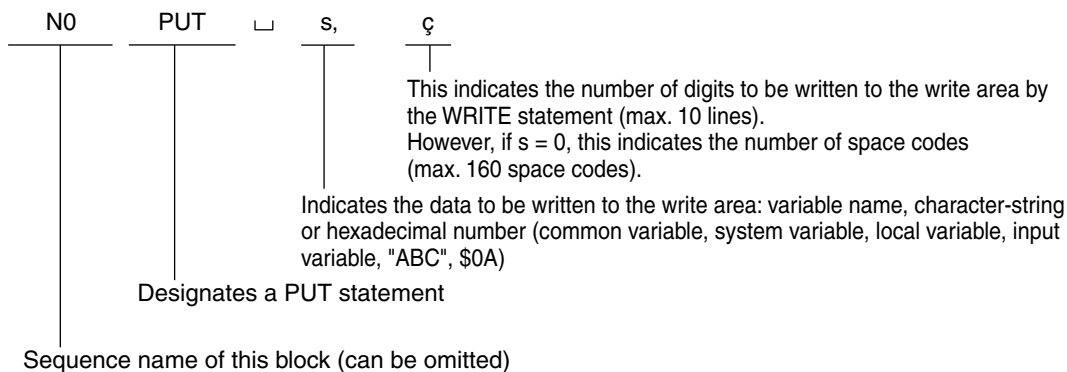
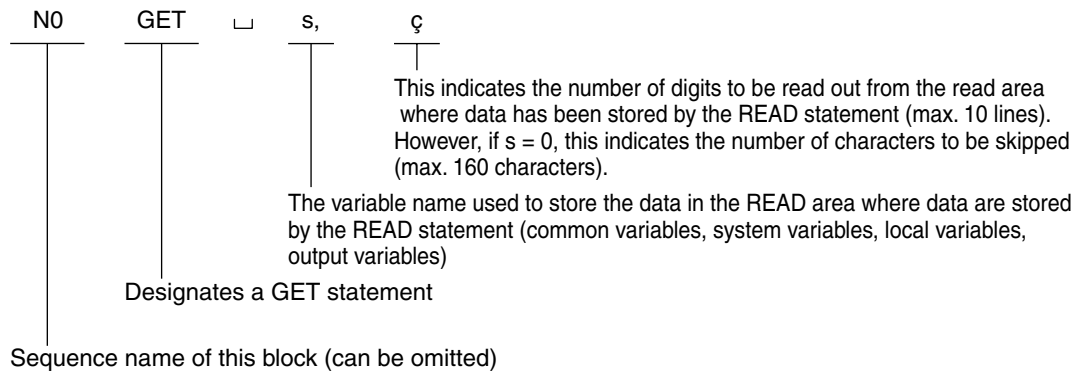
- Transmission protocol
The baud rate and code configuration for the channel of the RS232C interface to be used for communication with an RS232C device must be set in advance.
These communication parameters are set on the NC OPTIONAL PARAMETER (RS232C) screen by selecting PARAMETER SET mode.
- Transmission code
For transmission codes, JIS 8 bit code or JIS 7 bit code (in this case, using an even parity bit) are used. The end of data transmission code is either NULL or %. Which of these codes is used is determined by the setting at stop bit check of optional parameter (RS232C).
(% is selected by "1" and NULL is selected by "0".)

[Supplement]

- The following situations during data transmission will cause Alarm B.
 - (1) The number of characters of transmission data exceeds 160.
 - (2) Transmission of data through RS232C interface stops for more than determined period of time.
 - (3) Occurrence of an alarm in the RS232C interface during transmission.
 - (4) RS232C is no longer in ready status.
- Do not execute list output or punch out using the same channel of the RS232C interface during the execution of the READ/WRITE command.
- Execution of the READ/WRITE command and printing out of measured data cannot be executed at the same time.
While either is in progress, execution of the other command is suspended.
- Since the areas for READ and WRITE are different, execution of the READ command does not change the WRITE area.
- Nothing but a sequence number may be placed before the READ/WRITE command.
- When using JIS 7 bit code, designate SI code (shift in \$0F) at the beginning of communication 1 and designate SO (shift out \$0E) at the end. Since both SI and SO are treated as data, include them in the number of characters in transmission.

(6) GET/PUT Statement

[Program format]



[Function]

- GET statement : This reads out the numerical data (JIS8 code) from the read area where the data has been stored by the READ statement and sets it for the variable designated.
- PUT statement : This stores the numerical data and character string of the set variable in the write area output by the WRITE statement. The data is stored in the JIS8 code.

[Details]

- GET statement:

First, the code read into the READ area by the READ statement is read out; the number of characters designated in "ç", counting from the position of the area read pointer (hereafter "RRP") is read out. Then this read-out data is converted into numerical values and set in the type of variable designated in "s". At this time, RRP is supplemented by the amount "ç".

RRP is set at the beginning of the READ area when the READ statement is executed or the NC is reset, and it is supplemented GET is executed. It cannot be returned.

Alarm B occurs in the following cases:

 - (1) When RRP exceeds the number of codes read by the READ statement
 - (2) When conversion into numerical data is impossible

Example: When there are more than two decimal points or code other than 0 to 9 exists

- PUT statement:**
 When a common variable or local variable is designated in “s”, the real type is used, and when an input variable is designated, the integer type is used. For the system variables, data is converted into JIS 8 letter codes in accordance with the attribute of the system variable. Then the letter code is written to the WRITE area; the number of digits designated in “c”, counting from the position of the write-in pointer of the WRITE area (hereafter “WWP”) are written. At this time, WWP is supplemented by the amount “c”. WWP is set at the beginning of the WRITE area when the WRITE statement is executed or the NC is reset, and it is supplemented when PUT is executed. It cannot be returned.
 A character string or hexadecimal number can be used for “s” in a PUT statement. However, the limit for the number of characters to be designated is 16. “c” must not be designated.

- Expression of characters and hexadecimal numbers**

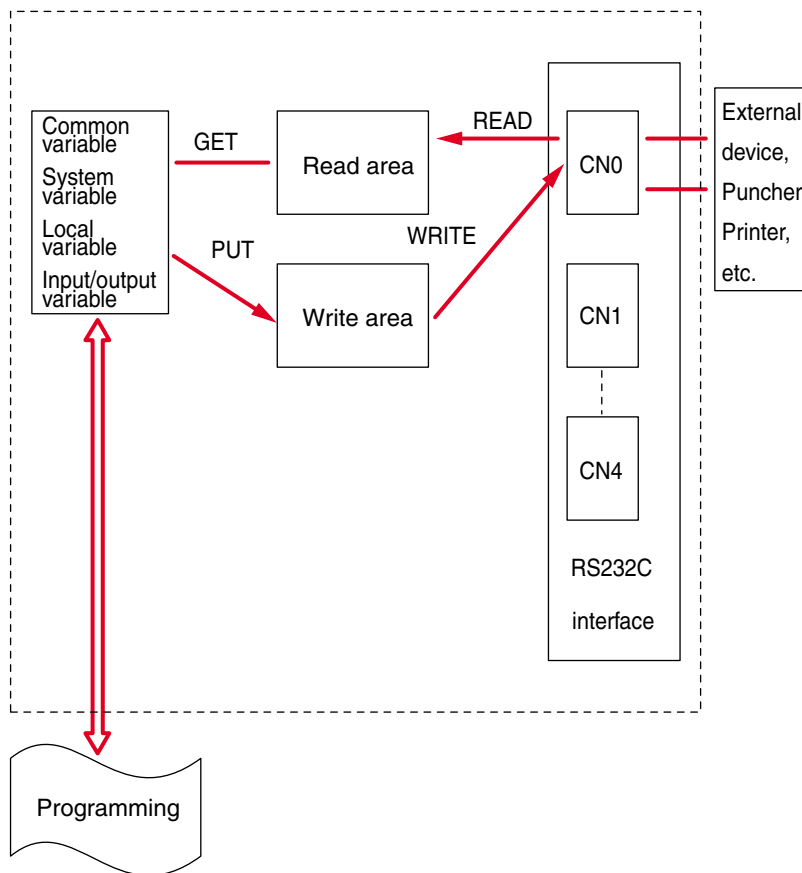
| | | | |
|----------------------|-----|---------------|----------------|
| Hexadecimal number : | PUT | \$0D0A | Prefix with \$ |
| Capital letters : | PUT | 'ABCD' | Finish with ' |
| Lower case letters : | PUT | ^'ABCD' | Start with ^ |

- Alarm B occurs in the following cases:**

- When WWP exceeds 160
- When NULL or % exists in hexadecimal number

- Relationship between READ/WRITE and GET/PUT**

Data communications are carried out through the read/write area using the variables (common variables, system variables, local variables, input/output variables) and external devices. The concept is illustrated in the figure below.



[Program examples]

Example 1. Program using READ/WRITE statements and GET/PUT statements

```

N1   READ   0.....Data is read from CN0:.
N2   GET   □ , 10.....Message (a) (10 letters) is skipped.
N3   GET   □ V 1, 1.....11th letter is read into V1.
N4   IF [V1 EQ 0] N11
N5   GET   □ , 9.....Message (b) (9 letters) is skipped.
N6   GET   □ V2 ,2.....21st and 22nd letters are read into V2.
N7   GET   □ , 4.....Message (c) (4 letters) is skipped.
N8   GET   □ VTOFX [V2], 5.....27th to 31st letters are read into tool offset data.
N9   GET   □ 4.....Message (d) (4 letters) is skipped.
N10  GET   □ VTOFZ [V2].....36th to 40th letters are read into tool offset data.
N11

```

Transmission data

```

1       5       10       15       20       25       30       40
A Compensation Yes/No = 1 Offset No. = □ 3 □ OX = 0.02 □ OZ = -0.31
┌──────────┬──────────┬──────────┬──────────┐
│              │              │              │              │
└──────────┴──────────┴──────────┴──────────┘
      (a)          (b)          (c)          (d)

```

The result of the preceding program:

```

V1 = 1
V2 = 3
VTOFX [3] = 0.02
VTOFZ [3] = -0.31

```

Example 2. Output program (assuming printer is connected to CN0):

```

N100  PUT   □ ,4.....4 spaces
N101  PUT   ' ** □ '
N102  PUT   □ ' TOOL □ OFFSET □ DATA'.....Header
N103  PUT   □ ' □ ** '
N104  PUT   □ $0D0A.....Carriage return code
N105  PUT   □ ' N='
N106  PUT   □ V1, 2.....Tool offset number
N107  PUT   ' □ X='
N108  PUT   □ VTOFX[V1], 8.....Tool offset value
N109  PUT   □ ' □ Z='
N110  PUT   □ VTOFX[V1], 8
N111  PUT   □ $0D0A.....Carriage return code
N112  WRITE □ 0

```

The following will be printed when the program above is executed.

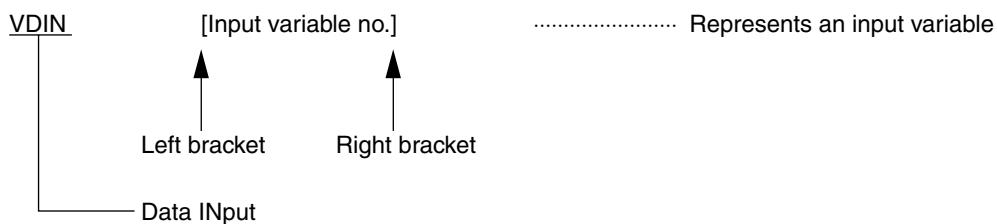
```
  0 0 0 0 * *  0  TOOL  0  OFFSET  0  DATA  0  * *  
N =  0  3  0  X =  0 0 0  5.412  0  Z =  0 0  14.339
```


4-2. I/O Variables

I/O variables are the variables used for sending and receiving I/O signals between the control and peripheral equipment.

- **Input variables:**
The variables representing signals inputted from peripheral equipment such as the operation panel, the post-process gauging unit, the tool gauging system and the touch sensor. These signals are called "input bit data".
- **Output variables:**
The variables representing signals output from the control to the peripheral equipment such as indicator lamps and alarm display on the operation panel. These signals are called "output bit data".

(1) Input Variables

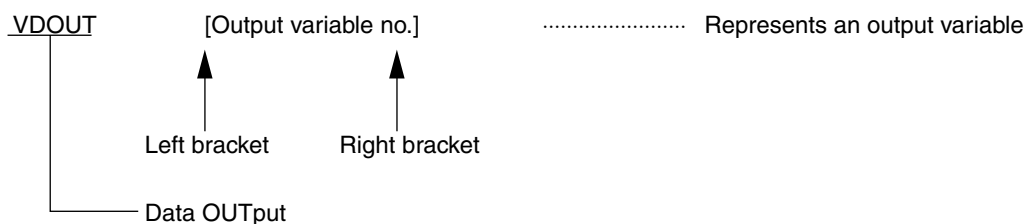


The input variable numbers are tabled below.

| Input Variable No. | Contents of Data | Input Equipment |
|--------------------|---|-----------------|
| 1 ~ 8 | Bit data: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON) | Panel input |
| 9 | 1 byte data in which data of variables #1 through #8 are corresponded to bit 0 through bit 7. | |
| 10 | 5 bit data of hexadecimal number, \$0 through \$1F | |
| 11 ~ 18 | Bit data: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON) | EC input |
| 19 | 1 byte data in which data of variables #11 through #18 correspond to bit 0 through bit 7. | |
| 21 ~ 22 | Bit data: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON) | Panel input |
| 23 ~ 24 | Bit data: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON) | EC input |
| 31 ~ 38 | Bit data: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON) | Panel input |
| 39 | 1 byte data in which data of variables #31 through #38 correspond to bit 0 through bit 7. | |
| 1000 ~ 1004 | Timers: 1 msec., 1 sec., 1 min., 1 hour, 1 day (timers are reset to "0" at power on and start counting up after that: 4-byte counter) | |
| 1235 ~ 1250 | Condition of specification codes: #1 through #16 (in byte units) | |

Details of specifications must be discussed.

(2) Output Variables



The output variable numbers are tabled below.

| Output Variable No. | Contents of Data | Output Equipment |
|---------------------|--|------------------|
| 1 ~ 8 9 | Bit data: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON) 1 byte data in which data of variables #1 through #8 correspond to bit 0 through bit 7. | Panel output |
| 11 ~ 18 19 | Bit data: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON) 1 byte data in which data of variables #11 through #18 correspond to bit 0 through bit 7. | EC output |
| 21 ~ 22 | Bit data: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON) | Panel output |
| 23 ~ 24 | Bit data: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON) | EC output |
| 31 ~ 38 39 | Bit data: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON) 1 byte data in which data of variables #31 through #38 correspond to bit 0 through bit 7. | Panel output |
| 41 ~ 48 49 | Bit data: 0 (OFF), 1 (ON) 1 byte data in which data of variables #41 through #48 correspond to bit 0 through bit 7. | |
| 991 992 993 | Alarm C User reserve code Alarm B User reserve code Alarm A User reserve code | Alarm output |

Details of specifications must be discussed.

4-3. Arithmetic Operation Function 2

The arithmetic operation function of User Task 2 provides features not supported by User Task 1; boolean expressions and functions can be used.

For details on the arithmetic operation functions of User Task 1, refer to 3-3. "Arithmetic Operation Function 1".

(1) Boolean Expressions

| Operator | Meaning | Example | Rule |
|----------|-----------------|-------------------------|---|
| OR | Logical sum | VDKN [11] OR VDIN [12] | Provide a space on either side of the operator. |
| AND | Logical product | VDIN [11] AND VDIN [12] | |
| EOR | Exclusive OR | VDIN [11] EOR VDIN [12] | |
| NOT | Negation | | |

(2) Functions

| Function | Meaning | Example | Rule and Remark |
|----------|---|--------------------------------|--|
| SIN | Sine | $X = 15 * \text{SIN} [22.5]$ | Numbers after function operation symbols must be enclosed in square brackets. |
| COS | Cosine | $X = 15 * \text{COS} [22.5]$ | |
| TAN | Tangent | $X = 15 * \text{TAN} [22.5]$ | |
| ATAN | Arctangent (1) Value range: -90° to 90° | $X = 15 * \text{ATAN} [22.5]$ | When two elements are specified within square brackets, place a comma between them. The position of the decimal point is determined in accordance with the unit system selected. The unit systems for angle commands are: 1 deg. for 1mm and 1 inch unit system 0.001 deg. for 1 μ m unit system 0.0001 deg. for 0.0001 inch system |
| ATAN2 | Arctangent (2) Angle of point defined by coordinate value (a, b). Value range -180° to 180° | ATAN2 [10.15] | |
| SQRT | Square root | $X = 15 * \text{SQRT} [224.5]$ | |
| ABS | Absolute value | ABS [V15] | |
| BIN | Decimal to binary conversion | BIN [V15] 4BYTE | |
| BCD | Binary to decimal conversion | BCD [V20] 4BYTE | |
| ROUND | Rounding off fractions | ROUND [V5] | |
| FIX | Cutting off fractions | FIX [V7] | |
| FUP | Counting fractions as a whole number | FUP [V15] | |
| DROUND | Rounding off fractions to three decimal places (metric system) or to four decimal places (inch system) | DROUND [V20] | |
| DFIX | Cutting off fractions below the third decimal place (metric system) or below the fourth decimal place (inch system) | DFIX [V20] | |
| DFUP | Count the figures below the third decimal place (metric system) or below the fourth decimal place (inch system) as a whole number | DFUP [V21] | |
| MOD | Remainder (a - fix[a/b]:b) | MOD [a,b] | |

(3) Combination of Operations

- The operations and functions explained in the previous page can be combined as needed.

$$X = V1 + V2 - V3 + V4 * \text{COS} [30]$$

- Designating operator precedence with square brackets []
Operator precedence can be determined by using square brackets.

Example:

$$V1 = [V2 + V3] * V4 + [V5 - V6] / V7 + V8$$

1. _____ 2. _____

3. _____ 4. _____

5. _____

5. Supplemental Information on User Task Programs

5-1. Sequence Return in Program Using User Task

Basically, sequence return can be performed in the same manner as in a conventional program and there are no restrictions on activating the sequence return function.

When variables are set in a block preceding the one where the sequence return is executed, the set data are all registered in the memory.

5-2. Data Types, Constants

(1) Type of Data

There are three types of data: "integer type", "real type" and "logical type".

- Integer type
Data of integer type accurately express integer values and can be zero, a positive integer or a negative integer.
- Real type
Data of real type accurately express real values and can be zero, a positive real number or a negative real number.
- Logical type
Data of logical type may be either true (1) or false (0).

(2) Constants

There are two types of constant: "integer constant" and "real constant"

- Integer constant
Integer constants are constants of integer type. They are expressed by up to eight digits and are interpreted as a decimal number.
- Real constant
Real constants are constants of real type. They are expressed by up to eight digits including a decimal point and are interpreted as a decimal number.

5-3. Types/Operation Rules of Variables and Evaluation of Their Values

(1) Variable type and evaluation

When setting a variable, an assignment statement is used:

Example:

$V = e$

where,

V = variable name

e = constant, variable name, expression, and function

With this setting, the value of "e" is evaluated, and the value of "V" is changed according to the rule.

| Variable Name of V | Unit System | Type of "e" | Evaluation of Value |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|-------------|--|
| System variables | 1 mm 1/10000 inch | [I] | Not changed |
| | | [R] | [R] → [I] (inch system value is converted into metric system value) (rounding of fractions) |
| | mm inch | [I] | [I] * 1000 (metric system) [I] * 10000 (inch system) |
| | | [R] | [R] * 100 → (metric system) (rounding off fractions) [R] * 10000 → (inch system) (rounding off fractions) |
| Common variables | — | [I] | [I] → [R] |
| | | [R] | Not changed |
| Local variables | — | [I] | [I] → [R] |
| | | [R] | Not changed |
| Extended address character | — | [I] | [I] → [R] |
| | | [R] | Not changed |
| I/O variable | — | [I] | Not changed |
| | | [R] | [R] → [I] (rounding off fractions) |

Abbreviations:

[I]Integer type

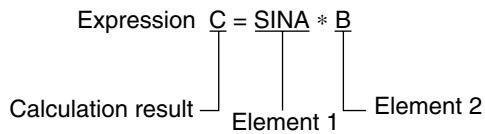
[R]Real type

[I] → [R]Change to real type

[R] → [I]Change to integer type

(2) Rules of Operation Expression and Evaluation of Values

Example:



| Type of Expression | Operator | Meaning | Type of Element 1 "A" | Type of Element 2 "B" | Type of Result of Operation "C" |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Arithmetic expression | + | Addition | [I] | [I] | [I] |
| | | | [I] → [R] | [R] | [R] |
| | - | Subtraction | [R] | [I] → [R] | [R] |
| | | | [R] | [R] | [R] |
| | + | Positive sign | [I] | | [I] |
| | - | Negative sign | [R] | | [R] |
| | * | Multiplication | [I] → [R] | [I] → [R] | [R] |
| | / | Division | [R] | [R] | [R] |
| Comparison expression | LT | Less than < | [I] | [I] | [b] |
| | LE | Less than or equal to ≤ | | | |
| | EQ | Equal to = | [I] → [R] | [R] | |
| | NE | Not equal to ≠ | [R] | [I] → [R] | |
| | GT | Greater than > | [R] | [R] | |
| GE | Greater than or equal to ≥ | | | | |
| Logical expression | EOR | Exclusive OR | [I] | [I] | [I] |
| | OR | Logical sum | [R] → [I] | [R] → [I] | |
| | AND | Logical product | (cutting off fractions) | (cutting off fractions) | |
| | NOT | Negation | [I] or [R] → [I] | | [I] |
| | | | (cutting off fractions) | | |

Abbreviations:

[I]Integer type

[R]Real type

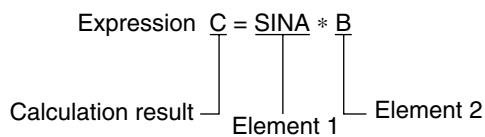
[R] → [I]Change to real type

[I] → [R]Change to integer type

[b]Logical type

(3) Function Operation Rules and Evaluation of Value

Example:



| Function Name | Meaning | Unit System | Type of Element 1 | Type of Element 2 | Type of Result of Operation |
|---------------|--|--------------|--|----------------------------------|---|
| SIN COS | Sine Cosine | 1 mm | [I] → [R] | [R]/1000 deg. (metric system) | [R] |
| | | 1/10000 inch | [R] | [R]/1000 deg. (inch system) | [R] |
| TAN | Tangent | mm inch | [I] → [R] [R] | (degree) | [R] [R] |
| ATAN ATAN2 | Arctangent | 1 mm | [I] → [R] | | [R] * 1000 (1/10000 degree) (metric system) |
| | | 1/10000 inch | [R] | | [R] * 1000 (1/10000 degree) (inch system) |
| SQRT | Square root | — | [I] → [R] [R] | — | [R] |
| ABS | Absolute value | — | [I] → [R] [R] | — | [R] |
| BIN | BCD → BIN | — | [I] [R] → [I] (cutting off fractions) | — | [I] |
| BCD | BIN → BCD | — | [I] [R] → [I] (cutting off fractions) | — | [I] |
| ROUND | Rounding off fractions | — | [I] [R] | — | [I] (Not changed) [I] |
| FIX | Cutting of fractions | — | [I] [R] | — | [I] (Not changed) [I] |
| FUP | Counting frac- tions as a whole number | — | [I] [R] | — | [I] (Not changed) [I] |

Abbreviations:

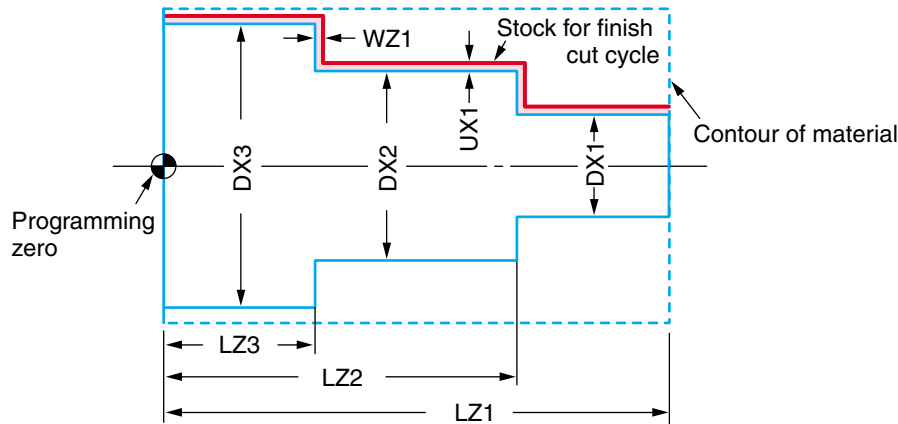
- [I]Integer type
 [R]Real type
 [R] → [I]Change to integer type
 [I] → [R]Change to real type

6. Examples of User Task Programs

Three typical program examples are provided in the following pages.

Please refer to these examples and the programming methods used so that you can make the most of the User Task function.

● Program Example 1 (Shaft work with similar contour)



Assume that the three different workpieces with similar contours shown above are to be cut. Programs are prepared using user task function as described below.

- 1) Assign file names to the three workpieces:
SHAFT-A
SHAFT-B
SHAFT-C
- 2) Since these workpieces have similar contours, their contours are defined with a subprogram. The file name of the subprogram is "SHAFT-ABC.SUB".
- 3) The elements (dimensions) used to define the contour, and the tool numbers and the cutting speeds, are expressed using the local variables and the common variables, respectively.

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| V1 = Roughing tool | DX1 = Diameter DX1 |
| V2 = Finishing tool | DX2 = Diameter DX2 |
| V3 = Cutting speed in roughing cycle | DX3 = Diameter DX3 |
| V4 = Cutting speed in finishing cycle | WLZ1 = Finish allowance in longitudinal direction WZ1 |
| LZ1 = Longitudinal dimension LZ1 | UDX1 = Finish allowance on diameter UX1 |
| LZ2 = Longitudinal dimension LZ2 | XS = X coordinate of LAP starting point |
| LZ3 = Longitudinal dimension LZ3 | ZS = Z coordinate of LAP starting point |

- 4) For cutting a workpiece, the LAP mode is used.
- 5) The steps described above are summarized in the table below.

| | | Roughing tool | Finishing tool | Cutting speed in roughing cycle | Cutting speed in finishing cycle | LZ1 | LZ2 | LZ3 | DX1 | DX2 | DX3 | WZ1 | UX1 | XS | ZS |
|--------------|---------|---------------|----------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|------|-----|-----|
| | | V1 | V2 | V3 | V4 | LZ1 | LZ2 | LZ3 | DX1 | DX2 | DX3 | WZ1 | UX1 | XS | ZS |
| Work-piece A | Shaft-A | 0101 | 0202 | 100 | 120 | 200 | 150 | 80 | 30 | 50 | 80 | 0.1 | 0.2 | 100 | 210 |
| Work-piece B | Shaft-B | 0303 | 0404 | 110 | 130 | 250 | 170 | 100 | 40 | 70 | 120 | 0.15 | 0.25 | 140 | 260 |
| Work-piece C | Shaft-C | 0505 | 0606 | 90 | 150 | 300 | 200 | 120 | 50 | 90 | 150 | 0.2 | 0.3 | 170 | 300 |

- Subprogram
The subprogram defining the contour, prepared using local and common variables, can be programmed as shown below on the basis of the table above.

| \$ SHAFT-ABC.SUB % | | | | | |
|--------------------|-----|-------|-----------|---------|--------------|
| O1000 | | | | | |
| NLAP1 G81 | | | | | |
| N1001 | G00 | X=DX1 | Z=LZ1+2 | | |
| N1002 | G01 | Z=LZ2 | F0.2 | | |
| N1003 | | X=DX2 | | | |
| N1004 | | | Z=LZ3 | | |
| N1005 | | X=DX3 | | | |
| N1006 | | | Z=0 | | |
| N1007 G80 | | | | | |
| N1010 | G00 | X=800 | Z=400 | | |
| N1011 | G96 | X=XS | S=V3 T=V1 | M03 M08 | |
| N1012 | G85 | NLAP1 | D4 | F0.35 | U=UDX1 W=WZ1 |
| N1020 | G00 | X=800 | Z=400 | | |
| N1021 | | | | | |
| N1022 G87 NLAP1 | | | | | |

- Main Program
The cutting program is made up of three types of main program for each workpiece.

| Workpiece A \$SHAFT-A. MIN % | | | | | |
|---|-----|------|------|--|--|
| O100 | | | | | |
| N101 | G00 | X800 | Z400 | | |
| N102 CALL O1000 V1=0101 V2=0202 V3=100 V4=120 LZ1=200 LZ2=150 LZ3=80 \$ DX1=30 DX2=50 DX3=80 WLZ1=0.1 UDX1=0.2 XS=100 ZX=210 | | | | | |
| N103 M02 | | | | | |

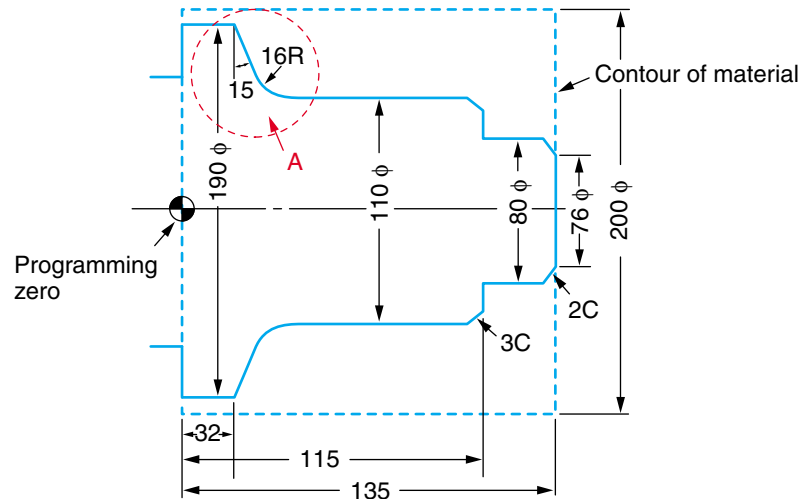
| | | | |
|--|-----|------|------|
| Workpiece B \$SHAFT-B. MIN % | | | |
| O101 | | | |
| N101 | G00 | X800 | Z400 |
| N102 CALL O1000 V1=0303 V2=0404 V3=110 V4=130 LZ1=250 LZ2=170 LZ3=100 \$ DX1=40 DX2=70 DX3=120 WLZ1=0.5 UDX1=0.25 XS=140 ZX=260 | | | |
| N103 | M02 | | |

| | | | |
|--|-----|------|------|
| Workpiece C \$SHAFT-C. MIN % | | | |
| O102 | | | |
| N101 | G00 | X800 | Z400 |
| N102 CALL O1000 V1=0505 V2=0606 V3=90 V4=150 LZ1=300 LZ2=200 LZ3=120 \$ DX1=50 DX2=90 DX3=150 WLZ1=0.2 UDX1=0.3 XS=170 ZX=360 | | | |
| N103 | M02 | | |

[Supplement]

- File name of the cutting program (main program)
Prefix the file name with \$. If the program is on tape, punch the machining program (main program) in the following order:
\$, program name, MIN, feed holes, %, CR, LF.
- Cutting program name (number)
O100 in this example
- The main program calls the sub program O1000 to perform machining. At this time, the main program assigns required data to the variables used by the sub program.

● Program Example 2 (Cutting contour requiring calculation for definition)



[Fig. 2-1]

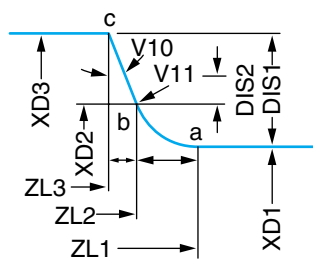
When cutting a contour containing a circular arc and a taper and when the point(s) of intersection is not indicated on the part drawing, the operation functions of the User Task function can be used with good effect to create the program.

[Program Sequence]

- 1) With enlarging section A, have the control calculate the points of intersection using the variables and the operation function of the user task. The points that must be calculated are Z-coordinate of point a and X- and Z-coordinates of point b. To obtain them, variables are set as below.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| V10 = Taper angle (15°) | } Set using common variables |
| V11 = Arc radius (16 mm) | |
| XD1 = Diameter of point "a" (110 mm) | } Set using local variables |
| XD2 = Diameter of point "b" | |
| XD3 = Diameter of point "c" (190 mm) | |
| ZL1 = Z-coordinate of point "a" | |
| ZL2 = Z-coordinate of point "b" | |
| ZL3 = Z-coordinate of point "c" (32 mm) | |
| DIS1 = Distance: DX3 - DX1 | |
| DIS2 = Distance between the center of arc and point "b" (along X-axis) | |
| DIS3 = Distance between point "a" and point "b" (along Z-axis) | |
| DIS4 = Distance between point "b" and point "c" (along Z-axis) | |

- 2) The point of intersection can be calculated in the following equations, based on the variables in 1.



[Fig. 2-2]

$$DIS1 = (DX3 - DX1) / 2$$

$$DIS2 = V11 \times \sin(V10)$$

$$DIS3 = V11 \times \cos(V10)$$

$$DIS4 = (DIS1 + DIS2 - V11) \times \tan(V10)$$

$$XD2 = XD1 + 2 \times (V11 - DIS2)$$

$$ZL2 = ZL3 + DIS4$$

$$ZL1 = ZL2 + DIS3$$

- 3) Since the pattern in Section A can be used in common with other workpieces, it is advisable to program such a contour as a subprogram. We will name the subprogram "RADIUS-TAPER.SUB". Variables XD2, ZL1, and ZL2 are set in this subprogram, and other variables are set in the main program.
- 4) Prepare the cutting program as a main program.
The file name of the main program is "FLANGE-1.MIN". The LAP and nose radius compensation functions are used in the main program.
- Subprogram

| | | | | |
|---|-----|-------|-------|-------|
| RADIUS-TAPER.SUB % | | | | |
| ORT01 | | | | |
| N1000 XD2=XD1+2* [V11-DIS2] ZL2=ZL3+DIS4 \$ ZL1=AL2+DIS3 | | | | |
| N1001 | G01 | Z=ZL1 | | |
| N1002 | G02 | X=XD2 | Z=ZL2 | L=V11 |
| N1003 | G01 | X=XD3 | Z=ZL3 | |
| N1004 | RTS | | | |

- Main program (cutting program)

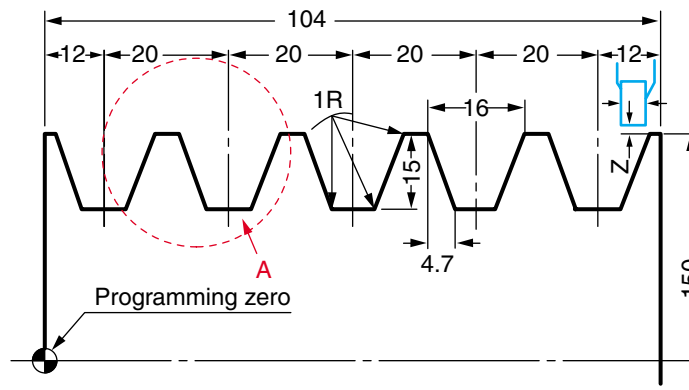
| | | | | |
|--|--------|--------|---------|----------------------|
| FRANGE-1. MIN % | | | | |
| O100 | | | | |
| N101 | V10=15 | V11=16 | XD1=110 | XD3=90 ZL3=32 |
| N102 | G00 | X800 | Z300 | |
| NLAP1 G81 | | | | |
| N103 | G00 | X76 | Z137 | |
| N104 | G42 | G01 | Z135 | F0.2 |
| N105 | G75 | X80 | L-2 | |
| N106 | | | Z115 | |
| N107 | G75 | X=X01 | L-3 | |
| N108 CALL ORT01 DIS1= [XD3-X01] /2 DIS2-V11*SIN [V10] \$ DIS3=V11*COS(V10) DIS4= [DIS1+DIS2-V11] *TAN [V11] | | | | |
| N109 | | | Z-2 | |
| N110 | G40 | G00 | X200 | I10 |
| N111 G80 | | | | |
| N120 | G00 | X800 | Z300 | |
| N121 | G96 | X202 | Z137 | S110 T010101 M03 M08 |
| N122 | G85 | NLAP1 | D6 | F0.35 U0.2 M0.1 |
| N123 | G00 | X800 | Z300 | |
| N124 | | | S130 | T020202 |
| N125 G87 NLAP2 | | | | |
| N126 | G00 | X800 | Z300 | |
| | | | N05 | M09 |
| N128 | M02 | | | |

[Supplement]

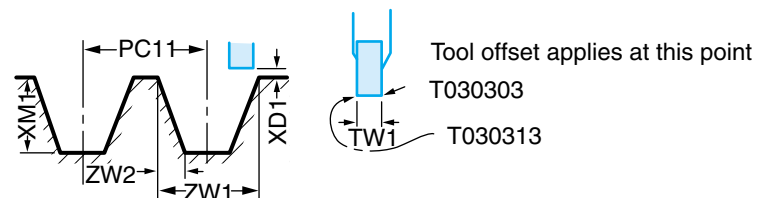
- Variables are set in block N1000.
- The Z coordinate of point "a" is commanded in block N1001.
- The X and Z coordinates of point "b" and arc radius are commanded in block N1002.
- The X and Z coordinates of point "c" are commanded in block N1003.
- RTS in block N1004 indicates the end of the subprogram.
Note: The subprogram ORT01 is called for by the command in block N109 to define the contour consisting of a circular arc and taper. The variables used for defining this contour are all set in this block.

● Program Example 3 (Cutting a contour consisting of a repetitive contour)

This is an example of programming for a part that has repetitions of the same contour, such as a pulley.



[Fig. 3-1]



[Fig. 3-2]

[Program Sequence]

- 1) Assume that there are a number of pulleys with a similar contour, shown as above. To simplify the programs of these pulleys, express the contour of part A using variables.

| Variable Name | Contents | Numerical Value for This Example (Fig. 3-1) |
|---------------|--|---|
| PC11 | Pitch between the pulley groove | 20 mm |
| XH1 | Height of pulley groove | 15 |
| XD1 | Starting point of cutting | 2 |
| ZW1 | Width of groove | 16 |
| ZW2 | Taper amount of groove in Z-axis direction | 4.7 |
| TW1 | Width of cutting off tool | 6 |
| D1 | Value of I of IR | 0.299 |
| DK | Value of K of KR | 0.954 |

- 2) Program the pulley groove cutting cycle as a subprogram using the variables.
 Since this program is called for after execution of axis motion command(s), it is prepared in incremental mode so that it can be used wherever it is called.
 The subprogram file name is "PULL-PTTN1.SUB".

- Subprogram

| | | | |
|---------------------|-----|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| \$ PULL-PTTN1.SUB % | | | |
| OPP1 | | | |
| N1 | G91 | G00 | Z=- [ZW1/2] + [TW1/2] |
| N2 | G42 | X=-XD1+0.2 | |
| N3 | G01 | X=- [XH1*2] -0.2 | F0.05 |
| N4 | G00 | X= [XH1*2] +XD1 | |
| N5 | | Z=ZW2 | |
| N6 | | X=-XD1 | |
| N7 | G01 | X=- [XH1*2] | Z=-ZW2 |
| N8 | G00 | X= [XH1*2] +XD1 | |
| N9 | G41 | Z=-ZW2 T030313 | |
| N10 | | X=-XD1 | |
| N11 | G01 | X=- [XH1*2] | Z=-ZW2 |
| N12 | G00 | X= [XH1*2] +XD1 | |
| N13 | | | Z=-ZW2-DK-0.3 |
| N14 | | X=-XD1 | |
| N15 | G02 | X=- [1-D1] *2 | Z=DK I=-1 |
| N16 | G01 | X=- [XH1*2] + [1-D1] *4 | Z=ZW2-DK |
| N17 | G03 | X=- [1-D1] *2 | Z=DK I=D1 K=DK |
| N18 | G00 | X= [XH1*2] *XD1 | |
| N19 | | Z=ZW2+DK [0.3*2] T030303 | |
| N20 | G42 | X=-XD1 | |
| N21 | G03 | X=- [1-D1] *2 | Z=-DX I=-1 |
| N22 | G01 | X= [XH1*2] + [I-D1] +4 | Z=-ZW2+DK |
| N23 | G02 | X=- [1-D1] *2 | Z=-DK I=D1 K=-DK |
| N24 | G00 | X= [XH1*2] +XD1 | |
| N25 | | Z=ZW2 | |
| N26 | G90 | | |
| N27 | RTS | | |

- 3) The program for cutting one pulley groove was created in step 2. Using this subprogram, the program to cut the pulley shown in Fig. 3-1 can be prepared.
Make this program as a main program: Program file name is "PULLY-1.MIN".

- Main Program (Cutting Program)

| | | | |
|-------------------|--------|-----------|--|
| \$ PULLY-1. MIN % | | | |
| OPLY1 | | | |
| N001 | G13 | | |
| N002 | G00 | X=800 | Z300 |
| N003 | G96 | | S70 T030303 M03 |
| N004 | | PCH=20 | XD1=2 |
| N005 | | | Z100 |
| N006 | MODIN | OPP1 | XH1=15 ZW1=16 ZW2=4.7 TW1=6 D1=0.299 DK=0.954 |
| N007 | G00 | X=150+XD1 | Z100 |
| N008 | G00 | | Z100-PCH |
| N009 | G00 | | Z100- [2*PCH] |
| N010 | G00 | | Z100- [3*PCH] |
| N011 | G00 | | Z100- [4*PCH] |
| N012 | MODOUT | | |
| N013 | G40 | G00 | X800 Z300 M05 |
| N014 | M02 | | |

[Supplement]

The MODIN statement in block N007 places the control in the MODIN mode in which the subprogram is called and executed every time axis motion commands are completed. In this block, variables used in the subprogram OPP1 are also set.

In blocks N008 through N012, the subprogram OPP1 is called and executed every time the axis motion command(s) in those blocks is/are completed, thus cutting the pulley grooves.

The pulley grooves could also be cut by using the CALL statement instead of the MODIN and MODOUT statements. However, when the CALL statement is used, that statement must be repeated every time the subprogram is to be called.

SECTION 14 SCHEDULE PROGRAMS

1. Overview

Schedule programs permit different types of workpieces to be machined continuously without any operator intervention by using a bar feeder, loader, or other automation equipment.

- Several main programs can be selected and executed in the specified order by a schedule program.
- A schedule program is a set of the following five blocks. If other blocks are specified, an alarm will occur. The program must be terminated with the END block.
 - (1) PSELECT block
Selects and executes main programs.
 - (2) GOTO block
Branches unconditionally.
 - (3) IF block
Branches conditionally.
 - (4) VSET block
Sets variables.
 - (5) END block
Terminates schedule programs.
- These commands must be specified at the start of, or immediately after, the sequence name.
- Although comments given between '(' and ')' and continuous lines identified by '\$' are valid, block delete (/) is invalid.
- Total tape length for the schedule, main, and sub program is up to the maximum size of operation buffer area which is selected by the specification.

The blocks specified in a schedule program are described below.

2. PSELECT Block

[Function]

A PSELECT block selects and executes main programs for a workpiece to be machined.

- This function searches a specified main program file for a specified main program to be selected as a machining program. The function also searches a specified subprogram file, or system subprogram file, and manufacturer subprogram file for the required subprograms and selects them automatically.
- It repeats selected programs as specified.

[Programming format]

The commands must be specified in the following order:

Commands enclosed by [] may be omitted. Note that a comma “,” may also be omitted if the items that follow are all omitted.

{PSELECT} □ [fm],[pm],[fs],[n](CR) or (LF)

- 1) fm: Main program file name

Entries enclosed by [] may be omitted.

[3 characters] : [Within 16 characters] [3 characters]

Device name

File name

Extension

- If a device name, a file name, and/or an extension is omitted, entries of “MD1”, “A”, and “MIN”, respectively, are assumed to apply. If all entries for “fm” are omitted, “MD1:A.MIN” is assumed to apply.
- An alarm will occur if “*” or “?” is used in a main program file name.
- An alarm will occur if the specified file does not exist.

- 2) pm: Main program name

| | |
|---|--|
| 0 | |
| | |

Within 5 characters

- If entry of “pm” is omitted, the program name of the first program in the specified main program file is assumed to apply.
- An alarm will occur if the specified program does not exist in the selected main program file, fm.
- An alarm will occur if M02 or M30, indicating the end of the program, is not specified in the specified main program.

3) fs: Subprogram file name

Entries enclosed by [] may be omitted.

[3 characters] : [Within 16 characters] [3 characters]

Device name File name Extension

- Entry of "fs" may be omitted when:
 - (1) No subprogram call command is specified in a main program.
 - (2) The subprogram called from a main program or subprogram exists in MD1:*.SSB (system subprogram) or in MD1:*.MSB (manufacturer subprogram).
 - (3) Required subprograms other than SSB and MSB are contained in the main program file. If fs is specified, the device name and extension may be omitted. The defaults for the device name and extension are "MD1" and "SUB", respectively. Therefore, if everything is omitted, it is assumed that no file has been specified.
 - An alarm will occur if the total number of subprograms used exceeds 126.
 - An alarm will occur if "RTS" which means the end of a subprogram is not specified.
- An alarm will occur if the file specified by "fs" does not exist.

4) n: Repetition count

| | | |
|---|---|------------|
| Q | = | Expression |
|---|---|------------|

Q: Number of repetitions (specified by address)

The setting range is from 1 to 9999 and "1" is assumed to apply if entry of "n" is omitted. An alarm will occur if a number outside the range 1 to 9999 is specified.

A space (" ") may be used instead of "=". "=" may be omitted if it is directly followed by a numeric value.

3. Branch Block

The branching function of the schedule program, which is identical to SECTION 3-1. "Control Statement Function 1", is made possible by GOTO and IF blocks, which provide unconditional branching and conditional branching, respectively.

- GOTO Block

[Function]

The GOTO block unconditionally changes program sequences. The destination of a jump is specified using a sequence name immediately after the GOTO command.

[Programming format]

Commands must be specified in the following order:

GOTO □ N _____
 |
 Specifies the destination of a jump

- IF Block

[Function]

The IF block conditionally changes program sequences. If the condition is 'true', the sequence branches to the destination of a jump. If the condition is 'false', it proceeds to the next step.

[Programming format]

Commands must be specified in the following order:

IF [Expression □ Comparison operator □ Expression] N _____
 |
 Specifies the destination of a jump

The comparison operators include LT (<), LE (\leq), EQ (=), NE (\neq), GE (\geq), GT (>). For details, see SECTION 13, 3-3. "Arithmetic Operation Function 1".

4. Variables Setting Block

[Function]

'VSET' must be specified to set variables using the schedule program.

[Programming format]

Commands must be specified in the following order:

VSET □ Variable = Expression □ Variable = Expression

Variable in the left part : Specify a common, system, or output variable. If any other variable is specified in the left part, an alarm will occur.

Right part : An alarm will occur if an output variable is specified.

5. Schedule Program End Block

[Function]

At the end of a schedule program, an "END" block must always be specified. All blocks specified following the "END" block are invalid.

[Programming format]

END

6. Program Example

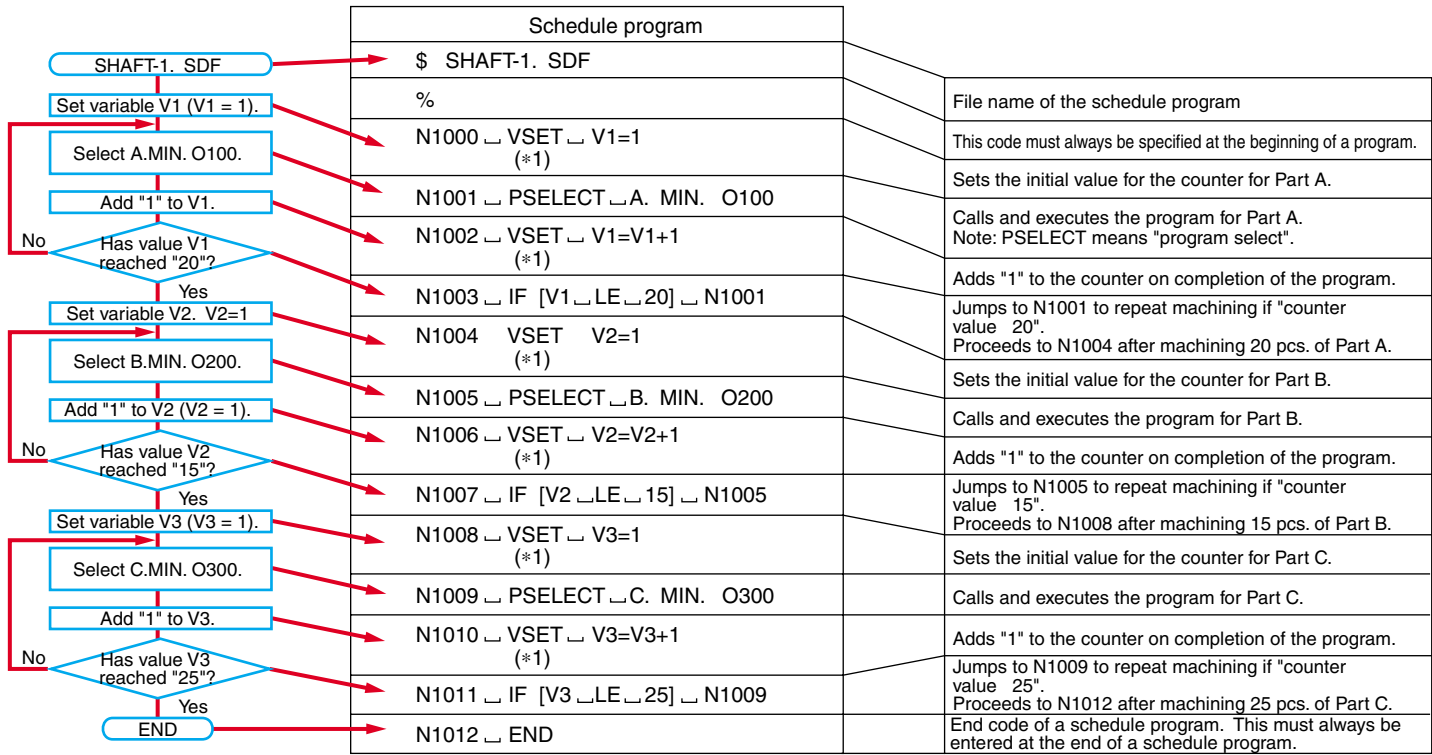
The procedure to create a schedule program is explained below.

Assume that the NC lathe is equipped with a bar feeder and three different workpieces are machined according to the programmed schedule.

[Programming procedure]

- 1) Determine the file name and the program name (number) of the program to be used for machining three kinds of parts.
Part A A.MIN, O100
Part B B.MIN, O200
Part C C.MIN, O300
- 2) Create the program for each part based on the part drawing.
- 3) To machine these three kinds of parts, determine the order and the number of parts to be machined.
Part A 20 pcs.
Part B 15 pcs.
Part C 25 pcs.
- 4) Make the schedule program next. Determine the file name of the schedule program.
File name SHAFT-1.SDF
- 5) Use common variables as counters to count the number of machined parts.
Variable for part A V1
Variable for part B V2
Variable for part C V3

6) Make the schedule program by following the flow chart shown below.



| Main Program (Machining Program) | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| A. MIN. O100 | B. MIN. O200 | C. MIN. O300 |
| % | % | % |
| N100 G00 X Z STM | N100 G00 X Z STM | N300 G00 X Z STM |
| | | |
| N150 M02 | N230 M02 | N340 M02 |

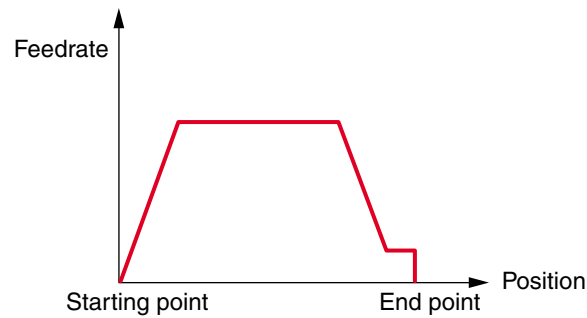
*1: When setting a common variable in a schedule program, specify the "VSET" command first, then set the common variable.

SECTION 15 OTHER FUNCTIONS

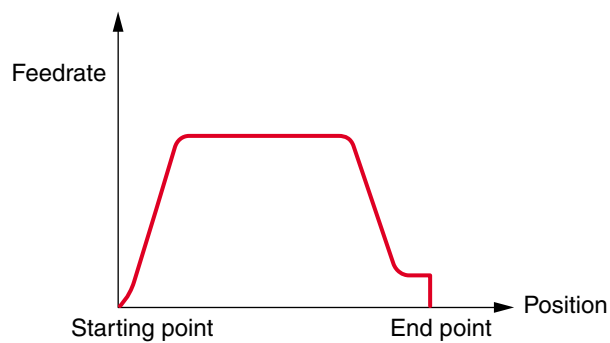
1. Automatic Acceleration and Deceleration

Acceleration at the start of an axis movement and deceleration at the end of an axis movement are automatically incorporated into axis movements.

- Positioning Mode and Manual Feed Mode
During the positioning mode and manual feed mode, automatic acceleration and deceleration is linear, as shown in the figure below.



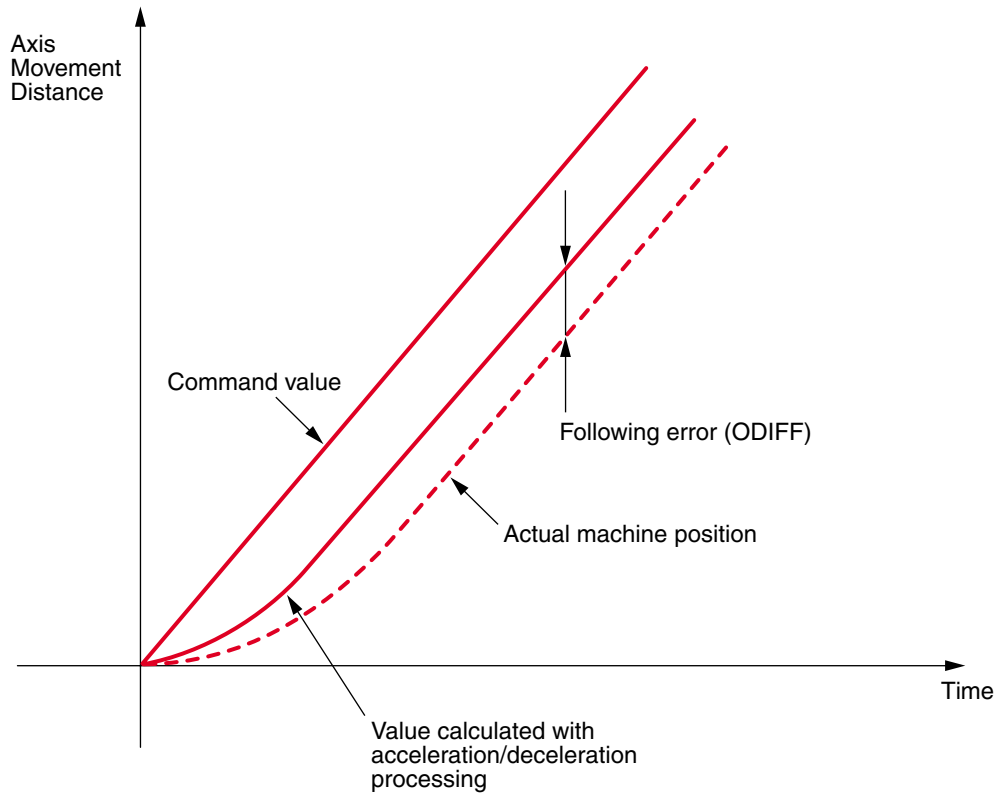
- Cutting Mode (G01, G02, G03)
During the cutting mode, appropriate acceleration and deceleration are automatically applied, as shown in the figure below.



2. Following Error Check

Following error is defined as the difference between the command value from the NC and the detected position value.

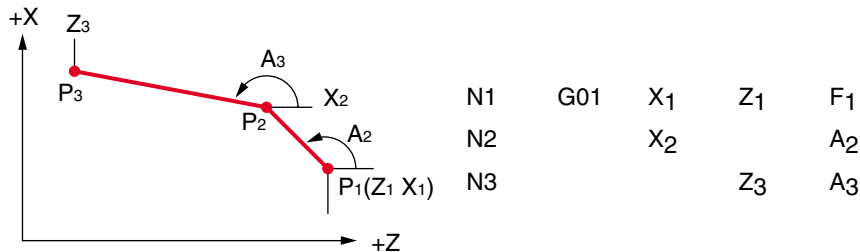
The DIFF-over alarm will be activated if the following error (ODIFF) reaches a certain value during rapid or cutting feed of an axis.



3. Direct Taper Angle Command

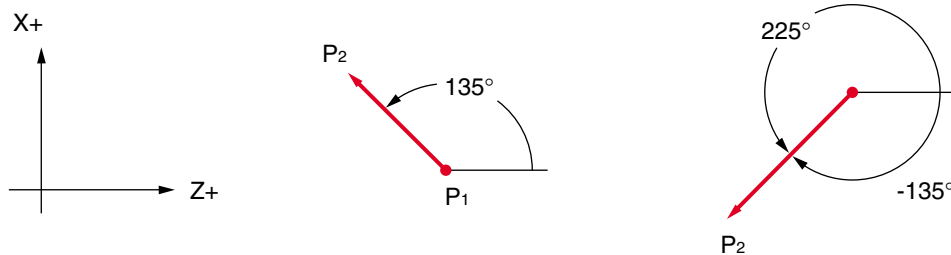
In conventional programming, taper cutting called for by G01, G34, and G35 is programmed using the coordinates of the target point.

However, by using this feature the command is given simply by entering either the X or Z coordinate point of the end point of the taper along with the angle referenced to the Z-axis (measured in the counterclockwise direction).



- An angle command in taper definition is effective in: G00, G01, G31, G32, G33, G34, and G35
- The angle is specified following address character "A".
- The units of angle commands for the metric and inch specifications are as follows:

| | |
|--------|--------------------------------------|
| Metric | :1 mm unit system.....0.001° |
| | :10 mm unit system.....0.01° |
| | :1 mm unit system.....1° |
| Inch | :1/10000 inch unit system.....0.001° |
| | :1 inch unit system.....1° |
- The control interprets the commands as a taper command when the commands contain either an X or Z word along with an A word.
- If an A command is designated with both X and Z words, or if it is designated without association with an X or Z word, an alarm results.
- The direct taper angle command is effective in:
 - LAP
 - Tool nose radius compensation mode
 - Incremental programming mode
 - Subprograms
- The angle is measured on the Z-X plane taking positive direction of Z-axis as 0 deg. It is positive when measured in the counterclockwise direction and negative in the clockwise direction. In the figure below, the angle is expressed as A135 in 1 mm unit system control since the angle is measured in the counterclockwise direction. For the angle shown in the right of the figure, A225 and A-135 will give the same taper.



- If no point of intersection is obtained with the commands X and A, or Z and A, an alarm results. Precautions for Programming Constant Speed Cutting

4. Barrier Check Function

4-1. General Description

The barrier check function permits a chuck/tailstock barrier (a specific machine area into which any cutting tool entry is prohibited) to be established in the vicinity of a chuck/tailstock on the basis of data in a program or entered through MDI switches. If a tool is commanded to move inside the barrier, an alarm occurs and stops machine operation.

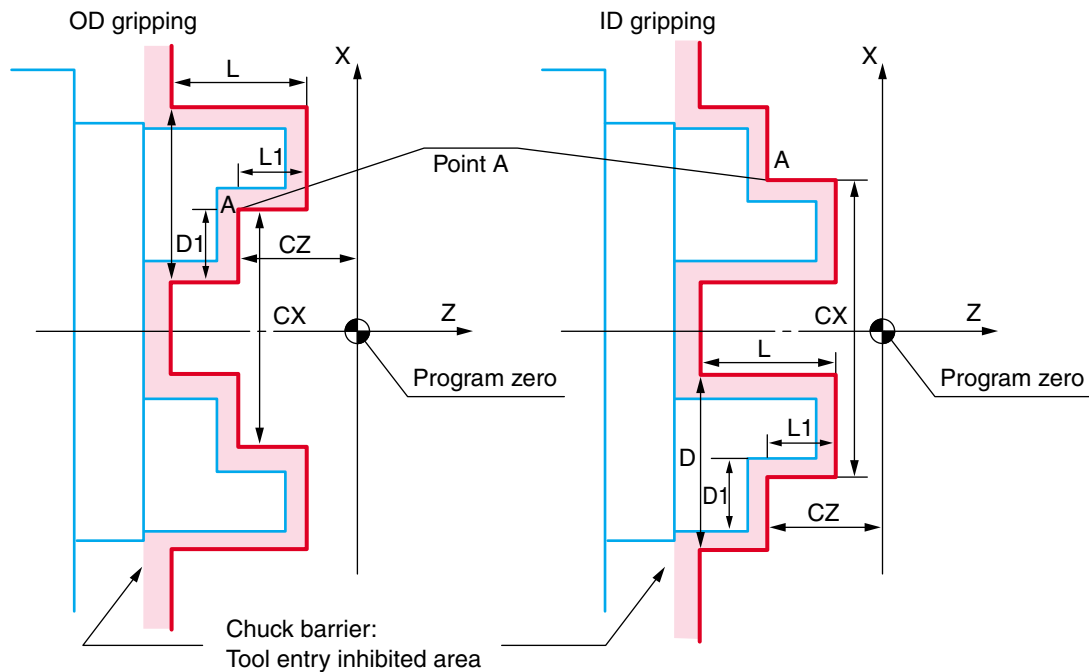
This function makes it possible to carry out trial operation in the automatic mode or cutting in the MDI mode without worrying about cutting tool collisions. In addition, it prevents accidents where a cutting tool strikes the chuck or tailstock due to an unexpected problem during automatic operation.

4-2. Chuck Barrier and Tailstock Barrier

1) Establishing a Chuck Barrier

The chuck barrier function can set an area around the chuck into which tool entry is prohibited, and which is matched to the chuck shape: this is not possible with variable soft-limit position data.

Activation or deactivation of the chuck barrier function can be selected by programming the appropriate M code. Therefore, the tool motion using the chuck barrier function can be checked when required.

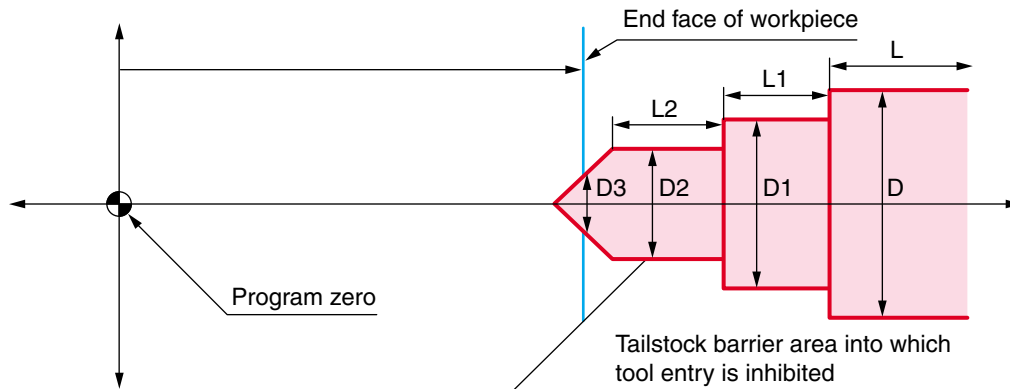


| Symbol | Description | Method |
|--------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| L | Chuck jaw length | Chuck/tailstock axis |
| D | Chuck jaw size | |
| L1 | Gripping length of chuck jaw | |
| D1 | Chuck jaw gripping face width | |
| CX | Chuck gripping diameter | |
| CZ | Distance from programming zero | |

For details of the procedure to establish the chuck barrier, refer to SECTION 4, PARAMETER SETTING in DATA OPERATION of OPERATION MANUAL.

2) Establishing a Tailstock Barrier

- The area used for the tailstock barrier function is indicated in the figure below.



- The tailstock barrier is established by setting the required data for parameters.

| Symbol | Description | Method |
|--------|-----------------------------------|----------------------|
| L | Tailstock spindle length | Chuck/tailstock axis |
| D | Tailstock spindle diameter | |
| L1 | Tailstock spindle length (1) | |
| D1 | Tailstock spindle diameter (1) | |
| L2 | Tailstock spindle length (2) | |
| D2 | Tailstock spindle diameter (2) | |
| D3 | Tailstock spindle center diameter | |
| WR | Tailstock spindle position (Z) | |

For details of procedure to establish the tailstock barrier, refer to SECTION 4, PARAMETER SETTING in DATA OPERATION of OPERATION MANUAL.

3) Tool Movements and Alarm

Once the chuck barrier is established, it is activated or deactivated by programming the appropriate M code:

M25 Chuck barrier ON

M24 Chuck barrier OFF

M21 Tailstock barrier ON

M20 Tailstock barrier OFF

If the cutting tool is commanded to enter inside the barrier while the chuck and/or the tailstock barrier function is active, an alarm occurs and the machine stops.

Example of Program:

```

:           :
:           :
:           :   Normal machining program
:           :
:           :
:           :
Nxxx      M25   :   Chuck barrier ON
:          (M21) :   (Tailstock barrier ON)
:           :
:          M24   :   Chuck barrier OFF
Nxxx      (M20) :   (Tailstock barrier OFF)
:           :
:           :
:           :

```

The barrier function is active for the blocks of commands from the block containing M25 (M21) to the one containing M24 (M20).

NOTICE

- 1) When power supply to the control is turned ON or when the control is reset, the control is automatically set in the barrier off mode (M24 and M20 active). If the chuck and the tailstock barrier functions are required to be active, command M25 and M21.
- 2) The chuck and tailstock barrier function are active for manual pulse handle mode operation or jog feed operation.
- 3) The barrier is modified when new barrier setting data is entered.

5. Operation Time Reduction Function

5-1. Spindle Rotation Answer Signal Ignore (M63)

[Function]

This function ignores the answer signal for spindle rotation.

For the following commands relating to spindle control, the individual answer signals are usually checked before starting axis movement. However, this function allows the axis move commands specified in the same block as such spindle control commands to be executed before checking the answer signals. The answer signals are checked after the completion of axis movement. Therefore, the axis move commands can be executed simultaneously with the spindle control commands, reducing cycle time.

Commands for which answer signals are ignored:

- Spindle start/stop command (M03, M04, M05)
- Gear change command (M40 - M44)
- Spindle orientation command (M19)
- Spindle speed command (S command)

[Programming format]

Enter the M63 command in the block where the spindle rotation answer signals are to be ignored.

M63 : Spindle rotation answer signal ignore

[Program example]

```
N100    G00  X50  Z50  M03  S1000  S63
N101                                Z10
```

In the N100 sequence, "X50 Z50" commands are executed simultaneously with the spindle start commands "M03 S1000" and the answer signals for spindle start and spindle speed arrived are checked after the completion of axis movement.

6. Turret Unclamp Command (for NC Turret Specification)

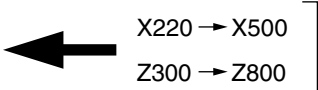
The NC simultaneously unclamps the turret and causes axis travel on receiving the M203 command. This command is effective only when it is specified with G00 in the same block.

Example:

```

G01  X200
G00  X220  Z300
G00  X500  Z800  M203
      X220  Z300  T020202

```


 X220 → X500
 Z300 → Z800

] Simultaneous movements of X-axis from 220 to 500 and Z-axis from 300 to 800.

Note that if the M203 command is specified in the same block as G00 it unclamps the turret without regard to the present turret position.

If the M203 command is preceded by a cutting feed command (feed command other than G00) and the turret clamped condition is not confirmed, the alarm "A1730 Turret clamp or position code 3" will occur.

APPENDIX

1. EAI/ISO Code Table

| EIA Code | | | | | | | | | ISO Code | | | | | | | | | Remarks | HEX |
|----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|-----|
| | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | | |
| 0 | | | ● | | | ● | | | 0 | | | ● | ● | | ● | | | Numerical character 0 | 30 |
| 1 | | | | | | ● | | ● | 1 | ● | | ● | ● | | ● | | ● | Numerical character 1 | B1 |
| 2 | | | | | | ● | ● | | 2 | ● | | ● | ● | | ● | | ● | Numerical character 2 | B2 |
| 3 | | | | ● | | ● | ● | ● | 3 | | | ● | ● | | ● | | ● | Numerical character 3 | 33 |
| 4 | | | | | | ● | ● | | 4 | ● | | ● | ● | | ● | ● | | Numerical character 4 | B4 |
| 5 | | | | ● | | ● | ● | ● | 5 | | | ● | ● | | ● | ● | ● | Numerical character 5 | 35 |
| 6 | | | | ● | | ● | ● | ● | 6 | | | ● | ● | | ● | ● | ● | Numerical character 6 | 36 |
| 7 | | | | | | ● | ● | ● | 7 | ● | | ● | ● | | ● | ● | ● | Numerical character 7 | B7 |
| 8 | | | | | ● | ● | | | 8 | ● | | ● | ● | ● | ● | | | Numerical character 8 | B8 |
| 9 | | | | ● | ● | ● | | ● | 9 | | | ● | ● | ● | ● | | ● | Numerical character 9 | 39 |
| A | | ● | ● | | | ● | | ● | A | | ● | | | | ● | | ● | Alphabetical character A | 41 |
| B | | ● | ● | | | ● | ● | | B | | ● | | | | ● | | ● | Alphabetical character B | 42 |
| C | | ● | ● | ● | | ● | ● | ● | C | ● | ● | | | | ● | | ● | Alphabetical character C | C3 |
| D | | ● | ● | | | ● | ● | | D | | ● | | | | ● | ● | | Alphabetical character D | 44 |
| E | | ● | ● | ● | | ● | ● | ● | E | ● | ● | | | | ● | ● | ● | Alphabetical character E | C5 |
| F | | ● | ● | ● | | ● | ● | ● | F | ● | ● | | | | ● | ● | ● | Alphabetical character F | C6 |
| G | | ● | ● | | | ● | ● | ● | G | | ● | | | | ● | ● | ● | Alphabetical character G | 47 |
| H | | ● | ● | | ● | ● | | | H | | ● | | | ● | ● | | | Alphabetical character H | 48 |
| I | | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● | | ● | I | ● | ● | | | ● | ● | | ● | Alphabetical character I | C9 |
| J | | ● | | ● | | ● | | ● | J | ● | ● | | | ● | ● | | ● | Alphabetical character J | CA |
| K | | ● | | ● | | ● | ● | | K | | ● | | | ● | ● | | ● | Alphabetical character K | 4B |
| L | | ● | | | | ● | ● | ● | L | ● | ● | | | ● | ● | ● | | Alphabetical character L | CC |
| M | | ● | | ● | | ● | ● | | M | | ● | | | ● | ● | ● | ● | Alphabetical character M | 4D |
| N | | ● | | | | ● | ● | ● | N | | ● | | | ● | ● | ● | ● | Alphabetical character N | 4E |
| O | | ● | | | | ● | ● | ● | O | ● | ● | | | ● | ● | ● | ● | Alphabetical character O (program number or program name) | CF |
| P | | ● | | ● | | ● | ● | ● | P | | ● | | ● | ● | | | | Alphabetical character P | 50 |
| Q | | ● | | ● | ● | ● | | | Q | ● | ● | | ● | ● | | | ● | Alphabetical character Q | D1 |
| R | | ● | | | ● | ● | | ● | R | ● | ● | | ● | ● | | ● | | Alphabetical character R | D2 |
| S | | | ● | ● | | ● | ● | | S | | ● | | ● | ● | | ● | ● | Alphabetical character S | 53 |
| T | | | ● | | | ● | ● | ● | T | ● | ● | | ● | ● | | ● | | Alphabetical character T | D4 |
| U | | | ● | ● | | ● | ● | | U | | ● | | ● | ● | | ● | ● | Alphabetical character U | 55 |
| V | | | ● | | | ● | ● | ● | V | | ● | | ● | ● | | ● | ● | Alphabetical character V | 56 |
| W | | | ● | | | ● | ● | ● | W | ● | ● | | ● | ● | | ● | ● | Alphabetical character W | D7 |
| X | | | ● | ● | | ● | ● | ● | X | ● | ● | | ● | ● | | ● | | Alphabetical character X | D8 |
| Y | | | ● | ● | ● | ● | | | Y | | ● | | ● | ● | | ● | ● | Alphabetical character Y | 59 |

*1: Disregarded if used as machining data.

| EIA Code | | | | | | | | | ISO Code | | | | | | | | | Remarks | HEX |
|----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|----------|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|----|---------|-----|
| 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | | | | |
| | | ● | | ● | ● | | ● | Z | | ● | | ● | ● | | ● | Alphabetical character Z | 5A | | |
| | | ● | ● | ● | | ● | | + | | | ● | ● | ● | | ● | Plus Sign | 2B | | |
| | | ● | | | | ● | | - | | | ● | ● | ● | | ● | Minus Sign | 2D | | |
| | | | ● | ● | | ● | | / | | ● | | ● | ● | ● | ● | Block Delete or Division Symbol | AF | | |
| BLANK | | | | | | ● | | NUL | | | | | ● | | | Null | 0 | | |
| SPACE | | | | ● | | ● | | SPACE | | ● | | ● | | | | Space *1 | A0 | | |
| TAB | | | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● | HT | | | | ● | ● | | ● | Tabulation | 9 | | |
| ER | | | | | ● | ● | ● | % | | ● | | | ● | ● | ● | Program start | A5 | | |
| CR/EOB | ● | | | | | ● | | NL/LF | | | | ● | ● | | ● | End of block | 0A | | |
| | | | | | | ● | | CR | | ● | | | ● | ● | ● | Carrier return *1 | 8D | | |
| . | | ● | ● | | ● | ● | ● | . | | | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● | Period | 2E | | |
| , | | | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● | , | | ● | | ● | ● | ● | | Comma | AC | | |
| DEL | | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● | DEL | | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● | Delete *1 | FF | | |
| BS | | | ● | | ● | ● | ● | BS | | ● | | | ● | ● | | Backspace *1 | 88 | | |
| & | | | | | ● | ● | ● | & | | ● | | ● | | ● | ● | Ampersand | A6 | | |
| | | | | | | ● | | | | | | | | ● | | | | | |
| (| | | | ● | ● | ● | ● | (| | | ● | | ● | ● | | Control OUT (comment start) | 28 | | |
|) | | ● | | | ● | ● | ● |) | | ● | | ● | ● | | ● | Control IN (end of comment) | A9 | | |
| | | | | | | | | \$ | | | ● | | ● | ● | | Dollar symbol (block release) | 24 | | |
| | | | | | | | | * | | ● | | ● | ● | | ● | Multiplication symbol | AA | | |
| | | | | | | | | = | | ● | | ● | ● | ● | ● | Equal sign | BD | | |
| | | | | | | | | ? | | | ● | ● | ● | ● | ● | Question mark | 3F | | |
| | | | | | | | | [| | ● | ● | | ● | ● | ● | Left square bracket | DB | | |
| | | | | | | | |] | | ● | ● | | ● | ● | ● | Right square bracket | DD | | |
| | | | | | | | | : | | | | ● | ● | ● | ● | Colon (program name or program number) | 3A | | |
| | | | | | | | | ; | | ● | | ● | ● | ● | ● | Semicolon | BB | | |

*1: Disregarded if used as machining data.

2. G Code Table

☆: Optional
Others: Standard

| G Code | Contents |
|--------|---|
| G00 | Positioning |
| G01 | Linear interpolation |
| G02 | Circular interpolation (CW) |
| G03 | Circular interpolation (CCW) |
| G04 | Dwell |
| G05 | |
| G06 | |
| G07 | |
| G08 | |
| G09 | |
| G10 | |
| G11 | |
| G12 | |
| G13 | Turret selection: Turret A ☆ |
| G14 | Turret selection: Turret B ☆ |
| G15 | |
| G16 | |
| G17 | Cutter radius compensation: X-Y plane ☆ |
| G18 | Cutter radius compensation: Z-X plane ☆ |
| G19 | Cutter radius compensation: Y-Z plane ☆ |
| G20 | Home position return command ☆ |
| G21 | ATC home position return command ☆ |
| G22 | Torque skip command ☆ |
| G23 | |
| G24 | |
| G25 | |
| G26 | |
| G27 | |
| G28 | Torque limit command cancel ☆ |
| G29 | Torque limit command ☆ |
| G30 | Skip cycle ☆ |
| G31 | Fixed thread cutting cycle: Longitudinal |
| G32 | Fixed thread cutting cycle: End face |
| G33 | Fixed thread cutting cycle |
| G34 | Variable lead thread cutting cycle: Increasing lead |
| G35 | Variable lead thread cutting cycle: Decreasing lead |
| G36 | M-tool spindle - feed axis synchronized feeding (forward) ☆ |
| G37 | M-tool spindle - feed axis synchronized feeding (reverse) ☆ |

| G Code | Contents |
|--------|---|
| G38 | |
| G39 | |
| G40 | Cutter radius compensation: Cancel |
| G41 | Cutter radius compensation: Left |
| G42 | Cutter radius compensation: Right |
| G43 | |
| G44 | |
| G45 | |
| G46 | |
| G47 | |
| G48 | |
| G49 | |
| G50 | Zero shift, Maximum spindle speed designation |
| G51 | |
| G52 | |
| G53 | |
| G54 | |
| G55 | |
| G56 | |
| G57 | |
| G58 | |
| G59 | |
| G60 | |
| G61 | |
| G62 | Mirror image designation ☆ |
| G63 | |
| G64 | Droop control OFF |
| G65 | Droop control ON |
| G66 | |
| G67 | |
| G68 | |
| G69 | |
| G70 | |
| G71 | Compound fixed thread cutting cycle: Longitudinal |
| G72 | Compound fixed thread cutting cycle: Transverse |
| G73 | Longitudinal grooving compound fixed cycle |
| G74 | Transverse grooving compound fixed cycle |

| G Code | Contents |
|--------|--|
| G75 | Automatic chamfering |
| G76 | Automatic rounding |
| G77 | Tapping compound fixed cycle |
| G78 | Tapping cycle reverse thread |
| G79 | |
| G80 | End of shape designation (LAP) ☆ |
| G81 | Start of longitudinal shape designation (LAP) ☆ |
| G82 | Start of transverse shape designation (LAP) ☆ |
| G83 | Start of blank material shape definition (LAP) ☆ |
| G84 | Change of cutting conditions in bar turning cycle (LAP) ☆ |
| G85 | Call of rough bar turning cycle (LAP) ☆ |
| G86 | Call of rough copy turning cycle (LAP) ☆ |
| G87 | Call of finish turning cycle (LAP) ☆ |
| G88 | Call of continuous thread cutting cycle (LAP) ☆ |
| G89 | |
| G90 | Absolute programming |
| G91 | Incremental programming |
| G92 | |
| G93 | |
| G94 | Feed per minute mode (mm/min) |
| G95 | Feed per revolution mode (mm/rev) |
| G96 | Constant speed cutting ON |
| G97 | Cancel of G96 |
| G98 | |
| G99 | |
| G100 | Priority designating for turret A or B independent cutting ☆ |
| G101 | Linear interpolation in contour generation ☆ |
| G102 | Circular interpolation in contour generation (Face) (CW) ☆ |
| G103 | Circular interpolation in contour generation (Face) (CCW) ☆ |
| G104 | |
| G105 | |
| G106 | |
| G107 | Spindle synchronization tapping, RH thread ☆ |
| G108 | Spindle synchronization tapping, LH thread ☆ |
| G109 | |
| G110 | Constant speed cutting on turret A |

| G Code | Contents |
|--------|---|
| G111 | Constant speed cutting on turret B |
| G112 | Circular thread cutting CW ☆ |
| G113 | Circular thread cutting CCW ☆ |
| G114 | |
| G115 | |
| G116 | |
| G117 | |
| G118 | |
| G119 | Nose-R compensation: C-X-Z plane ☆ |
| G120 | |
| G121 | |
| G122 | W-axis command for sub spindle on turret A (G13) ☆ |
| G123 | W-axis command for sub spindle on turret A (G14) ☆ |
| G124 | |
| G125 | |
| G126 | |
| G127 | |
| G128 | |
| G129 | |
| G130 | |
| G131 | |
| G132 | Circular interpolation in contour generation (Side)(CW) ☆ |
| G133 | Circular interpolation in contour generation (Side)(CCW) ☆ |
| G134 | |
| G135 | |
| G136 | End of coordinate conversion or Y-axis mode OFF ☆ |
| G137 | Start of coordinate conversion ☆ |
| G138 | Y-axis mode ON ☆ |
| G139 | |
| G140 | Designation of machining mode using main spindle ☆ |
| G141 | Designation of machining mode using sub spindle ☆ |
| G142 | Designation of machining mode using pick-off spindle ☆ |
| G143 | Designation of machining mode using pick-off spindle and 3rd turret ☆ |
| G144 | |
| G145 | |
| G146 | |
| G147 | |

| G Code | Contents |
|--------|---|
| G148 | |
| G149 | |
| G150 | |
| G151 | |
| G152 | Programmable tailstock positioning (tow-along tailstock) ☆ |
| G153 | |
| G154 | |
| G155 | |
| G156 | |
| G157 | |
| G158 | |
| G159 | |
| G160 | |
| G161 | G code macro function MODIN ☆ |
| G162 | G code macro function MODIN ☆ |
| G163 | G code macro function MODIN ☆ |
| G164 | G code macro function MODIN ☆ |
| G165 | G code macro function MODIN ☆ |
| G166 | G code macro function MODIN ☆ |
| G167 | G code macro function MODIN ☆ |
| G168 | G code macro function MODIN ☆ |
| G169 | G code macro function MODIN ☆ |
| G170 | G code macro function MODIN ☆ |
| G171 | G code macro function CALL ☆ |
| G172 | |
| G173 | |
| G174 | |
| G175 | |
| G176 | |
| G177 | |
| G178 | Synchronized tapping cycle (CW) ☆ |
| G179 | Synchronized tapping cycle (CCW) ☆ |
| G180 | M-tool compound fixed cycle: Cancel ☆ |
| G181 | M-tool compound fixed cycle: Drilling ☆ |
| G182 | M-tool compound fixed cycle: Boring ☆ |
| G183 | M-tool compound fixed cycle: Deep hole drilling ☆ |
| G184 | M-tool compound fixed cycle: Tapping ☆ |
| G185 | M-tool compound fixed cycle: Longitudinal thread cutting ☆ |
| G186 | M-tool compound fixed cycle: End face thread cutting ☆ |
| G187 | M-tool compound fixed cycle: Longitudinal straight thread cutting ☆ |

| G Code | Contents |
|--------|---|
| G188 | M-tool compound fixed cycle: Transverse straight thread cutting ☆ |
| G189 | M-tool compound fixed cycle: Reaming/boring ☆ |
| G190 | M-tool compound fixed cycle: Keyway cutting cycle ☆ |
| G191 | M-tool compound fixed cycle: Longitudinal keyway cutting cycle ☆ |
| G192 | |
| G193 | |
| G194 | |
| G195 | |
| G196 | |
| G197 | |
| G198 | |
| G199 | |
| G200 | |
| G201 | |
| G202 | |
| G203 | |
| G204 | |
| G205 | G code macro function CALL ☆ |
| G206 | G code macro function CALL ☆ |
| G207 | G code macro function CALL ☆ |
| G208 | G code macro function CALL ☆ |
| G209 | G code macro function CALL ☆ |
| G210 | G code macro function CALL ☆ |
| G211 | G code macro function CALL ☆ |
| G212 | G code macro function CALL ☆ |
| G213 | G code macro function CALL ☆ |
| G214 | G code macro function CALL ☆ |

3. Table of Mnemonic Codes

☆: Optional
Others: Standard

| M Code | Contents |
|--------|---|
| M00 | Program stop |
| M01 | Optional stop |
| M02 | End of program |
| M03 | Spindle start, CW |
| M04 | Spindle start, CCW |
| M05 | Spindle stop |
| M06 | Tool change ☆ |
| M07 | |
| M08 | Coolant ON |
| M09 | Coolant OFF |
| M10 | |
| M11 | |
| M12 | M-tool spindle stop ☆ |
| M13 | M-tool spindle start, CW ☆ |
| M14 | M-tool spindle start, CCW ☆ |
| M15 | C-axis positioning (positive direction) ☆ |
| M16 | C-axis positioning (negative direction) ☆ |
| M17 | CEJ MATIC: Request for data transfer ☆ |
| M18 | Post-process gauging: Request for RS232C data transfer ☆ |
| M19 | Spindle orientation ☆ |
| M20 | Tailstock barrier OFF or spindle interference monitoring OFF (opposed two-spindle models) ☆ |
| M21 | Tailstock barrier ON or spindle interference monitoring ON (opposed two-spindle models) ☆ |
| M22 | Chamfering OFF |
| M23 | Chamfering ON |
| M24 | Chuck barrier OFF, tool interference OFF |
| M25 | Chuck barrier ON, tool interference ON |
| M26 | Thread lead along Z-axis |
| M27 | Thread lead along X-axis |
| M28 | Tool interference check function OFF |
| M29 | Tool interference check function ON |
| M30 | End of program |
| M31 | |
| M32 | Straight infeed along thread face mode |
| M33 | Zigzag infeed in thread cutting |
| M34 | Straight infeed along thread face mode (on right face) |
| M35 | Loader gripper Z slide retract ☆ |

| M Code | Contents |
|--------|--|
| M36 | Loader gripper Z slide advance ☆ |
| M37 | Loader arm retract ☆ |
| M38 | Loader arm advance to unloading position ☆ |
| M39 | Loader arm advance to chuck position ☆ |
| M40 | Spindle gear range neutral |
| M41 | Spindle gear range 1 or low-speed winding selection |
| M42 | Spindle gear range 2 or high-speed winding selection |
| M43 | Spindle gear range 3 |
| M44 | Spindle gear range 4 |
| M45 | |
| M46 | |
| M47 | |
| M48 | Spindle speed override ignore cancel ☆ |
| M49 | Spindle speed override ignore ☆ |
| M50 | Additional air blower 1 OFF ☆ |
| M51 | Additional air blower 1 ON ☆ |
| M52 | |
| M53 | |
| M54 | Automatic indexing of index chuck ☆ |
| M55 | Tailstock spindle retract ☆ |
| M56 | Tailstock spindle advance ☆ |
| M57 | |
| M58 | Chucking pressure low |
| M59 | Chucking pressure high |
| M60 | Cancel of M61 |
| M61 | Ignoring fixed rpm arrival in constant speed cutting |
| M62 | Cancel of M64 ☆ |
| M63 | Ignoring spindle rotation M code answer ☆ |
| M64 | Ignoring general M code answer ☆ |
| M65 | Ignoring T code answer ☆ |
| M66 | Turret indexing position free ☆ |
| M67 | Synchronized mode cancel in cam turning cycle ☆ |
| M68 | Synchronized mode A ON ☆ |
| M69 | Synchronized mode B ON ☆ |
| M70 | Manual tool change command ☆ |
| M71 | |
| M72 | ATC unit positioning at approach position ☆ |

| M Code | Contents | |
|--------|---|---|
| M73 | Thread cutting pattern 1 | ☆ |
| M74 | Thread cutting pattern 2 | ☆ |
| M75 | Thread cutting pattern 3 | ☆ |
| M76 | Parts catcher retract | ☆ |
| M77 | Parts catcher advance | ☆ |
| M78 | Steady rest unclamp | ☆ |
| M79 | Steady rest clamp | ☆ |
| M80 | Overcut advance | ☆ |
| M81 | Overcut retract | ☆ |
| M82 | | |
| M83 | Chuck clamp | |
| M84 | Chuck unclamp | |
| M85 | No return to the cutting starting point after the completion of rough turning cycle (LAP) | ☆ |
| M86 | Turret indexing direction: Clockwise (reverse) | |
| M87 | Cancel of M86 | |
| M88 | Air blower OFF | |
| M89 | Air blower ON | |
| M90 | Cover close | ☆ |
| M91 | Cover open | ☆ |
| M92 | Bar feeder retract | ☆ |
| M93 | Bar feeder advance | ☆ |
| M94 | Loader loading | ☆ |
| M95 | Loader unloading | ☆ |
| M96 | Parts catcher for sub spindle retract | ☆ |
| M97 | Parts catcher for sub spindle forward | ☆ |
| M98 | Tailstock spindle thrust low | |
| M99 | Tailstock spindle thrust high | |
| M100 | Waiting for synchronization command | |
| M101 | External M signal | ☆ |
| M102 | External M signal | ☆ |
| M103 | External M signal | ☆ |
| M104 | External M signal | ☆ |
| M105 | External M signal | ☆ |
| M106 | External M signal | ☆ |
| M107 | External M signal | ☆ |
| M108 | External M signal | ☆ |
| M109 | Cancel of M110 | ☆ |
| M110 | C-axis joint | |
| M111 | Automatic zero point setting for pick-off spindle | ☆ |
| M112 | M-tool spindle on the 3rd turret stop | ☆ |

| M Code | Contents | |
|--------|---|---|
| M113 | M-tool spindle on the 3rd turret forward rotation | ☆ |
| M114 | M-tool spindle on the 3rd turret reverse rotation | ☆ |
| M115 | Unloader open | ☆ |
| M116 | Unloader close | ☆ |
| M117 | Sensor head advance | ☆ |
| M118 | Sensor head retract | ☆ |
| M119 | Work count special | ☆ |
| M120 | No work | ☆ |
| M121 | | |
| M122 | Steady rest retract | ☆ |
| M123 | Steady rest forward | ☆ |
| M124 | STM time over check ON | ☆ |
| M125 | STM time over check OFF | ☆ |
| M126 | Additional air blower 3 OFF | ☆ |
| M127 | Additional air blower 3 ON | ☆ |
| M128 | Tailstock swing retract | ☆ |
| M129 | Tailstock swing advance | ☆ |
| M130 | Chucking error detecting air output OFF | ☆ |
| M131 | Chucking error detecting air output ON | ☆ |
| M132 | Chucking error detection OFF | ☆ |
| M133 | Chucking error detection ON | ☆ |
| M134 | Z-axis thrust monitoring OFF | ☆ |
| M135 | Z-axis thrust monitoring ON | ☆ |
| M136 | Shape designation for compound fixed cycle | ☆ |
| M137 | Touch setter interlock release ON | ☆ |
| M138 | Touch setter interlock release OFF | ☆ |
| M139 | Lead machining function - learning operation | ☆ |
| M140 | Tapping cycle M-tool constant rotation answer ignored | ☆ |
| M141 | C-axis clamp or not selection | ☆ |
| M142 | Coolant pressure, low | ☆ |
| M143 | Coolant pressure, high | ☆ |
| M144 | Additional coolant 1 OFF | ☆ |
| M145 | Additional coolant 1 ON | ☆ |
| M146 | C-axis unclamp | ☆ |
| M147 | C-axis clamp | ☆ |
| M148 | Pick-off spindle start, CW | ☆ |
| M149 | Pick-off spindle start, CCW | ☆ |
| M150 | Synchronized rotation OFF | ☆ |
| M151 | Synchronized rotation ON | ☆ |
| M152 | M-tool spindle interlock ON | ☆ |

| M Code | Contents | |
|--------|--|---|
| M153 | M-tool spindle interlock OFF | ☆ |
| M154 | Additional air blower 2 OFF (air blower for gauging) | ☆ |
| M155 | Additional air blower 2 ON (air blower for gauging) | ☆ |
| M156 | Center work interlock OFF | |
| M157 | Center work interlock ON | |
| M158 | Lead machining function - synchronized operation OFF | ☆ |
| M159 | Lead machining function - synchronized operation ON | ☆ |
| M160 | Cancel of M161 | |
| M161 | Feedrate override fix (100%) | |
| M162 | Cancel of M163 | ☆ |
| M163 | M-tool spindle speed override fix (100%) | ☆ |
| M164 | Cancel of M165 | |
| M165 | Ignoring slide hold and single block | ☆ |
| M166 | Ignoring tailstock spindle advance/retract interlock OFF | ☆ |
| M167 | Ignoring tailstock spindle advance/retract interlock ON | ☆ |
| M168 | Ignoring M-tool spindle constant speed answer | ☆ |
| M169 | C-axis not clamped | ☆ |
| M170 | | |
| M171 | | |
| M172 | Robot inside the lathe interlock release OFF | ☆ |
| M173 | Robot inside the lathe interlock release ON | ☆ |
| M174 | Additional coolant 2 OFF | ☆ |
| M175 | Additional coolant 2 ON | ☆ |
| M176 | Y-axis unclamp | ☆ |
| M177 | Y-axis clamp | ☆ |
| M178 | Tailstock chuck clamp | |
| M179 | Tailstock chuck unclamp | |
| M180 | Robot request 0 | ☆ |
| M181 | Robot request 1 | ☆ |
| M182 | Robot request 2 | ☆ |
| M183 | Robot request 3 | ☆ |
| M184 | Chuck internal interlock release OFF | ☆ |
| M185 | Chuck internal interlock release ON | ☆ |
| M186 | | |
| M187 | | |
| M188 | Tailstock joint OFF (tow-along programmable tailstock) | ☆ |

| M Code | Contents | |
|--------|---|---|
| M189 | Tailstock joint ON (tow-along programmable tailstock) | ☆ |
| M190 | Designation of G00 possible with tailstock joint | ☆ |
| M191 | Designation of M-tool spindle orientation direction, CW | ☆ |
| M192 | Designation of M-tool spindle orientation direction, CCW | ☆ |
| M193 | Cancel of M194 | ☆ |
| M194 | Phasing for thread cutting | ☆ |
| M195 | Cancel of M196 | ☆ |
| M196 | Thread cutting phasing stroke effective | ☆ |
| M197 | Thread cutting phasing stroke clear | ☆ |
| M198 | | |
| M199 | | |
| M200 | Z-axis synchronized feed cancel | ☆ |
| M201 | Z-axis synchronized feed, G13 | ☆ |
| M202 | Z-axis synchronized feed, G14 | ☆ |
| M203 | Turret unclamp (NC turret) | ☆ |
| M204 | LR15M-ATC; time reduction (magazine shutter close) | ☆ |
| M205 | LR15M-ATC; time reduction (magazine shutter open) | ☆ |
| M206 | LR15M-ATC; time reduction (retract position cover close) | ☆ |
| M207 | LR15M-ATC; time reduction (retract position cover open) | ☆ |
| M208 | Door interlock C, D ON | |
| M209 | Door interlock C, D, OFF | |
| M210 | | |
| M211 | Keyway cutting cycle: Uni-direction cutting | ☆ |
| M212 | M-tool spindle on the 3rd turret stop, or Keyway cutting cycle: Zigzag pattern | ☆ |
| M213 | M-tool spindle on the 3rd turret stop, or Keyway cutting cycle: Designated depth infeed | ☆ |
| M214 | M-tool spindle on the 3rd turret stop, or Keyway cutting cycle: Equal depth infeed | ☆ |
| M215 | Load monitor G00 ignore OFF | ☆ |
| M216 | Load monitor G00 ignore ON | ☆ |
| M217 | | |
| M218 | Additional air blower OFF | ☆ |
| M219 | Additional air blower ON | ☆ |
| M220 | Flat turning OFF | ☆ |
| M221 | Flat turning ON (1 : 1) | ☆ |

| M Code | Contents |
|--------|---|
| M222 | Flat turning ON (1 : 2) ☆ |
| M223 | Flat turning ON (1 : 3) ☆ |
| M224 | Flat turning ON (1 : 4) ☆ |
| M225 | Flat turning ON (1 : 5) ☆ |
| M226 | Flat turning ON (1 : 6) ☆ |
| M227 | LR15M-ATC; ATC operation completion waiting command ☆ |
| M228 | ATC next tool return command ☆ |
| M229 | ATC M-tool spindle orientation ☆ |
| M230 | External M signal ☆ |
| M231 | External M signal ☆ |
| M232 | External M signal ☆ |
| M233 | External M signal ☆ |
| M234 | External M signal ☆ |
| M235 | External M signal ☆ |
| M236 | External M signal ☆ |
| M237 | External M signal ☆ |
| M238 | M-spindle phase variation |
| M239 | Sub spindle orientation ☆ |
| M240 | M-tool spindle: Neutral ☆ |
| M241 | M-tool spindle: 1st range ☆ |
| M242 | M-tool spindle: 2nd range ☆ |
| M243 | M-tool spindle: 3rd range ☆ |
| M244 | M-tool spindle: 4th range ☆ |
| M245 | |
| M246 | Pick-off interlock ON ☆ |
| M247 | Pick-off interlock OFF ☆ |
| M248 | Pick-off close ☆ |
| M249 | Pick-off open ☆ |
| M250 | Work pusher retract ☆ |
| M251 | Work pusher advance ☆ |
| M252 | Laser interferometer data write ☆ |
| M253 | Laser interferometer data verify ☆ |
| M254 | Program stop ☆ |
| M255 | |
| M256 | |
| M257 | |
| M258 | |
| M259 | |
| M260 | |
| M261 | |
| M262 | |
| M263 | |

| M Code | Contents |
|--------|--|
| M264 | Restriction on overlap mode rapid feed release OFF |
| M265 | Restriction on overlap mode rapid feed release ON |
| M266 | |
| M267 | |
| M268 | |
| M269 | |
| M270 | |
| M271 | |
| M272 | |
| M273 | |
| M274 | |
| M275 | |
| M276 | |
| M277 | |
| M278 | |
| M279 | |
| M280 | |
| M281 | |
| M282 | |
| M283 | |
| M284 | |
| M285 | |
| M286 | |
| M287 | |
| M288 | Facing spindle air blow OFF |
| M289 | Facing spindle air blow ON |
| M290 | Ceiling door close |
| M291 | Ceiling door open |
| M292 | |
| M293 | |
| M294 | |
| M295 | |
| M296 | |
| M297 | |
| M298 | |
| M299 | |
| M300 | |
| M301 | |
| M302 | |
| M303 | |
| M304 | |
| M305 | |

| M Code | Contents |
|--------|--|
| M306 | |
| M307 | |
| M308 | Robot/loader interface interlock release OFF |
| M309 | Robot/loader interface interlock release ON |
| M310 | |
| M311 | |
| M312 | |
| M313 | |
| M314 | |
| M315 | |
| M316 | |
| M317 | |
| M318 | |
| M319 | |
| M320 | |
| M321 | M code macro function CALL (fixed sub-program) |
| M322 | M code macro function CALL (fixed sub-program) |
| M323 | M code macro function CALL (fixed sub-program) |
| M324 | M code macro function CALL (fixed sub-program) |
| M325 | M code macro function CALL (fixed sub-program) |
| M326 | |
| M327 | |
| M328 | |
| M329 | |
| M330 | |
| M331 | |
| M332 | |
| M333 | |
| M334 | Machine interference signal OFF |
| M335 | Machine interference signal ON |
| M336 | |
| M337 | |
| M338 | |
| M339 | |
| M340 | |
| M341 | M code macro function CALL |
| M342 | M code macro function CALL |
| M343 | M code macro function CALL |

| M Code | Contents |
|--------|----------------------------|
| M344 | M code macro function CALL |
| M345 | M code macro function CALL |
| M346 | M code macro function CALL |
| M347 | M code macro function CALL |
| M348 | M code macro function CALL |
| M349 | M code macro function CALL |
| M350 | M code macro function CALL |
| M351 | M code macro function CALL |
| M352 | M code macro function CALL |
| M353 | M code macro function CALL |
| M354 | M code macro function CALL |
| M355 | M code macro function CALL |
| M356 | M code macro function CALL |
| M357 | M code macro function CALL |
| M358 | M code macro function CALL |
| M359 | M code macro function CALL |
| M360 | M code macro function CALL |
| M361 | Work stopper retract |
| M362 | Work stopper advance |

4. Table of System Variables

| Variables | Contents | Setting Range | Suffix |
|-----------|---|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| VZOFZ | Z-axis zero offset | 0 to ±99999.999 | None |
| VZOFY | Y-axis zero offset | | |
| VZOFX | X-axis zero offset | | |
| VZOFC | C-axis zero offset | | |
| VZOFW | W-axis zero offset | | |
| VZSHZ | Z-axis zero shift | | |
| VZSHY | Y-axis zero shift | | |
| VZSHX | X-axis zero shift | | |
| VZSHC | C-axis zero shift | | |
| VZSHW | W-axis zero shift | | |
| VTOFZ | Z-axis tool offset | 0 to ±999.999 | 0 to 32 0 to 64 0 to 96 |
| VTSOY | Y-axis tool offset | | |
| VTOFX | X-axis tool offset | | |
| VNSRZ | Nose radius compensation for Z-axis | 0 to ±999.999 | |
| VNSRX | Nose radius compensation for X-axis | | |
| VPVLZ | Positive variable limit on Z-axis (machine coordinate system) | 0 to ±99999.999 | None |
| VPVLX | Positive variable limit on X-axis (machine coordinate system) | | |
| VPVLW | Positive variable limit on W-axis (machine coordinate system) | | |
| VNVLZ | Negative variable limit on Z-axis (machine coordinate system) | | |
| VNVLX | Negative variable limit on X-axis (machine coordinate system) | | |
| VNVLW | Negative variable limit on W-axis (machine coordinate system) | | |
| VINPZ | Droop amount in Z-axis | 0 to 1000 (0 to 10000) | |
| VINPY | Droop amount in Y-axis | | |
| VINPX | Droop amount in X-axis | | |
| VINPC | Droop amount in C-axis | | |
| VTRTS | T-axis rapid feedrate (1/10 min ⁻¹ {rpm}) | 1 to 32767 | |
| VTLGN | Tool group number | 0 to 24 | 1 to 12 1 to 20 1 to 96 |
| VTLSN | Number set for tool life | 0 to 9999 | |
| VTLCN | Number of machined workpieces for tool life | 0 to 359999 | |
| VTLST | Time Set for tool life | | |
| VTLCT | Cutting time for tool life | 0 to 999.999 | |
| VTLSA | Tool wear amount set for tool life | 0 to 9999.999 | 1 to 12 1 to 20 1 to 96 |
| VTLCA | Actual tool wear amount for tool life | 0 to 9999.999 | |
| VTLOA | Tool offset number (group 1) | 0 to 32 | |
| VTLOB | Tool offset number (group 2) | 0 to 64 | |
| VTLOC | Tool offset number (group 3) | 0 to 96 | |
| VTLUS | Variable which indicates that the tool was used in a program | 0/1 | |
| VTLNG | Variable which indicates that the tool was evaluated as NG in gauging | | |
| VTL LF | Variable which indicates that the tool has been used to the life | | |

| Variables | Contents | Setting Range | Suffix |
|-----------|--|------------------|----------|
| VGRSL | Tool number selected in the group | 0 to 96 | 1 to 12 |
| VGRLF | Tool life variable (group tools) | 0/1 | 1 to 20 |
| VGRID | Tool index occurrence variable (group tools) | | 1 to 24 |
| VXMP0 | Input position number for post-process gauging unit | 0 to 12 | 1 to 12 |
| VXMCD | Offset amount | 0 to ±999.999 | |
| VXMON | Tool offset number to be offset | 0 to 32/64/96 | |
| VXMTG | Tool group number to be offset | 1 to 12/24 | |
| VXMOG | Tool offset group number to be offset | 1 to 3 | |
| VXMXZ | Axis designation for offset (0: X-axis, 1: Z-axis) | 0/1 | |
| VXMNC | Offset skip counter | 0 to 99 | 1 to 12 |
| VXMCO | Consecutive counter for ±OK | | |
| VXMMC | Counter ignoring offset | | |
| VXMMO | Counter ignoring ±OK | | |
| VXMMD | Storing the result of previous gauging | 1/2/4/8/16/32/64 | |
| VXMDR | Data read/not read variable | 0/80 | None |
| VRNGZ | Z-axis datum ring position (program coordinate system) | 0 to ±99999.999 | None |
| VRNGX | X-axis datum ring position (program coordinate system) | | |
| VSNZ | Z-axis sensor position (machine coordinate system) | | |
| VSNX | X-axis sensor position (machine coordinate system) | | |
| VIMDZ | Z-axis in-process gauging data | | 1 to 12 |
| VIMDX | X-axis in-process gauging data | | |
| VPFVZ | Z-axis pitch error compensation value | 0 to ±0.999 | 1 to 120 |
| VPFVY | Y-axis pitch error compensation value | | |
| VPFVX | X-axis pitch error compensation value | | |
| VPFVT | CT-axis pitch error compensation value | | |
| VPCHX | X-axis pitch | 2.000 to 65.000 | None |
| VPCHZ | Z-axis pitch | | |
| VTOAA | Tool offset number A of tool at ATC 1st position | 0 to 96 | 1 to 96 |
| VTOBA | Tool offset number B of tool at ATC 1st position | | |
| VTOCA | Tool offset number C of tool at ATC 1st position | | |
| VTOAB | Tool offset number A of tool at ATC 2nd position | | |
| VTOBB | Tool offset number B of tool at ATC 2nd position | | |
| VTOCB | Tool offset number C of tool at ATC 2nd position | | |
| VTHRZ | Thread phase matching amount in the Z-axis direction | 0 to ±99999.999 | None |
| VTHRX | Thread phase matching amount in the X-axis direction | | |
| VLMON | Load monitoring axis command | 0 to 127 | 1 to 64 |
| VEINT | Interruption permitted axis command | 0 to 3 | None |
| VBNCT | Block number count or not count | | |
| VPWSP | Parts catcher workpiece chute position | 0 to ±99999.999 | |
| VPWTP | Parts catcher workpiece transfer position | | |

| Variables | Contents | Setting Range | Suffix |
|-----------|---|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| VTLIN | Tool classification code number | 1 to 38 | 1 to 12 1 to 20 1 to 96 |
| VTLFN | Tool form code number | 0 to 4 | |
| VTLA1 | Tool nose angle | 0 to 360.000 | |
| VTLA2 | Cutting edge angle | 0 to ± 360.000 | |
| VTLL | Tool holder length/projection/drill length | 0 to 9999.999 | |
| VTLD | Tool holder dia./drill dia. | | |
| VTLW | Tool width | | |
| VTIZN | Tool interference point; ZN | | |
| VTIZP | Tool interference point; ZP | | |
| VTIXN | Tool interference point; XN | | |
| VTIXP | Tool interference point; XP | | |
| VTIPN | Tool interference pattern number | 0 to 2 | |
| VGRIN | Tool classification code number | 1 to 38 | 1 to 12 1 to 20 1 to 24 |
| VGRFN | Tool form code number | 0 to 4 | |
| VGRA1 | Tool nose angle | 0 to 360.000 | |
| VGRA2 | Cutting edge angle | 0 to ± 360.000 | |
| VGRL | Tool holder length/projection/drill length | 0 to 9999.999 | |
| VGRD | Tool holder dia./drill dia. | | |
| VGRW | Tool width | | |
| VSIDC | Spindle orientation (pin type/electric type) | | 0/1 |
| VEXPO | RS232C post-process gauging point | 0 to 9 | 1 to 12 |
| VEXTR | RS232C post-process gauging turret | 0/1 | |
| VEXAX | RS232C post-process gauging axis | | |
| VEXGF | RS232C post-process gauging group flag | 0 to 32 | |
| VEXTO | RS232C post-process gauging tool offset number | 0 to 3 | |
| VEXOG | RS232C post-process gauging offset group number | 0/1 | |
| VEXOK | RS232C post-process gauging result | 0 to ± 999999 | |
| VEXFB | RS232C post-process gauging feedback value | 0/80 | |
| VEXDR | RS232C post-process gauging data end variable | 0/80 | None |
| VSIOZ | Z-axis command target point (program coordinate system) | READ ONLY | None |
| VSIOY | Y-axis command target point (program coordinate system) | | |
| VSIOX | X-axis command target point (program coordinate system) | | |
| VSIOC | C-axis command target point (program coordinate system) | | |
| VAPAZ | Z-axis actual position (machine coordinate system) | | |
| VAPAX | X-axis actual position (machine coordinate system) | | |
| VSKPZ | Z-axis sensor touch point (machine coordinate system) | | |
| VSKPY | Y-axis sensor touch point (machine coordinate system) | | |
| VSKPX | X-axis sensor touch point (machine coordinate system) | | |
| VSKPC | C-axis sensor touch point (machine coordinate system) | | |
| VETFZ | Presently used tool offset amount in Z-axis | | |
| VETFY | Presently used tool offset amount in Y-axis | | |
| VETFX | Presently used tool offset amount in X-axis | | |
| | | | |

| Variables | Contents | Setting Range | Suffix |
|-----------|--|--|---------|
| VDIFZ | DIF in Z-axis | READ ONLY | None |
| VDIFX | DIF in X-axis | | |
| VETON | Tool offset number of active tool | | |
| VETLN | Tool number of active tool | | |
| VAPPZ | Tool retract intervention point in Z-axis | | |
| VAPPX | Tool retract intervention point in X-axis | | |
| VMIRZ | Coordinate system direction match flag (\$00: OK, \$80:NG) | | |
| VRSTT | Sequence restart (\$00:OFF, \$80:ON) | | |
| VPAI | π (Circular constant) | | |
| VCNGC | Post-process gauging NG consecutive counter |  |  | 0 to 255 |
| VXMD5 | Post-process gauging data set variable | 0 to 128 | |
| VTOPC | Top cut judgment | READ ONLY | |
| VCEJM | CEJ MATIC read data | 0 to ± 99999.999 | 1 to 12 |
| VMCN | Gauging counter | 0 to 9999 | 1 to 32 |
| VMDT | A/B turret data transfer variable | UNLIMITED | 1 to 12 |
| VXMBD | Binary data of gauged BCD data | | |
| VXMAB | Turret designation for offset | | |
| VWKCS | Work counter setting value | 0 to 99999999 | 1 to 4 |
| VWKCC | Work counter counting value | | |
| VUACM | User alarm comment | Characters-strings (Max. 16 characters) | 1 to 16 |
| VSKFA | Gauging feedrate 2 | 1 to 500 | None |
| VSKFB | Gauging feedrate 1 | | |
| VCHKL | Chuck jaw dimension L1 | 0 to 9999.999 | |
| VCHKD | Chuck jaw dimension D1 | | |
| VCHKZ | Chuck jaw position CZ | 0 to ± 9999.999 | |
| VCHKX | Chuck jaw position CX | | |
| VTSL | Tailstock spindle projection L2 | 0 to 9999.999 | |
| VTSDA | Tailstock spindle diameter D2 | | |
| VTSDB | Tailstock center diameter D3 | | |
| VWKR | Workpiece end face WR | 0 to ± 9999.999 | |
| VRZV | Robot point data Z-axis | 0 to ± 99999999 | 1 to 99 |
| VRCV | Robot point data C-axis | | |
| VRRG | Robot register data | 0 to ± 32767 | 1 to 47 |
| VLZV | Loader point data Z-axis | 0 to ± 99999999 | 1 to 99 |
| VLYV | Loader point data Y-axis | | |
| VLRG | Loader register data | | |
| VPLOF | M-axis zero offset for flat turning | 0 to 359.999 | None |
| VRVY | Robot point data Y-axis | 0 to ± 99999999 | 1 to 99 |
| VRBV | Robot point data B-axis | | |
| VRVW | Robot point data W-axis | | |
| VRVX | Robot point data X-axis | | |

| Variables | Contents | Setting Range | Suffix |
|-----------|--|---------------|---|
| VTLMT | Tool type number | 0 to 80 | I = 1 to 38 J = 1 to 4 K = 1 to 6 |
| VMXA1 | MAX in tool nose form code table A1 | 0 to 360.000 | |
| VMNA1 | MIN in tool nose form code table A1 | | |
| VMXA2 | MAX in tool nose form code table A2 | 0 to ±360.000 | |
| VMNA2 | MIN in tool nose form code table A2 | | |
| VCHIO | Chuck ID grip/OD grip changeover data | 0, 1 |  | None |
| VCHSW | Chuck work/between-centers work changeover data | | |
| VZARP | Designated ZA-axis position | 0 to 99999999 | |
| VZBRP | Designated ZB-axis position | | |
| VZCRP | Designated ZC-axis position | | |
| VXARP | Designated XA-axis position | | |
| VXBRP | Designated XB-axis position | | |
| VWAP | Designated W-axis position | | |
| VSNWD | Dislocation between the sensor center and the sensor head in the C-axis forward rotation | READ ONLY | |
| VSNTU | Dislocation between the sensor center and the sensor head in the C-axis reverse rotation | | |
| VRUND | 360° constant | - | |
| VUNIT | Unit system | 0 to 7 | |

*: System variables are not available depending on machine specifications.

(Example)

VZOFW: W-axis zero offset (available only for the programmable tailstock specification)

VZOFC: C-axis zero offset (available only for the multi-machining specification)

VPFVZ: Z-axis pitch error compensation value(available only for the pitch error compensation specification)

LIST OF PUBLICATIONS

| Publication No. | Date | Edition |
|-----------------|--------------|---------|
| 4283-E | January 2000 | 2nd |

This manual may be at variance with the actual product due to specification or design changes.

Please also note that specifications are subject to change without notice.

If you require clarification or further explanation of any point in this manual, please contact your OKUMA representative.

OKUMA OFFICES

DOMESTIC OFFICES

REGISTERED OFFICES

1-32 Tsujimachi, Kita-ku
Nagoya 462-0032, Japan

WORLD HEADQUARTERS-OGUCHI PLANT

Okuma Corporation
Oguchi-cho, Niwa-gun Aichi, 480-0193, Japan
Phone (0587)95-7825 Fax (0587)95-6074 Telex 4573310 OKUMA J

KANI PLANT

Okuma Corporation
3-6 Himegaoka, Kani-shi, Gifu-ken, 509-0249, Japan
Phone (0574) 63-5611 Fax (0574) 63-5678

OVERSEAS OFFICES

Okuma Corporation, Melbourne Liaison Office
c/o Atlas CNC Machines Ltd. 3 Tampe Road Rowvill, Victoria 3178 Australia
Phone (03)9753-2848 Fax (03)9753-2020

Okuma Corporation Singapore Branch
422 Tagore Avenue Singapore 2678
Phone 4590819 Fax 4598276

OVERSEAS AFFILIATE

Okuma America Corporation
12200 Steele Creek Road, Charlotte, NC 28273, U.S.A.
Phone (704)588-7000 Fax (704)588-6503

OVERSEAS SUBSIDIARIES

Okuma Europe GmbH
Europark, Fichtenhain A20
47807 Krefeld, F.R. of Germany
Phone (49) 2151-374-0 Fax (49)2151-374100

Okuma Service Center TPE
Tatung Co., 22 Chungshan N. Rd.,3rd Sec.Taipei, Taiwan, 10451 R.O.C
Phone (02)673-6901 Fax (02)673-6900

OKUMA Corporation

OGUCHI-CHO, NIWA-GUN, AICHI 480-0193, JAPAN

Phone:(0587)95-7825 Telex:4573310 OKUMA J

Fax:(0587)95-6074